

CLASSIC REPRINT SERIES

LATIN READER NATURE
STUDY AND EASY
STORIES, FOR SIGHT
READING DURING, THE
FIRST YEAR IN LATIN



by
A. B. Reynolds

Forgotten Books

*** 1,000,000 ***

Free E-Books

@

www.ForgottenBooks.org

*** Alchemy ***

The Secret is Revealed

@

www.TheBookofAquarius.com

Forgotten Books

Latin Reader Nature Study and Easy Stories, for Sight Reading During, the First Year in Latin

By

A. B. Reynolds

Published by Forgotten Books 2012

Originally Published 1918

PIBN 1000201931

Copyright © 2012 Forgotten Books
www.forgottenbooks.org

LATIN READER

NATURE STUDY AND EASY STORIES
FOR SIGHT READING DURING
THE FIRST YEAR IN LATIN

BY

A. B. REYNOLDS

HEAD OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT
HITCHCOCK MILITARY ACADEMY
SAN RAFAEL, CALIFORNIA

Bene inceptum, dimidium confectum

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1918,
By D. C. HEATH & Co.

2 E O

TO

ALL THOSE BOYS AND GIRLS WHO
SEEK BY MEANS OF THE LATIN TO
IMPROVE THEIR UNDERSTANDING OF
ENGLISH · TO ACQUIRE A TRUE APPRE-
CIATION OF ANCIENT LITERATURE · OR
TO KNOW THE FOUNTAIN HEAD OF SO
MUCH THAT IS INDISPENSABLE TO THEIR
PART IN MODERN LIFE · THIS BOOK
IS DEDICATED

PREFACE

DURING the first year pupils must form the habit of reading Latin. If we had the material, they might learn to read Latin as they learned to read English, *by reading*. What can be done to get this material? Of what should this material consist?

We are preparing them to read authors. Our own experience has often shown us that the first few pages of a new book seem difficult — usually the most difficult of the whole book — and so much so that we might say of many books: "Well begun is half done."

The majority of pupils who read much Latin, read Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil. Their first attack upon each of these authors is nearly always made upon the first pages of the Gallic War, Book I or Book II, the First Oration against Catiline, and the First Book of the *Æneid*. Their reading during the first year can be made to contain every important word and every form and construction occurring in those few pages.

During the first year's work, students of Latin are obliged to read hundreds and even thousands of sentences illustrating Latin forms and syntax. Those sentences are for the most part fragments of the sentences of Caesar and other Latin authors and are usually arranged so as to illustrate and review the use of certain constructions with regularity and precision.

Now if those sentences can be made to tell *something worth knowing and remembering*, the pupil's interest will not have to be either forced or lacking, and he may find some encouragement to re-read many times and even to memorize passages illustrating the more common forms and constructions and fix them forever in mind. He will also be enabled to bring into play those instincts (that have already been so well trained while learning to read his own language) by means of which he has gathered the meaning of hundreds of English words from their connection in sentences and not lapse from the first into the helpless condition of a vocabulary slave.

The words and constructions of those first few famous pages above mentioned were used by the same authors elsewhere in their works — and by other authors — to say things that are entertaining and worth remembering. By gathering together a large number of phrases and sentences from Nepos,

Vergil, Sallust, Pliny's *Natural History*, Cicero's *Speeches*, the *Somnium Scipionis* and the *Tusculan Disputations*, Caesar's sketches of the Gauls, Germans, and Britons, from Tacitus, Livy, and others, one may easily possess the wherewith to tell almost any story about Nature, the Geography of Europe, the History of Romans, or make sketches and comparisons of ancient and modern life, and even construct interesting fiction using all those very words and constructions that the pupil will first meet (with very few additions) till he shall not find anything strange in the first pages of the authors but the story.

Such has been the process in creating this book and such is its purpose.

We merely hope that here and there pupils will find some passage that will be to them not something to pass over and be rid of, but something that they will gladly go back to and learn.

Two distinct methods have been employed to induce the student to help himself. First, where forms are familiar, attention is called to the meaning of the root word in one or more English derivatives; second, where forms require explanation or where the meaning is difficult to illustrate by English derivatives, the particular form is explained at the bottom of the page. The general vocabulary is for occasional reference.

I desire to express my thanks to Mr. S. J. Halley of Belmont School, Belmont, California, for valuable criticisms of the text; to Major G. H. White and Mr. G. A. Broadfoot of Hitchcock Military Academy, and to Mr. J. W. Hunt, formerly of the same school, for suggestions regarding the treatment of grammatical matters; to Mr. W. H. Edmands of the University of California for his help in arranging the plot of the last story; to Mr. Webster Dillon of San Leandro, Cal., for assistance in preparing the appendix; to Miss Hazel E. Kyle of San Rafael for many suggestions regarding the matter and arrangement of the appendix; to Mr. Oscar I. Losey of Meridian, Cal., for his help in reading the proof; and to the last two for their painstaking work in eliminating typographical errors from the manuscript.

A. B. R.

SAN RAFAEL, CALIFORNIA,
May, 1918.

TO THE TEACHER

I. THE first twenty-one readings are so arranged as to afford opportunity for a very thorough study or review of the five essential elements of all sentences, viz. :

1. Predicate Verb — the word that asserts (finite verb) or represents a former assertion (infinitive), in boldface on page 3.
2. Subject — printed in boldface on pp. 4, 10, and 23.
3. Predicate Noun or Adjective — represented as being the *same person or thing* as the subject or as a *quality, condition*, etc. of the same — *i.e.* who or what the subject is or is made or called, printed in boldface on pp. 5, 11, and 22.
4. Direct Object — always *some other person or thing* (except in case of reflexives), printed in boldface on pp. 6 and 15.
5. Modifiers of all classes — all genitives (pp. 14, 19, 20, and 21), datives including the indirect object (p. 8), ablatives (pp. 9 and 12), prepositional phrases (pp. 13, 16, and 17), etc.

II. If left to themselves, pupils are sure to put all their energy into memorizing the English translation and rely on a merely visual impression to retain the *Latin which they are setting out to learn*. To prevent their forming this pernicious habit, it might be helpful: (1) to have them read each lesson till they can pronounce it with ease, (2) to have them read the Latin over after translating till they can bring out the meaning and show that they understand what they are reading.

In order not to become monotonous, each reading should have a definite purpose. One pupil may be asked to re-read the whole page promptly in Latin after translating. Another may then be required to read one sentence at a time, pausing for a third to select the subject (or some other essential element not in boldface type) and for a fourth to repeat the translation briskly. Concentrating on one element at a time soon develops the habit of reading observingly.

III. After pupils have learned to recognize the elements quickly, they may be required to go over a page taking each word as it comes and writing it in the proper column, thus :

(CLASSIFICATION OR PARSING OF THE WORDS ON PAGE 6)

<i>Subject Nominative</i>	<i>Finite Verb</i>	<i>Predicate Nominative</i>	<i>Accusative Direct Obj.</i>	<i>Accusative of Measure e.g. (tantum) (spatium) (p. 10)</i>	<i>Ablatives</i>	<i>Preps.</i>
Lūx Nox Tellūs Ea (ea) (ea) Sōl Lūna Is, ea Lūmen	dīcitur vocātur est est accipit accipit dat dat illūminat est	diēs tenebrae lūcida obscura	Lūcem Lūcem lūmen lūmen terram		Lūce Tenebris sōle lūnā multis rēbus duābus rēbus sōle lūnā	Dē ab ā dē dē ab ā
Lūmen (nōs) (nōs) rēs Rēs duae (nōs)	est legimus (legimus) sunt sunt (legimus)	candidum ārdēns suāve Quae lūx tenebrae	lūcem tellūrem	Accusa- tive v. Preps. e.g. (sē) (p. 8)		
<i>Subject Accusative</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Predicate Accusative</i>	<i>Adverbs</i>	<i>Datives</i>	<i>Genitives</i>	<i>Conj.</i>
lūcem noctem tellūrem eam eum, eam lūmen (lūmen)	dīcī appellārī esse accipere illūmināre (esse) esse	diem tenebrās obscuram candidum ārdēns suāve	nōn quoque interdiū noctū interdiū noctū Quam hodiē interdiū noctū	terrae ei Locative e.g. (vesperī) (p. 12)	sōlis lūnae sōlis lūnae Vocative magister discipulī	et et ac et atque

IV. The meaning of some three hundred Latin words is taught with the text by means of derivatives. This at once compels a careful analysis of the English words and paves the way for collecting and defining other derivatives from the same roots, at first by the help of §§ 40-47; 127, 137 of the appendix, and later by the use of §§ 219-223. See suggestions on page 249.

V. In the simpler readings pupils are required to translate infinitives in all the ways in which they will be obliged to render them later. Both literal and free translation may be illustrated as follows :

legere *read: to read; (be) reading; do reading;*
legī *(be) read; to be read; (being) read; reading (be) done;*

Nōs legere iussit *he bade us read ;*
he ordered us to read ;
he ordered that-we read ;
he bade us be reading.

Nōs legere audiit *he heard us read ;*
he heard us reading ;
(he heard-about us reading) ;
he heard-about our reading ;
he heard that-we read.

Nōs legere patitur *he lets us do (the) reading ;*
he allows us to do reading.

Legī intellegēbat *he knew (it) to be read.*

Legī passus est *he let (it) be read.*

Legī audīvit *he heard (it) read ;*
he heard-about (it) being read ;
he heard reading done ;
he heard-about (the) reading being done ;
he heard that-it was read ;
he heard that-reading was being done.

In order to make the pupil appreciate the forms used in the Indirect Statement on page 3, it may be rendered, first literally :

" We are reading-about us living on the earth; (about) the earth looking flat; (about) it not being flat, however; (about) it being round; (about) us calling it a globe " and then freely, as :

" We read (that) we live on the earth; (that) the earth appears flat; (that) it is not flat," etc.

VI. Directions for the study of syntax are merely suggestions to be used at the discretion of the teacher.

CONTENTS

Introduction

	PAGE
TO THE STUDENT	xvii
READING AND TRANSLATING	xix
THE FRAMEWORK OF SENTENCES	xx
BRAIN WORK AND THUMB WORK	xxiii
THE RIGHT ATTITUDE	xxiii

Pronunciation and Derivatives

ILLUSTRATIONS AND CAUTIONS	1
THE REMAINS OF ANCIENT WORDS	2

Nature Study

THE EARTH	3
THE SUN	4
THE MOON	5
LIGHT AND SHADOWS	6
THE SOURCE OF LIGHT	7
EARTHLIGHT AND MOONLIGHT	8
SUNLIGHT	9
THE STARS	10
STARLIGHT	11
DAY AND NIGHT	12
THE NORTH	14
THE FOUR WINDS	15
THE EARTH'S INTERIOR	16
LAND AND WATER	17

	PAGE
THE ATMOSPHERE	18
THE SEASONS	20

Sketches of Roman Life

THE LATINS	24
CHUMS	25
IN A ROMAN PRIMARY SCHOOL	26
A LESSON IN NUMBERS	28
LIGHT AND COLOR	30
THE MEASUREMENT OF TIME	31
SPATIUM	33
OTHER STUDIES	34
HOURS AND WATCHES	35
THE DAYS OF THE MONTH	36
THE JULIAN CALENDAR	37
MEASURES OF SPACE	38
THE ROMAN MEASURES	40
THE CIRCLE	41
GRAVITY	42
THE STUDY OF NUMBERS	43
READING AND THE VALUE OF READING	45
THE CARE OF THE EYES	47
WRITING — ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS	48
A ROMAN'S AMBITION	50
ON THE PLANTATION	51
A ROMAN HOUSE AND A ROMAN HOUSEHOLD	52
THE RETURN FROM SCHOOL	55
BROTHER AND SISTER	57
THE FAMILY AT HOME	58
AEMILIUS RESCUES BRENNUS	59
A BIRTHDAY REQUEST	60

	PAGE
AN INVITATION TO VISIT ROME	61
ROMAN POLITICS	63
ARRANGEMENTS FOR THE TRIP	64
A VISIT TO CICERO	65
THE CITY — WITH CRASSUS	66
A FIRE IN ROME	67
BRENNUS SAVES AEMILIUS	68

Arminius a Suebian Boy

THE GAULS AND THE GERMANS	69
IN A GERMAN FOREST	70
ARMINIUS GOES A-HUNTING	71
NASUA RETURNS WITH CAPTIVES	72
ARMINIUS BECOMES A SLAVE	73
GIVEN TO THE KING'S SISTER	74
NORICA IS SENT TO MARRY ARIOVISTUS	75
WITH ARIOVISTUS IN GAUL	76
THE GERMANS IN GAUL	77
THE ROMAN PROVINCE OF GAUL	78
LIFE IN THE GERMAN CAMP	79
GUARDING THE HOSTAGES	79
WHAT ARMINIUS LEARNS ABOUT THE GAULS	81
THE ROMANS NAME ARIOVISTUS KING AND FRIEND	81
RUMORS FROM HELVETIA	82
GALLIC CHIEFS	83
THE HELVETIAN NATION	84
THE HARUDES CROSS THE RHINE	85
THE FEARS OF ARIOVISTUS	86
THE ARRIVAL OF THE ROMAN PROCONSUL	87
THE HELVETIANS MIGRATE	88
CAESAR AVENGES LUCIUS CASSIUS	89

	PAGE
THE GRAIN DOES NOT ARRIVE	90
THE PLOTS OF DUMNORIX	91
THE HELVETIANS DEFEATED	94
THE COUNCIL OF BIBRACTE	96
AN EMBASSY FROM CAESAR	97
A MESSAGE FROM CAESAR'S ENEMIES	98
THE PARLEY WITH CAESAR	100
ARIOVISTUS DEFEATED	101
THE DEATH OF NORICA	10
CRASSUS RESCUES ARMINIUS AND VELAEDA	103
A LONG WINTER IN CAPTIVITY	104
THE COUNCIL OF LUCA	105
A VISIT TO ROME	106
GIVEN TO QUINTUS CICERO	106
ARMINIUS WARNS THE SUEBIANS	107
THE SUGAMBRIANS ATTACK CICERO'S CAMP	109
ARMINIUS AND VELAEDA ESCAPE	110

Appendix

SOUNDS, QUANTITY, AND ACCENT	111
GENERAL VIEW OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	117
ENDINGS AND NON-ENDINGS	118
OBSERVATIONS THAT COUNT	124
GENDER OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	127
ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	128
THE MEANING OF THE CASES	130
LIST OF LATIN PREPOSITIONS	131
PLACE, POSITION, SITUATION, AND CONDITION	132
PERSONS AND THINGS	133
INDEFINITE NUMBERS	135
INDEFINITE OR UNDEFINED PERSONS	136

	PAGE
CONNECTING WORDS	136
AGREEMENT OF VERBS	137
BIS, BIDUUM, BIENNIUM	137
EXPRESSIONS OF MEASURE	138
LIST OF COMMON ADVERBS	138
INDEFINITE QUANTITIES AND VALUES	140
INDEFINITE OR UNDEFINED THINGS	141
CASES KNOWN BY THEIR USE IN SENTENCES	143
PARADIGMS OF NOUNS	146
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS — NOUNS	152
PARADIGMS OF REGULAR ADJECTIVES	154
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	158
WORDS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES	160
APPOSITIVES	162
TIME AND CIRCUMSTANCE	163
ADJECTIVE FORMS OF VERBS	164
DUTY, NECESSITY, ETC.	169
WHICH ONE (OF TWO)?	170
GENITIVES AND POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	171
PRONOUNS — RELATIVE, INDEFINITE, ETC.	172
PRONOUNS — PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE	176
PRONOUNS — DEMONSTRATIVE	177
WHICH ONE (OF ANY NUMBER)?	179
COMPOUND PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS	180
ŪNUS, DUO, AND TRES	184
NUMERALS	185
INFINITIVES IN ENGLISH	186
FINITE VERBS AND INFINITIVES	187
INFINITIVES AND THEIR USES	188
PRESENT INDICATIVE FORMS OF ALL CLASSES	191
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVES OF ALL CLASSES	196

	PAGE
INDIRECT STATEMENTS, QUESTIONS, ETC	199
THE LATIN QUESTION MARKS	200
SEQUENCE OF TENSES	203
CLAUSES OF RESULT	205
DESCRIPTIVE AND CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES	206
SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN CLAUSES	207
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	210
USES OF THE GERUNDIVE AND SUPINE	211
SUMMARY OF FACTS ABOUT VERB FORMS	211
ACTIVE, PASSIVE, AND DEPONENT FORMS	218
PARADIGMS OF VERBS	220-259
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS — VERBS	260
THE OLDER MEANING OF WORDS	263
WORD-BUILDING — PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOUNDS	264
USE OF COMPOUND VERBS	270
FREQUENTATIVE VERBS	270
INCEPTIVE VERBS	271
THE FRAMEWORK OF COMPLEX SENTENCES	272
SENTENCE-BUILDING	276
THE GOVERNING POWER OF WORDS	280
ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES	281
VOCABULARY	315
INDEX	345

INTRODUCTION

TO THE STUDENT¹

THE educational value of Latin is undoubted. Those who hesitate about taking it make it only a question of sparing the time or taking the trouble. But no study ever gives greater returns for the time and labor spent upon it.

Faith in Latin remains firm. Never was there a time when more people were engaged in efforts to direct the beginner aright. The sincerity of these efforts, made by those who know, is evidence of its worth to students. Even those who do not care for the study for its own sake, find it the great *lubricator* and *time-saver* among their studies.

The reason is plain. Rome has been compared² to a great reservoir into which all the streams of ancient civilization flowed and in which all the growing streams of modern civilization have their source. All the hard-earned and priceless treasures of ancient knowledge and thought were gathered up by the Romans and passed on *expressed in the Latin way*, and the additions that represent the discoveries, advances and improvements of two thousand years *continue to find expression in Latin terms*.

It may be in order here to enumerate a few of the benefits you will derive from a careful study of your Latin.

One third of the words of your daily conversation and more than half the words you learn in school have been borrowed from the Romans; and fully four fifths of all the words you will ever use are related to Latin in one way or another.

Thousands of Modern English words have been built up out of Roman materials and on the Roman plan. Each Latin root word

¹ Read now. Re-read after the first month's work.

² By the English historian, Freeman.

you learn gives you the key to the meaning of several other Latin words and of from two to fifty English words.¹

1. Two school years well spent on your Latin will save you five years searching the English Dictionary in after life.

2. English is a language of few forms; and is therefore most easily mastered by comparison with a language that has many forms.

3. Latin broadens your mind and widens your view by teaching you another and a simpler way of looking at things.

4. The study of Latin makes you look at words more closely and in a new light, and teaches you that accuracy and careful discrimination which is so necessary in all future work.

5. If a student of Mathematics, Science, Law, or Medicine has not already learned a few hundred Latin words in the proper way, he is obliged to learn thousands of technical terms the hardest way.

6. The turning of Latin into English gives you the best practice you will ever have in the choice and arrangement of English words and the best possible help toward becoming fluent and orderly in speaking and writing.

7. It opens up a personal acquaintance with the cradle of civilization through our nearest congenial neighbors in the past — the Romans, from whom we have drawn the beginnings at least of most that we cherish and appreciate in modern life.

These and many other advantages you will gain slowly and steadily, often indirectly and unconsciously; so that many, whose conversation and accomplishments show how largely they are due to the study of Latin, have not thought of attributing them to that source, and they are sometimes inclined to give the wrong advice to students.

How to Read Latin

1. Latin words have no exact equivalents in English. They mean what the writer or speaker makes them mean or construes

¹ And still more in French, Spanish, Italian, etc.

them to mean. *Read each paragraph over and over in Latin aloud, or at least in a whisper, before trying to translate it.* The purpose of reading the Latin is threefold :

- a. to look it over, see what it says and get the meaning ;
- b. to accustom the eye, tongue, ear, and mind to Latin forms and phrases and to the Latin way of looking at things ;
- c. to have the assistance of *eye-impressions, ear-impressions, tongue-impressions, and mind-impressions* to help the memory retain the Latin forms, phrases, and order of words.

To get the greatest benefit from reading the Latin, we must put ourselves in the writer's place and try to say what he intended to say, as we endeavor to make his sentences live again on our lips by giving them the proper expression.

The Proper Time to Begin

Begin with easy readings now and keep it up. Pupils who start to translate immediately without first reading the Latin make their work an unbearable burden later on, because they lose sight of the fact that *it is the Latin that they are studying* and not the English rendering of it.

With the proper start and practice of reading, Latin soon becomes "second nature" and the mind a veritable storehouse of familiar forms and phrases in the correct Latin order.

Translating Latin

2. The purpose of translating is merely to show others that we understand what we read and to get practice in framing English sentences. It is a waste of time to try to translate without first reading the Latin over till we feel satisfied that we know the constructions, arrangements of phrases, and, in a general way, what the whole paragraph tells. Reading several paragraphs together often clears up the meaning of many words that we might otherwise be obliged to look up.

3. *How to Attack a Sentence*

First, *translate the subject, if there is one.* The subject is ordinarily omitted, whenever the verb does not end in -t, -nt, -tur, -ntur, and is often omitted even then.

Next, *go on to the verb.* (There may be two or more verbs.)

Then, *go back to the predicate noun (or adjective) or object.*

Many sentences have only a subject and verb with modifiers.

The skeleton of every sentence is like one of these *types*.

Type I. Subject and
Predicate Verb.
Nos, we, is omitted.

In terrā habitāmus. Cf. 5 g.
(On earth live-we.)
We live on the earth.

Type II a. Subject and
Predicate Verb and
Predicate Adjective.

Terra magna est. Cf. 5 a.
(Earth large is.)
The earth is (a) large (body).

Type II b. Subject and
Predicate Verb and
Predicate Noun.

Ea globus magnus dicitur. Cf. 5 a.
(It ball great spoken-of-is-it.)
It is spoken of (as) a great ball.

Type III. Subject and
Predicate Verb and
Direct Object.

Nōs eam globum dicimus. Cf. 5 b.
(We it sphere speak-of-we.)
We call it a sphere.

4. Always *seek out and keep in mind the subject and verb* of the principal statement, arranging all other parts so as to give the best effect in English.

Avoid changing active verbs to the passive, as it causes too much confusion.

One of the most profitable exercises in *choice and arrangement* of words is the rendering of Latin sentences in smooth, forceful English, keeping as close to the original as possible.

Relations of Words in Latin Sentences

On the following page is a list of examples of the more common elements of Latin and English sentences.

5. (To be memorized one by one as referred to later.)

- Puer Mārcus** appellatur *the boy is called Mark* § 74, 3
(boy Mark named-is) Nom. Pred. — same person as subject.
- Puerum Marcum** appellāmus *we call the boy Mark*
(boy Mark call-we) Acc. — Predicate of the object.
- Is Marcus est** *it is Mark* Nom. — Pred. of a subject Nom.
- Eum Marcum esse** novimus *we know it to be Mark*
(it Mark to-be know-we) Acc. — Pred. of a subject Acc.
- Puerī Marcum** vident *the boys see Mark* Acc. — Direct object.
- Marcum annum aluimus** *we fed Mark (for) a year*
(Mark year fed-we) Acc. used as a Measure of time. § 68
- Marcō libri** sunt *books belong to Mark* or *Mark has books*
(Mark-to books are) Dat. of Possessor or Owner (asserted).
- Libros Marcī** habemus *we have Mark's books* § 105
(books Mark's have-we) Gen. of Possessor or Owner (assumed).
- Mārcō librum** imperamus *we demand a book of Mark*
(Mark a-book demand-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.
- Marcō libros** dedimus *we (being near) gave Mark books*
(Mark books gave-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.
- Libros ad Marcum** dedimus *we sent Mark books (from afar)*
(books to Mark sent-we) Ad w. Acc. — distance traveled.
- Eius in Marcum** odium novimus *we know his hatred for Mark*
(his for Mark hate know-we) In w. Acc. — Person aimed at.
- Marcus in vicum** it *Mark is-going to the village.* § 60
(Mark to hamlet goes) Nom. — Subj. of the Finite verb, it.
- Marcum in vicum ire** video *I see Mark going to the hamlet*
(Mark to hamlet go see-I) Acc. Subj. of the Inf. ire.
- Dic, Marce!** *speak (thou), Mark!* Voc. of Person Addressed.
- Puer cum Marcō** est *the boy is (in-company-) with Mark*
(boy with Mark is) Cum w. Abl. — denoting Association.
- Puer librō** utitur *the boy makes-use of-the book.* § 62
(boy book-with helps-self) Abl. — Means of an Action. § 182 b
- Minor natu¹ est quam** Marcus (est) *is younger than Mark*
(less age-in is-he than Mark is) Nom. — Subject of est.
- Annō² iunior est** Marcō *he is a-year younger than-Mark*
(year-by younger is Mark-than) Abl. — Measure of Difference
and Person (or thing) compared.

¹ Abl. specifying in what respect.² Cf. annum in d. above.

OUR TASK

The Value of Sight Reading

6. *a.* To be thoroughly acquainted with a piece of Latin is to know or readily recognize the form, meaning, and use of every word in it and get the author's message to us.

To be thoroughly acquainted with nouns is to know or readily recognize the meaning, the gender, and all the endings each has, to show its number and case. This is our task.

To relieve this huge task of some of its tediousness and length, nouns are divided into classes having the same or nearly the same endings; so that when the endings of a few nouns in each class are known, all one has to learn is the *nominative*, *genitive*, and *gender* as given in vocabularies.

b. If a student is a mere translator (not a sight-reader) and therefore a slave to the vocabulary, his task is still enormous and seemingly endless. The *nominative*, *genitive*, *gender*, and various meanings (or hints at the meaning) of hundreds of nouns and similar facts regarding hundreds of other words must be looked up (often repeatedly). This purely mechanical work occupies four fifths of his time, that is, uses his thumbs four times as much as his brains. And yet the means of lightening this dreary task is constantly before our very eyes, if we will only use it with intelligence. Cf. § 1.

Sight reading is reading (in the original) passages that contain many words whose forms, uses, and meanings are new.

Sight translation is turning the same into English with little or no referring to vocabularies. Here and there a word must be looked up or a hint given.

c. On the one hand, the *nominative*, *genitive*, *gender*, and meaning of every noun must be learned; the *nominative*, because it is so often irregular and because the *vocative* is generally the same; the *genitive*, in order to know the base and the declension; the *gender*, in order to know to which class it belongs; both *genitive* and *gender*, in order to know what the rest of the endings are.

Brain Work and Thumb Work

d. On the other hand, vocabularies are not the only source of these facts. An observing reader may gather many or even all these facts regarding the majority of Latin nouns as he goes, without the delay of using his thumbs or allowing the work to become the weary burden it so often proves to be; for modern English words betray *the ancestral roots*.

Magnitude (*bigness*) and **magnify** (*make large*) show that the Latin base, **magn-**, means *large* or *great*. The connection may reveal the meaning of the strangest looking word, as in:

We heard the aes ring. Someone rang the tintinnābulum.

It requires no effort and we have no choice. Both of these strange words mean "bell."

A single ending may reveal all else we need to know; as in natura.
Cf. Appendix § 50.

Its root **nā-** (sometimes **gnā-**) is the parent of our words, *nation*, *native*, *innate* (inborn), *cognate* (relative), *nature*, *naturally*, *unnatural*, etc.

But the ancient word (usually broader in meaning than ours) may include what we call the *universe*, *all nature*, *make up*, *character*, *build*, *shape*, *birth*, *kind*, and *disposition*. Cf. § 218.

e. Its case ending **-a** tells all the rest.

Naturā is *ablative* (-a occurs in no other case) § 55 g

Naturā is *singular* (-a does not occur in the plural) § 55 d

Its nominative singular is *natura* and its genitive singular is *naturae*,
for **-ā** occurs in no declension except the first. § 55 c

Naturā belongs to a class of nouns that are feminine, unless they denote male beings, as *poeta*, *poet*. See § 54.

Naturā does not denote a male being; therefore it is *feminine*.

Naturā has the same endings as *provincia*, *porta*, *puella*, etc. Cf. § 77 a.

The Right Attitude

7. The aim of introductory Latin work is to prepare students to read authors, many of whose words, forms, and usages are still unknown to them. In order that pupils may find themselves in

that situation now and be trained in the proper attitude for such work, they must meet with new words and strange forms mingled with those already familiar to them. Therefore this book is arranged for *sight reading*.

8. Side by side with the first readings should be studied the working principles by means of which the best readers of Latin consciously or unconsciously gather up the necessary facts, while they *read and re-read to impress the Latin words and phrases* and the *Latin order and constructions* on their memory, and enjoy the story without the constant interruption and drudgery of referring to the vocabulary. § 6 *d, e*.

9. The intelligent reader is always consciously or unconsciously asking himself :

(a) "What *must* this word mean?"
and is constantly aware that

(b) *Cases of nouns are easily known by their use.* App. § 74.

In the dictionary a word may be said to have many meanings, but in a sentence, it is a different matter. Every sentence states something very definite, and the meaning of each word is restricted by all the others.

10. Thus when the meaning of four words of a sentence is known, the meaning assigned by the author to the fifth word will always be found to fall within the limits of the possible and the likely. To illustrate that a word *must* mean what the other words of the sentence force it to mean :

We habitāmus on the earth. The earth vidētur flat. Ea is not flat autem. The earth vocātur a globe. A globe is et spoken of as sphaera.

We see magnum lūmen in the sky. Id lumen is dazzling bright. Id is spoken of as sōl. Sōl nōn vidētur flat. Is vidētur globōsus.

LATIN READER

PRONUNCIATION

The alphabet we use is Roman all but our *w* and *j*.

To pronounce the Latin words below correctly, pronounce the familiar English words printed under each.

The vowels *ā, ē, ī, ō, ū* and diphthongs *ae, au, ei, oe, ui* are prolonged twice as much as the unmarked vowels.

CAUTION. — Utter the syllables that contain short *a* and short *o* quickly. These vowels are like the first *a* in *aha* and *o* in *omit*.

The meaning of the Latin words is given in parenthesis.

ad (<i>up to</i>)	ā (<i>away</i>)	aut (<i>or</i>)	co'-lor (<i>tint</i>)
odd	ah	out	coe lore
nōn (<i>not</i>)	dat (<i>gives</i>)	hāc (<i>this</i>)	haec (<i>this</i>)
known	dot	hock	hike
hoc (<i>this, it</i>)	sōl (<i>sun</i>)	vel (<i>or</i>)	rēs (<i>fact</i>)
hoke	sole	well	race
vir (<i>man</i>)	sic (<i>so</i>)	vul'-tū (<i>face</i>)	in-fe'-ri-or (<i>lower</i>)
we're	seek	wool' too	e'en fe' rry ore
dē (<i>from</i>)	sī (<i>if</i>)	fīr'-mae (<i>solid</i>)	ob-oe'-dī (<i>obey thou</i>)
day	see	fear' my	oh boy' dee
huil (<i>ho</i>)	hei (<i>alas</i>)	coe'-pit (<i>began</i>)	
whee	hey	coy' pit	

Take great pains to learn the correct pronunciation of *c, con-, g, nc, ng, s, bs, bt, si, ti, tu, v, and x*.

cin'-get ¹	cin'-gō (<i>I gird</i>)	ob-ten'-tō (<i>held</i>)	vir-tū'-tī (<i>valor</i>)
king' get	king' go	ope ten' toe	we're too' tea
cōn'-su-lēs ²	cau'-sae (<i>causes</i>)	vī'-si-ō (<i>vision</i>)	fōr-tū'-nae (<i>luck</i>)
cone' soo lace	cow' sigh	we' see oh	fore too' nigh

NOTE. — Learn to pronounce by imitating your teacher. Read pages 3, 4, and 5 over and over in Latin for pronunciation drill. See also § 23.

¹ will surround.

² consuls.

LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

Every one has seen the effects of wear and tear on hats and shoes. The ravages of time have a similar effect on words. Some are lost, some worn and cut, and some escape with little use. Our words are from various sources. Many of them are scarred and tattered fragments of proud, sonorous parts of speech that once ran the streets of Ancient Rome.

Hard use has torn the -t- and -us from **rotundus**
and left it **ro und.**

With bruised and swollen eyes the ancient **inimicus**
still survives in our humbler **enemy.**

After varied treatment the Latin, **radius**
is well preserved in our word, **radius,**
but bent and torn in our word, **ray.**

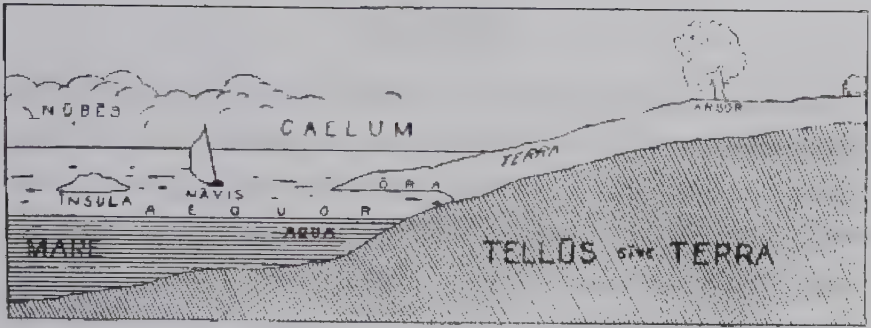
multitudinem	integrum	magister	punctum
<i>multitude</i>	<i>integer</i>	<i>ma ster</i>	<i>point, punctual</i>
multitudinous	<i>enti re</i>	<i>mi ster</i>	<i>punctuality</i>
securitatem	planum (flat)	Aemiliam	ardentem (burning)
<i>security</i>	<i>plane, plan</i>	<i>Emily</i>	<i>ardent, arson</i>
s urety	<i>plain, llano</i>		ardently

Though lost so far as English is concerned, **liber** (*book*) still lives in its relative, **library** ; so also

lumen (<i>light</i>) in luminous	velle (<i>will</i>) in voluntary
puer (<i>boy</i>) in puerile (<i>boyish</i>)	ferre (<i>bear</i>) in transfer, suffer

From the various forms existing in English, we see that there must be *several classes* of nouns in Latin.

	2	1	2	3	3	3	5
<i>Sing.</i>	alumnus	formula	stratum	index	genus	axis	species
<i>Plu.</i>	alumni	formulae	strata	indices	genera	axes	species



DĒ TELLŪRE

In tellure **habitamus**. Tellus plana **videtur**. Ea autem non plana **est**. Natūra rotunda **est**. Nos tellurem globum **vocamus**. Globus et sphaera **vocatur**. Tellus magna **est**. Ea globus magnus **est**. Tellus et terra **vocatur**. 5

De quo vos **legitis**, discipulī?

Nos de tellure **legimus**, magister.

§§ 3, 10, 24

Quid de ea **legitis**?

Legimus: nos in tellure **habitare**; ¹ tellurem planam **vidēri**; eam autem non planam **esse**; natura rotundam **esse**; 10 nōs tellurem globum **vocare**; eam globum magnum **esse**.

You must not only learn new words and new facts, but also take advantage of all you already know. See hints below.

habitation = *dwelling*

legible = *readable*

disciple = *learner, pupil*

magnitude = *largeness*

telluric = *earthy*

terrestrial = *earthly*

invoke = *call upon*

spherical = *globular*

autem *however, but* **de** *from, about*

ea (N.) *it, she*; **eam** (Ac.) *it, her*

est (Ind.) *is*; **esse** (Inf.) *be, being*

et *also, and* **natura** *in shape*

vide-re (Inf.) *see*; **videri** *be seen, seem*

vide-tur (Ind.) *is seen, looks evident*

voca-tur (Ind.) *is called* **vocation**

-mus (we) **nos** *we, us* **-tis, vos** *you*

¹ Nōs . . . **habitāre** (we read . . . about) *us living* or (that) *we live*, etc. The same statements as above are repeated here in another form.

DĒ SOLE

Lumen magnum in caelō videmus. Id lumen candidum est. Id sōl vocatur. Sōl nōn planus videtur. Is globōsus videtur. Sōl natura rotundus est. Is quoque globus vocatur. Sōl parvus videtur. Magnus autem est. Sphaera magna est. Terra et sōl globī magni sunt.

De quo tu legis, puer?

Ego de sōle legō, magister.

§§ 4, 5 a-d, 21, 27

Quae de eō legis?

10 Legō: nōs lumen magnum in caelō videre; id lumen candidum esse; id sōlem vocari; sōlem globosum videri; eum parvum videri; magnum autem esse; terram et sōlem globōs esse magnos.

is (N. mas.)	<i>he, it</i>	eum (Ac. mas.)	<i>him, it</i>	id (N. Ac. neut.)	<i>this, it</i>
lumen	Int. § 10	parvus	<i>small</i>	quid (N. Ac. sing.)	<i>what?</i>
quoque	<i>too, also</i>	sunt	<i>(they) are</i>	quae (N. Ac.)	<i>what things?</i>
ego	<i>I</i>	-ō (I)		tu	<i>thou</i>
				-s (thou)	
				-t (he, it, she)	-nt (they)

Former declarations are often made a part of new statements.

Latin has *only one* way. English has *several* ways.

Ea globus dicitur. § 125

It is called a globe.

Eam globum dici audio.

I hear it (be) called a globe;

Int. § 5 a and c

it being called a globe;

that-it is called a globe.

Ego eam globum vocō.

I call it a globe;

(I it globe call-I)

I am-calling it a globe;

Int. § 5 b

Me eam globum vocāre audit.

He hears me call it a globe.

Int. § 5 g

hears-of my calling it a globe;

hears that-I call it a globe.

DE LUNA

Aliud lumen in caelō videō. Id lumen quoque **magnum** est. Id nōn **candidum** est. **Suave** est. Id lumen **lūna** dīcitur. Luna nōn **plāna** videtur. Ea **globōsa** videtur. Luna **rotunda** est. Ea quoque **globus** dicitur. Luna **magna** est. Ea **globus** est **magnum**. Terra et luna **magnae** sunt. Eae **globī magnī** sunt.

De quo puer legit, discipulī? §§ 1 and 2

Is de alio lumine legit, magister. § 74, 7

Quas res de eo lumine legit? 10

Legit: me aliud lumen in caelō videre; id nōn **candidum** esse; **suāve** esse; id lumen **lunam** dīcī; eam **globōsam** viderī; **rotundam** esse; eam quoque **globum** dīcī; **lunam globum** esse **magnum**; terram et lunam **magnās** esse; eas **globōs** esse **magnōs**.

15

(a) The nouns, **globus** and **discipulī** (cf. **inimicus** § 75) are *masculine* like the English nouns, *Julius* and *alumnus* (pl. *alumni*). The nouns, **nātura**, **sphaera**, **terra**, **luna** (like *Julia*) are *feminine*. So also **caelum** (Nom. of **caelō**) is *neuter* like *stratum* (pl. *strata*).

(b) "Lumen magnum" (p. 4). Int 5 d and § 82 e.

"Id lumen," *this light* (line 2), must be *nominative*, since it is the subject of the *finite* verb, *est*; but "id lumen" (line 10, p. 4) must be *accusative*, as it is the subject of the *infinitive*, *esse*.

NOTE.—The *accusative* of *neuters* is always like the *nominative*, while the *accusative singular* of *masculines* and *feminines* always differs from the *nominative*. §§ 78-79

(c) *Masculine* forms, **plānus** (*flat*), is (*this, he, it*), **rotundus**, **parvus**, are used referring to **sōl**, p. 4. **Sōl** must, therefore, be a *masculine* noun. So also, the *feminine* forms, **plana** (*flat*), **ea** (*this, she, it*), **rotunda**, etc., prove **tellus**, p. 3, to be *feminine* and the *neuter* forms, **aliud** (*other*), **magnum** (Nom.), etc., prove **lūmen** *neuter*.



DE LUCE ET TENEBRIS

Lūx¹ diēs² dicitur. Nox¹ tenebrae² vocātur. Tellūs nōn lucida est. Ea¹ obscura est. Lucem³ ab sole accipit. Lucem quoque a luna accipit. Sol interdiu terrae⁴ lumen dat. Luna noctu ei lumen³ dat. Is interdiu, ea noctu terram illuminat. Lumen solis⁵ candidum et ardens est. Lumen lūnae suave est.

Quam multis de rebus hodie legimus?

De duabus rebus, magister.

§§ 23, 30, 31

10 Quae² res sunt, discipuli?

§§ 6, 8, 38, 137

Res duae sunt lux ac tenebrae.

Legimus: lūcem¹ diem² dicī; noctem tenebrās appellārī; tellurem obscuram esse; eam¹ ab sole et a luna lucem³ accipere; eum interdiū, eam¹ noctū tellūrem illūmināre; lumen solis candidum atque ardens, lūnae suave esse.

avert = turn (away) from

a, ab, abs (away) from absent

abstain = keep (away) from

accipit gets, receives

diary = daily (record)

dat gives hodie this-day, to-day

intervene = come between

dies day interdiu during the day

lucid = having light

lux lucem light nox noctem night

rebus = (shown) by things

tenebrae shadows, darkness

¹ § 74, 1, 2.

² § 74, 3.

³ § 74, 4.

⁴ § 74, 6.

⁵ Possession assumed.

DĒ LŪMINE TELLŪRIS

Terra lumen non ēdit. Altera pars illuminata, altera pars in tenebris est. Terra non lucida est. Ea nātura obscura est. Radius sōlis illuminatur. Sōl terrae lumen dat. Is autem ab eā lumen non accipit. Luna quoque terrae lumen dat. Sol lunaque eam illuminant. (See p. 2.)

DĒ LŪMINE LŪNAE

Luna lumen non edit. Altera pars lūnae clara, altera in tenebris est. Ea quoque natura obscura, non lucida est. Lux eius aliena est. Ea luce aliena lucet. Sōl ei lucem dat. Is eam accendit. Ab eā lucem alienam accipimus.

Sōl terrae lumen dat *the sun gives the earth light*. Int. § 5 f. Sōl must be a *nominative* form, since it is the *subject* of dat; terrae must be *dative* form, as it is the *indirect object* of dat; lumen must be *accusative* form, as it is the *direct object* of dat.

Dē lumine telluris *about the earth's light*. Int. § 5 e. Lūmine must be an *ablative* form, as *de* always takes the ablative.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
N. is he, it, this, that	ea this, she, it	id this, that, it
G. eius his, its, of it	eius her, of her	eius its, of that
D. eī (to) him, it, that	eī (to) her, it, that	eī it, (to) that
Ac. eum him, it, this	eam her, it, this	id it, this, that
V. —	—	—
Ab. eō him, by it, this	eā her, by it, that	eō by it, that

alien = of-another (land) § 109 c	accendit sets aglow or afire
clarify = make clear, bright	altera the one — altera the other
data = things given	edit gives out, sends forth
apart — to one side, aside	lucet shines -que and § 21

DE LUMINE TERRAE LUNAEQUE

Et terra et luna natura obscurae sunt. Eae lumen nōn edunt. Neque terra nec luna lucida est. Lux earum aliena est. Sol eīs lumen dat. Hic eas illuminat. Sōl ab eīs nōn illuminatur. Luna natura atque obscuritate terrae similis est. Luna **terrae** lumen suave dat. Terra item **lunae** lumen suave dat. Lumen suave inter se dant.

Quam multis de rebus hodie legimus? § 74, 7, 9

De una re sola, magister; de lumine. §§ 37, 40, 23

10 Quas res de eo legimus?

Legimus: et terram et lunam obscuras esse; eas neque lumen edere neque natura lucidas esse; lucem autem earum esse alienam; solem eīs lumen dare; hunc eas illuminare neque ab eīs illūminārī; et lūnam **terrae** et terram **lunae**
15 lumen dare; eas suave inter se lumen dare.

Make a list of all subjects of finite verbs. They are all nominative. Also subjects of infinitives. They are accusative. § 125

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
N. eī, ī they, those	eae they, these	ea these (things)
G. eorum their, of these	earum their, etc.	eorum their, etc.
D. eīs (to) them, those	eīs (to) them, etc.	eīs (to) them
Ac. eōs them, these	eās them, those	ea them
Ab. eīs (by) them, these	eīs (by) them, etc.	eīs with them

neither = *not . . . either* §§ 65, 118 b et both . . . et and § 66

none = *not one, not any* § 118 -que and neque and . . . not § 24

obscurity = *darkness* § 45 hic he, it, this (I mention) § 117

similarity = *likeness* § 91 inter se between themselves, to

sole (owner) = *only* (owner) § 40 each other, to one another

unity = *oneness* § 120 quam multis? how many? § 64

DĒ CANDŌRE SŌLIS

Sōl **nulla** ex **parte** obscurus.¹ Is **naturā** candidus est. Sol ex **omnibus partibus** clarus ardensque. Is lumen in omnis partis edit. Lumen eius non alienum est. Luna eī lumen non dat. Haec ab **eō** illuminatur, neque eum illumi-
nat. Sōl **luce sua** lucet. Luna **luce aliēnā** lucet. § 109 c.

Hesternō diē quid legimus, discipulī?

Multum dē **lūmine** terrae lūnaeque lēgimus, magister.

Hodie quid legimus?

Hodiē multum legimus dē **candōre** sōlis.

10

Cras quid legemus?

Cras de **stellis** multum legemus.

§§ 9, 10

Hodie legimus: solem **nulla** ex **parte** obscurum; eum **natura** candidum esse; sōlem ex **omnibus partibus** clarum ardentemque; lumen eius non alienum esse; lunam eī lumen
non dare; hanc ab **eō** illuminari neque eum illuminare; solem sua, lunam **aliēna luce** lucere; sōlem et terrae et lūnae lūmen dare.

Select the predicate adjectives and predicate nouns in several of the preceding lessons while they are being read aloud in Latin.

Predicate adjectives and predicate nouns are nominative, if the subject is nominative; accusative if the subject is accusative.

procrastinate = let go till to-morrow **ārdēns** burning, hot § 84

examine = view from all sides **e, ex** out of, (viewed) from

multiloquent = talking much § 70 **haec** she, it, the latter

omnibus = for all, everybody § 38 **hesternō** yester-

annul = make as nothing

multum much, a great deal

stellar = of stars, starry

nulla no, not any **ullā** any

suicide = killing one's self § 116 c

suā luce with his own light

¹ The verb *est*, and other forms of *esse*, are occasionally omitted.

DE STELLIS

Alia lumina in caelo videmus. Ea lumina solum noctu videmus. Ea crebra sunt et innumerabilia. Puncta parva videntur. Ea lūmina stellae vocantur. Stellae nōn plānae videntur. Eae globōsae videntur. Stellae natura rotundae sunt. Eae quoque sphaerae dicuntur. Stellae et sīdera appellantur. Eae longe a terra absunt. Eae quoque magnae sunt. Parvae videntur, quod tantum spatium absunt.

Quas res vōs hesternō die legistis, discipuli?

10 Herī multa de sōlis candore legimus, magister.

Quibus de rebus hodie legitis?

Hodie nōs de stellis legimus.

§§ 58, 140 -se

Cras de quō vōs legetis?

74, 11, 18

Crās dē stellārum candōre legēmus.

15 Hodie legimus: nōs alia lumina noctu videre; ea crebra et innumerabilia esse; ea stellas vocarī; stellas et sīdera dici; eās longe a terra abesse; parvas viderī, quod tantum spatium a nōbis absint; magnas autem permagnas esse.

As a review exercise, re-read several of the preceding lessons aloud in Latin and select and write down all indirect objects of verbs (they are all dative); direct objects (they are accusative).

absent = *being away* § 185

alibi = *elsewhere* § 117 a

alias = *at another time*

appeal = *to call (upon)*

multiform = *of many shapes*

innumerable = *countless* § 220, 7

punctual = *on the dot*

sidereal = *of the stars* § 78 b

solitary = *being alone* § 66

spacious = *roomy* § 74, 17

crebra (n. pl.) *thick, close*

herī = *hesternō die* § 68 c

longe *far, at a distance*

multa (n.) *many (things)*

parva (n. pl.) *small, little*

per- *very* § 64

quod *because, that, in that*

sidera (n. pl.) *stars* § 78 b

spatium *space, distance*

tantum *so great, so large*

DE CANDORE SIDERUM

Sidera nulla ex parte **obscura** sunt. Ea natura **candida** **atque ardentia**. Ex omnibus partibus **clara** sunt. Sidera lumen in omnīs partīs radiant. Luna sideribus lumen non dat. Ab sole lumen non accipiunt. Neque sol neque luna **sidera** illuminat. Nam luce sua lucent. Sol enim **sīdus** est. Sidera **aliī soles** sunt. Sōl propius adest. Sidera longius absunt. Terra lunaque lucem ab sideribus accipiunt. Eae lumine alieno illuminantur. Sol et alia sidera luce sua lucent. Lux enim eorum non **aliēna** est. 10

De quo legit Iulia, discipulī?

§ 109 c

Ea de candore siderum legit, magister.

§ 74, 11

Quae de eorum candore legit?

Ea legit: sidera nulla ex parte **obscura** esse; ea natūra **candida atque ardentia**; ex omnibus partibus esse **clara**; 15 sidera lumen in omnīs partīs radiare; lūnam sideribus lumen non dare; neque ea ab sole lumen accipere; neque solem nec lūnam sidera illuminare; et terram et lunam lucem a sideribus accipere; ea autem **sōles** esse et luce sua lucere; itemque solem **sīdus** esse; eum propius adesse; ea longius 20 abesse; terram lūnamque lūmine aliēnō illūminārī.

Select all nouns denoting the means of an action or used with the prepositions, **ā, ab, de, e, ex**. They are all ablative.

acceptance = act of receiving

partial = favoring one side

alien = of another (land) 109 c

radiate = send out rays

ea (n.) they, them. See p. 8

sīdus (n. sing.) a star, a sun

longius too far, farther § 69

sider-um of the stars § 78 b

nam for enim (for) indeed § 66

-t-ur he, she, it (acted upon)

propius rather near, nearer

-nt-ur they (acted upon) § 180

DE DIE AC NOCTE

Lux dies vocatur. Obscuritas nox appellatur. **Mane** aurora rubescit. Stellae evanescent. Lucescit. Dies fit. Sol oritur. Illam partem caeli Orientem appellamus. Dies
 5 ad laborem datur. Sol **tōtō** die in caelo lucet. **Medio** die sol altus in caelo videtur. Illam partem caeli Meridiem vocamus. Medius dies et meridies dicitur. **Multo** die advesperascit. Sol occidit. Illam partem caeli Occidentem dicimus. Post occasum solis obscurascit. Stellae iterum
 10 lucescunt. Nox fit. Nox ad quietem datur. **Vesperī** luna plena ab oriente oritur. Haec **tota nocte** in caelō lucet. **Media nocte** alta in caelo videtur. **Mane** ab occidente occidit. Stellae quoque ab oriente oriri videntur. Hae aut ab occidente cadunt, aut **ortū** sōlis ēvānēscunt.

Select all nouns used to denote time *at which, in which, or during which*. They are all ablative, except **vesperī** (Loc.).

Select all nouns used with the prepositions, **ā, ab, and de**. They are all ablative. Select all nouns used with the prepositions, **ad, post, and circum**. They are all accusative.

decadent = *falling down* § 219

evanescent = *growing dim*

nocturnal = *nightly*

occasional = *falling at times*

occidental = *western* § 219, 3

oriental = *eastern* § 84

ad (w. Ac.) *toward, to, for*

aurora *eastern sky, dawn*

fi-t *become-s, is made or done*

māne *in the morning, early*

meridies *midday, south, noon*

postpone = *leave till afterward*

plenty = *fulness*

convalesce = *get well, improve*

reiterate = *go over again*

rubescant = *growing red*

vespers = *evening services* § 76

multo die *late in the day*

occidi-t *settle-s, set-s* § 180

oriri *raise-self, rise* §§ 6, 123

-tas, -tatem -ty, -ness §§ 37-9

-sce- *become, grow, get* § 223

Quas res vos in natura videtis? Multas res videmus.

Quae de natura discitis? Multa discimus, magister.

Nam lucem diem vocari audimus. Obscuritatem noctem appellari intellegimus. Mane enim auroram rubescere, stellas evanescere, lucescere, diem fieri, solem oriri videmus. 5 Illam partem caeli Orientem dici audimus. Solem toto die in caelo lucere videmus. Medio die eum altum in caelo esse cernimus. Illam partem caeli meridiem appellari audimus. Medium quoque diem meridiem dici intellegimus. Multo die advesperascere novimus. Solem occidere videmus. 10 Illam partem Occidentem sive solis occasum dici audimus. Post solis occasum obscurescere, stellas iterum lucescere, noctem fieri videmus. Discimus diem ad laborem, noctem autem ad quietem dari. Nobis videtur lunam et stellas ab oriente oriri, ab occidente cadere. Discimus ita non fieri; 15 terram autem moveri et circum axem suum volvi.

Make a list of all nouns used as predicate of the subject or as predicate of the object. See § 74, 3, 5; Int. 5 b

	Solem	oriri	videmus.
<i>We see</i>	<i>the sun</i>	<i>rise.</i>	Int. § 5 g
<i>We see</i>	<i>the sun</i>	<i>[be] rising.</i>	§ 142
<i>We observe</i>	<i>(that) the sun</i>	<i>rises.</i>	
		Lucescere	novimus.
<i>We know</i>	<i>(it)</i>	<i>to get light.</i>	
<i>We have learned</i>	<i>(that) it</i>	<i>gets light.</i>	

auditor = *hearer, listener*

discern = *see clearly, distinguish*

disciple = *learner, follower*

intelligent = *understanding*

noble = *deserving to be known*

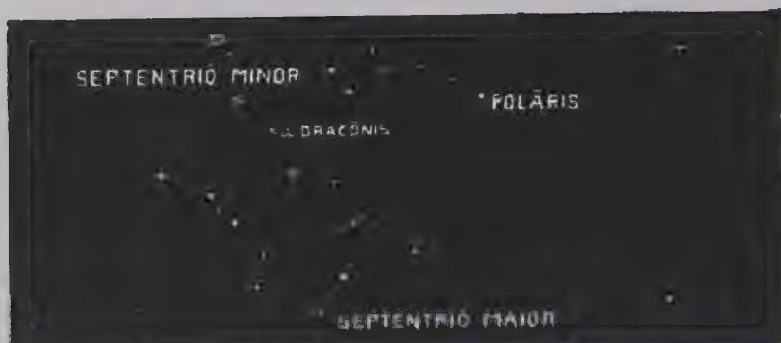
axis, axem *axis, axle*

cerni-mus *we see, notice*

disci-mus *we learn*

fieri *be done, happen* § 215

moveri *move-self* §§ 180-2



DE SEPTENTRIONIBUS

Nocte signum magnum in caelo videmus. Signum illud ex stellis septem constat. Id Septentrio vocatur. Septentrio et Arctos dicitur. Duas eius signi stellas 'indices' appellamus, quod Polum indicant. Stella illa et Polaris vocatur. Unus ex stellis polus immobilis manere videtur. Ceterae enim stellae circum polum volvi videntur. Nos illam partem caeli Septentrionem appellamus. Duo sunt septentriones, quorum alter Septentrio maior, alter minor dicitur. Stella Polaris septentrionis minoris est.

Signum illud means *that (well-known) figure or constellation*; **illud signum** means simply *that figure or constellation (yonder)*.

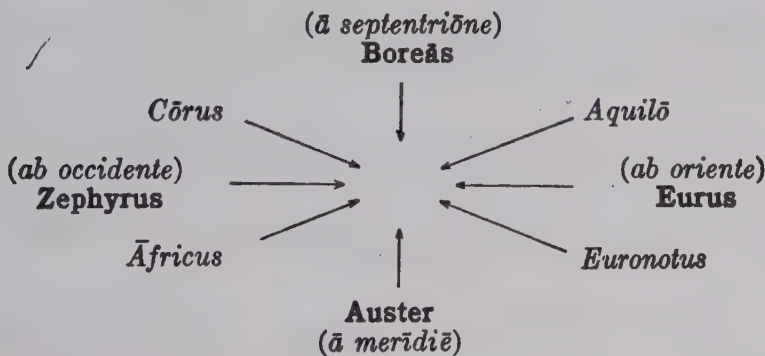
Septentriō [minor], *Smaller Bear* or *Little Dipper*, is nominative and has no ending; -ō is a part of the stem; Acc. **septentriōnem**; stem or base **septentriōn-**. See § 42, 2.

Septentriōnis — est is *of* or *belongs to* the "*Smaller Dipper*."

alternate = <i>the one or the other</i>	cōnsta-t consist-s, is made
arctic = <i>under the (Great) Bear</i>	maior larger minor smaller
et cetera = <i>and all the rest</i>	quōrum <i>of which, and-of-them</i>
index finger = <i>pointer finger</i> § 46	Septentriō <i>seven-ox-team</i>
permanent = <i>remaining fixed</i>	unus <i>only (one), alone</i> § 118 b
September = <i>seventh (month)</i>	volvi <i>turn-self, revolve</i> § 182
constellation = <i>group of stars</i>	polus <i>pole (-star), sky (above)</i>

DE VENTIS

Quattuor partes vel regiones caeli sunt Septentriōnes, Meridies, Oriens, Occidens. Quattuor item venti principes sunt Boreas, Auster, Eurus, Zephyrus. Horum primus, Boreas, ab septentrionibus oritur. Is ita semper frigidus est. Boreas **nubis** fugat, **caelum** serenat, **frigus** facit. Alter est Auster, qui et Notus vocatur. Hic ventus a meridie oritur. Tepidus igitur madensque est. Saepe **caelum** nubibus obscurat et **pluviam** fert. Tertius, qui Eurus nominatur, ab oriente venit. **Quartum** Zephyrum nominamus. Hic ventus ab occidente spirat. Neque madens nec frigidus, semper nobis gratus est. Zephyrus saepe **nubis** candidas fert.



aurora borealis = northern dawn	fer-t bring-s	fuga-t rout-s
Australia = southland	h-ōrum of-these, of-them § 117b	
fact = a thing made, done, caused	igitur therefore	item § 66 a
frigid = cooling, chilling	madens damp	nōbis (to) us
nominate = mention the name of	nubes cloud	pluvia rain § 79
tepid = lukewarm	qui which, that, who, as § 115	
convene = come together § 220, 4	regio, regiōnem part, quarter	
ventilate = let in draft of air	saepe often	semper always
Zephyr = west wind § 26	serena-t clear-s	vel or

DĒ TELLŪRE IPSĀ

Multa adhuc legimus de sole, de lūna, de stellis; multa quoque de tellure cum illis comparata. Nunc autem plura de ipsa tellure lecturī sumus. De interiore tellure pauca nota sunt. Nemo penitus in terram vidit aut inspexit. Nemo in intima terrae penetravit aut ea novit. Solum terrae alibi molle alibi firmum. Interior terra firma ac solida est. Quo penitius in eam penetratur, eo firmior ac solidior fit.

Useful Observations

(a) **Pauca** (line 4) must be plural, as it is the subject of **sunt**. Plurals ending in **-a** are neuter.

(b) **Multa** (direct obj. of **legimus** in line 2) must be accusative. Native Latin (not Greek) accusatives in **-a** are *neuter* and *plural*.

(c) Prepositions govern *either* the *Accusative* or the *Ablative*. The word **intima** must be accusative, for there is no such ablative ending as **-a**. Therefore **intima** must be a *plural* form and mean *inmost* (*things* or *parts*) since it must also be *neuter*.

comparable = *to be compared*

firmness = *solidity, hardness*

inspect = *look-into* § 220, 7

intimate = *knowing the inmost*

mollify = *make soft, soften*

noted = *well known, marked*

alibi *in one place . . . alibi* *in another (place)* § 117

adhuc *up to this (point) so far*

inspexit *has looked into*

-ior, -ius -er, more, rather, too

lecturī *going to read* **sumus** *are*

multa *many (things)* **pauca** *few*

nemo *no one* **nunc** *now*

nōvit *has learned, knows*

plura *more (things)* § 150

penitus *deep (into)*

penitius *deeper, farther (into)*

quo *the* **eo** *the (Int. 5 j)*

solum *ground* **vidit** *has seen*

DE TERRA ET AQUA

Telluris tris partīs aqua cingit. Reliqua pars ex aqua edita est. Haec terra firma dicitur. Terra et aqua omnibus rebus **inter se** differunt. Haec liquida et fluens, illa firma ac solida. Haec natura ipsa ubique aequa est. Illa alibi aequa ac plana, alibi aspera atque infōrmis. Haec ubique **ad telluris rotunditatem** accommodata atque cōnfōrmis aequor aequitate dicitur. Illa alibi planities, campī immensī, alibi colles, valles et montes asperī.

Select from the reading lesson above :

1. Words that are connected by conjunctions meaning *and*:
(a) Five pairs of adjectives; (b) Three groups of nouns.
2. Six nouns with adjectives. Which show gender? (p. 5, obs.; §§ 54, 55 f).
3. Three predicate nouns (§ 74, 3); six predicate adjectives.

Select the following from the reading lesson (p. 16) :

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Neuter plurals. | 4. Feminine adjectives. |
| 2. Neuter singulars (p. 5, obs.). | 5. (pp. 7, 11) Ablative cases. |
| 3. Feminine nouns (p. 5, obs. c). | 6. Accusative cases. |

accommodated = *adjusted, fitted*
aquatic = *fond of water*
asperity = *ruggedness*
conforming = *adapting-self*

fluent = *flowing, running*
immense = *unmeasured*
informal = *not of regular form*
relic = *remaining, the rest (of)*

aequor *even expanse, sea (level)*
campus *plain, level surface*
coll-es *hill-s* **ex** *up-out-of*

illa *that, former* **haec** *latter*
inter se *from each other* § 74, 9
ubi- *-where* **-que** *every-* § 119

DE AERE ET AETHERE

Aër fluens terram et aequor ex omnibus partibus cingit
 atque amplectitur. Aer tenuis ac fluidus. Aerī tamen
 pondus est. **Pondere** suō terram et aequor petit, atque
 5 terram et aequor, nos et omnia ¹ premit. Inferior aer ³
 crassus ac densus, superior rarus et magis tenuis. Quo
 altius **ex aequore** itur, **eō** magis aer rarescit et tenuis fit.
 Quo magis ad aequor ² descenditur **eo** densior ac magis
 crassus fit. Quantam in altitudinem aer **e terra** patescat,
 10 notum non est. Restat ultimus, omnia cingens, Aether.
 Hic rarissimus est ac tenuissimus.³ Immensus aether ³
 aerem et omnia ¹ amplectitur. § 152

Aerī pondus est *There is weight to air.* §§ 51, 105
 (to-air weight **belongs**) *Air has weight.* See Int. § 5 e

Omnia cingens, *embracing (surrounding) everything.*

Quō altius ex aequore itur, eō rarior fit. § 74, 19
The higher up-from sea-level you-go, the rarer it becomes.

fluent = *flowing* § 97 ponderous = *weighty* §§ 41, 42

omnipotent = *all-powerful* attenuate = *make-thin*

appetite = *a seeking-for* § 220 ultimum = *last offer*

amplecti-tur *surround-s*

crassus *thick, dense*

e, ex *up from* inferior *lower*

-ior, -ius -er magis *more*

patescat *extends, spreads out*

premi-t *press-es, weighs down*

re-sta-t *stand-s back, remain-s*

tamen *yet, nevertheless*

¹ Study the following examples carefully.

Castra capi videt *he sees the camp (be) taken.*

§ 40 b

Imperata faciunt *they do the (things that are) commanded.*

Propter vulnera militum *because of the soldiers' wounds.*

NOTE. — If a native Latin (not Greek) noun ending in **-a** is used as the subject of an infinitive, as the object of a verb or preposition, it is instantly known to be *neuter* and *plural*. § 82 d

² How may the case of **aequor** be known?

³ The gender of **aër** and **aethër**?

DE POLIS CAELI AC TELLURIS

Stella Polaris uno in loco fixa videtur. Regionem illam polum **caeli** dicimus. Ceterae stellae circum eam volvi videntur, quod tellūs circum axem suum volvitur. Tellus volvitur ab occidente orientem versus. Stellae igitur ab 5 oriente ad occidentem volvi videntur. Polum **telluris** vocamus eam partem quae sub stella polari posita est. Polus ipse terminus est **axis terrae**. Terminī **axis** sunt duo. Duo igitur sunt poli **telluris**, e quibus alter Polus Septentrionalis, alter Australis appellatur. Eae regiones semper 10 frigidae sunt. Omnia ibi frigore rigent. Toto anno nix alta et glaciēs humi iacent.

Select the following from the readings, pp. 14, 18, 19.

1. Ablatives (w. prep.). 2. Ablatives (without prep.).
3. Accusatives (w. prep.). 4. Accusatives (without prep.).
5. Direct objects. 6. Predicates nominative.
7. Predicates accusative attached to direct objects.
8. All genitives. 9. All pronouns. 10. All adverbs.
11. Adjectives (comp.). 12. Adjectives (superl.).
13. Prepositions (w. Acc.). 14. Prep. (w. Abl.).
15. Verbs and pronouns understood (pp. 9, 11, 18).

annual = <i>yearly, of a year</i>	humi (Loc.) <i>on the ground</i> § 76
biennially = <i>every two years</i>	ibi <i>in it, there, among them</i>
glacier = <i>stream of ice</i>	igitur <i>therefore, then</i>
exhume = <i>unearth</i> § 220, 6	ipse (emphatic) <i>himself, itself</i>
adjacent = <i>that lie near</i>	nix, nive <i>snow</i> § 78
(Sierra) Nevada = <i>snow-capped</i>	omn-ia <i>all (things), every-thing</i>
rigidity = <i>stiffness</i>	quae, quem, quibus <i>which, that</i>
postpositive = <i>placed after</i>	rigent <i>are rigid, stiff, frozen</i>
subscribe = <i>write (name) under</i>	posit-a <i>situated, placed, put</i>
exterminate = <i>put an end to</i>	versus, versum <i>-ward, toward</i>

DE IV. ANNĪ TEMPORIBUS

Alias sol ad septentrionein scandit. Tum altus in caelo videtur. Plus **lucis** atque **calōris** nobis ministrat. Hoc dies longos facit. Noctis item brevīs facit. Tum terra
5 calescit. Tempestas calida fit. Alias sol ad austrum descendit. Nobis minus **calōris** **lucis**que ministrat. Haec res brevīs dies, noctis longas facit. Terra frigescit. Tempestas frigida fit. Qua de causa quattuor **annī** tempora sunt. **Eōrum** unum tempus est Ver. Aliud tempus Aestas
10 vocatur. Tertium Autumnus, quartum Hiems dicitur. § 150

DE VERE

Vere sol in caelo scandit. Singulī dies longiores fiunt. Singulae noctes breviores fiunt. Sol **veris** calescit. Nix **hiemis** liquescit. Auster pluviam fert. Herba e terra
15 nascitur. Nudī agrī iterum virides fiunt. Arbores folia producunt. Aves ex austro revertuntur. Silvae cantu sonant. Flores aperiuntur. Iuvat in agros silvasque exire. Iuvat loca hieme deserta videre. Boves iterum per collis et vallis herba pascuntur. Virī et puerī cum equis exeunt.
20 In agrīs laborant. Agrōs arant. Semina et arbores serunt. Arbores serit diligens agricola, **quarum** adspiciet fructum ipse numquam. Serit arbores, quae alterī saeculo prōsint. § 140

arable (land) = *tillable* (land)

aviator = *birdman*

bovine = *of cows* §§ 80, 219, 2

calorie = *measure of heat*

ad-spici-e-t *shall-look-upon*

iuvat *it helps, is pleasant*

nude = *bare* **pastor** = *feeder*

sonorous = *loud sounding*

tempest = *(rough) weather* § 78

verdure = *green. green things*

prōsint *may be useful* § 220, 12

seru-nt *they sow or plant*

DĒ AESTĀTE

Aestate sol altus in caelo est. Sol **aestatis** calidus. Nos calore suo urit. Terra calida est. Caelum serenum atque caeruleum. Dies longissimī, noctes brevissimae sunt. Prima aestate rura florea sunt. Omnia florent. Apes per 5 agros vagantur. Mel dulce e floribus legunt. Copiam **mellis** sibi faciunt atque in hiemem servant. Cōpia **pabulī** esse incipit. Fructus maturescere incipiunt. Homines **pabulum** metere incipiunt. Cōpiam **pābulī** equīs et bōbus cōficiunt atque in hiemem servant. Fructus maturos legere 10 incipiunt. Copiam **fructuum** sibi conficiunt atque in hiemem servant. Media aestate frumenta maturescunt. Agris color est aureus. Frumentum maturum metitur. Copia **frumentī** conficitur atque in reliquum annum servatur. Extrema aestate omnia calore uruntur. Agrī aridī sunt. Flores 15 arescunt. Herba arescit. Boves inopia **aquae** labōrant. Omnia sitī laborant. Omnia umbras **arborum** et frīgus petunt.

Make a list of the genitives (pp. 9–11, 14, 20–1 ; cf. p. 7, obs.).

apiary = <i>bee farm</i>	arid = <i>dried</i>	incipient = <i>beginning</i>	§ 130
auri-ferous = <i>gold-bearing</i>		pervade = <i>go through</i>	§ 220, 10
copiously = <i>with a good supply</i>		reserve = <i>keep back, stow away, store up, save up</i>	§ 220, 13
extremity = <i>last part, end</i>	§ 92	rural = <i>of the (country), fields</i>	
flourish = <i>bloom, blossom</i>		umbrella = <i>little shade</i>	
fructiferous = <i>fruit-bearing</i>		combustible = <i>easily burned</i>	
hibernate = <i>sleep over winter</i>			
aureus <i>golden, of gold</i>	§ 109 c	meti-tur <i>is reaped</i>	§ 136
caeruleum <i>blue, azure</i>		pabulum <i>fodder</i>	
dulce <i>sweet, pleasant</i>		siti <i>on account of thirst</i>	§ 74, 15
labōra-nt <i>suffer, toil</i>	§ 136	uri-t <i>burn-s, scorch-es</i>	§ 220, 4

DE AUTUMNŌ

Autumnō sōl paulatim ad austrum descendit. Singuli dies **breviōrēs** fiunt. Singulae item noctes **longiōrēs** sunt. Tempestas **frigidior** esse incipit. Primo autumnno arbores fructibus curvant. Zephyrus leniter spirat. Sol autumnī iam nōn urit. Autumnus omnibus **grātus** est.

Frīgus autem in dies singulos crescit. Folia arborum paulatim varios trahunt colores. Terra frigescit. Iam agri mane pruīna albescere incipiunt. Herba paulatim moritur. Tum demum folia arescunt, moriuntur, cadunt. Hinc atque hinc pīnūs **nigrae** stant. Reliquae arborēs **nūdae** foliis sunt. Aves in austrum migrant. Homines maturant ultimos fructus legere, boves ex agrīs cogere, omnia in hiemem parare. § 127

Extremo autumnno caelum nubibus obsceurescit. Ventus saevit atque arboribus sonat. Madēns auster gelidum imbrem fert. Omnes homines tectum petunt et circum focum suum congregantur. § 182

Select from the readings (pp. 20–23). (See obs., pp. 5, 16, 18.)

1. Neuters in **-um** (Nom.), **-a** (Acc.), or **-a** (pl.).
2. Nouns shown by adjectives to be feminine. § 55 f.
3. Masculine and feminine nouns having the same ending.
4. Ablative of (a) time, (b) means, (c) with preposition.

decadent = *falling down* § 220, 5
 crescent (moon) = *growing* —
 emigrate = *move out* § 220, 6
 respiration = *breathing*
 attract = *draw to-self, take on*
 detecting = *uncovering*

demum *finally* focum *hearth*
 gelidum *icy, cold, chilly*
 imbrem *rain* len-iter *soft-ly*
 mātura-nt *hasten* nigrae *dark*
 paulatim *by degrees* pīnus *pin*
 saevi-t *rave-s* stant *stand (out)*

DE HIEME

Hieme sōl humilis ab austrō vidētur. Merīdiē vix calēscit. Brevissimī diēs, noctēs longissimae sunt. Nam ad occasum properat sōl hibernus; nox hiberna morātur ac tardātur. In dies frīgescit. Terra frīgore et pruīna rigescit. Tem-⁵pestās perfrīgida fit.

Prīma hieme nix in altīs montibus esse incipit. Cōpia nivis in dies crescit. Omnia loca superiora paulatim nive albescent. Flumina et lacus rigent gelu. Post paulō inferiora quoque loca nive alba sunt. Caelum iam serenum¹⁰ iam nubibus obscurum est.

Tum demū summa hiems in terram ruit. Ventī per terras turbine flant. Omnia furore tempestatis miscentur. Nox atra terrae impendit. Hiems omnia nive cingit. Multos dies tempestās furit. Postea fragor ventorum cadit.¹⁵ Boreās nubis fugat atque caelum serenat. Omnia silent. Tum sōl, lūna et lūcida sīdera omnis agrōs silvāsque nive candidas despiciunt.

Select from the readings, pp. 20–23, nouns and adjectives whose declension is known by endings, viz. : §§ 52, 55 c

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. -a (sing.), -ās (Ac.), -ae, -ā, or -ārum | First Declension. |
| 2. -um (N.), -ī (G.), -ō (D. Ab.), -ī (pl.), -ōs | Second Declension. |
| 3. -e (Ac.), -ī (Ab.), -is (Ac.), or -is | Third Declension. |
| 4. -ū, -ūs (G.), -us (pl.), -uum (G.) | Fourth Declension. |

album = white (paged book)	atra black	in dies daily
hibernate = sleep during winter	impendet over-hangs, hovers over	
promiscuous = mixed up	rui-t fall-s, burst-s upon § 136 e	
summit = highest point	sile-nt are still, are silent	
tardiness = slowness § 182	turbine in a whirl	vix hardly

LIFE IN ANCIENT ITALY

Let us take a peep into Central Italy of two thousand years ago. What shall we see in the land of those neighbors of ours, who lived out their lives under that famous old "Republic," which had gathered up and was still gathering the fruits of the many civilizations that had gone before, and whose lofty aims and all-embracing power were already showing signs of decline when Christ was born? Where shall we look first? (p. xviii, 7.)

In Italia sumus. Longe a Roma absumus. Nam nobis est in animo circum Arpinum paululum errare. Arpinum oppidum est Latī. Oppidanī Latīni sunt et latīne loquuntur.
 5 Sed cives Romanī dicuntur, propterea quod sub imperio Romano versantur. Iam diu civitate donatī sunt.

Apud Arpinum stamus. Ibi multōs ire et venire videmus. Alii ex oppido, alii ex agris veniunt. Hi Arpinum eunt; illi Arpino exeunt. Alii oppidanī, alii agricolae sunt.
 10 Servi cum pueris veniunt. Hi equis, illi pedibus eunt. Pueros legimus; nam eos maxime amamus. Duos e multis eligimus. Ii non longe ab nobis absunt; nam eos latīne loqui audimus.

§§ 185, 212

Select (pp. 10, 24-5) *a.* Neuters; *b.* Genitives; *c.* Ablatives.

Nōbis es-t in animō errāre we have in mind to stray;
 (to-us is-it in mind to-wander) we intend to wander.

auditor = hearer § 207 versatile = able to turn the
 erratic = wandering hands to many things, lively

dōnatī sunt (are having-been-imperio government, rule § 77 b
 presented) have been or were Latī of Latium Latīni Latins
 presented § 101 latīne in (the) Latin (manner)

iam now iam diu long since oppidānī town's people

Hī puerī amīcī sunt. Alterum Theodōrum, alterum Aemilium appellamus. Theodorus male loquitur. Aemilius bene et latine loquitur. Nam hic Romanus, ille Graecus est. Aemilius filius est civis Romanī quī non longe ab oppidō in fundo habitat. Theodorus filius est magistrī quī 5 Arpīnī habitat.

Saepe mane puerōs a fundo venīre et Arpīnum īre videmus. Saepe vesperī eos ex oppido in fundum proficisci videmus. Equo semper eunt. Alias et Theodorus et Aemilius ex oppido exīre videntur et postero die in oppidum 10 revertī; alias Aemilius solus vesperī domum redit solusque mane in oppidum venit.

Quid agunt? Discipulī sunt. In ludum cotīdie eunt. Pater Theodorī ludī magister est. Is Appoloniū appellatur. Aemilius autem filius est Paulī. Paulus appellatur Lucius 15 Aemilius Paulus. Plērique enim Rōmānī tribus nōminibus vocantur. Plerisque Graecis unum tantum nomen. § 105

Die (p. 12) shows *dies* to be of the *fifth* declension.

Select *two forms each* of nouns to show their declension.

-em and -e (pp. 3, 11, 13); and	-is and -es (pp. 11, 20, 23) Third
-em and -e (p. 13); and	-es and -e or -ebus (p. 8) Fifth
-is and -ī, -ōs (pp. 21, 24-5)	-is and -a, -ī (pp. 20, 22) Second
-is and -ae (pp. 8, 10) First	-ibus and -us (p. 22) Fourth
-ibus and -a (p. 11); and	-es and -ibus (pp. 21-2) Third

benevolent = *wishing well* § 69

elude = *play out of reach of*

malcontent = *ill satisfied*

cotīdie *every day, daily*

fundus *river bottom, farm, plantation, estate*

paternal = *fatherly, father's*

solitary = *alone, lonely*

revert = *turn back* § 220, 13

in ludum *to school* § 74, 10, 12

posterō die *on the following day*

red-i-t *go-es back* § 220, 13

IN LŪDŌ LITTERÁRIO

Ludus Arpinī est. Summī eius regionis virī filios eo mittunt. Ibi puerī legunt, scribunt, numerīs operam dant. Ibi et Graeca et Latīna discunt. Romanī enim hoc tempore
 5 maximam litterīs Graecīs operam dant. Philosophōs Graecōs sequuntur. (Omnēs adhūc maximī poētae, ōrātōrēs, philosophī Graecī sunt.) Nullus adhuc Romanus aut summus poeta aut philosophus est. Itaque Rōmanī et graece et latīnē loquuntur. Magistrīs Graecīs ūtuntur. Primō domī
 10 his studiis operam dant. Postea Romam, Athenas, Rhodum eius rei causa proficiſcuntur.

Appolonius pure et graece loquitur. (Hic non est Appolonius ille, quī multos annos Rhodī magister artis dicendī erat. Ille Appolonius Molo appellatus est. Noster Ap-
 15 polonius Sardibus in Italiam venit.) Theodorus latine loquī discit. Ceterī discipuli bene et latine loquuntur. Aemilius bene et graece loquī vult. Et eius rei causa socium sibi Theodōrum asciscit.

Quid hodie agunt? Nos cum pueris in ludum ingredimur.
 20 Hī prīmo numerīs operam dant. Eos numerare audimus. Una cum eīs numeramus. Nam nobis quoque discendī sunt numerī Latīnī. Ita eōs discere cupimus. Cum Aemilio et Theodoro numeros et mensuras discimus atque eodem tempore cum nostrīs numerīs et mensurīs comparamus. § 104

consequent = *following up*

cupidity = *eagerness, desire*

discipline = *learning, training*

in-gredients = *things going in*

a-scisci-t take-s, accept-s § 220

eō to it § 119 d ita so, therefore

mensuration = *measuring*

enumerate = *count out* § 220, 6

society = *companionship*

utilize = *make use of, employ*

operam dant *pay heed, study*

summī *prominent, great* § 92



POMPEII AS SEEN FROM AN AÉROPLANE

DE NUMERIS

Numerorum quīnque genera sunt. Ūnum genus est eorum quī ipsum numerum indicant. Huius generis sunt **unus, duo, tres, quattuor, quinque, sex** et cetera. Hi indicant de quot numero rebus agatur. Numeri *cardināles* appellantur. Pauci ex his declinantur; plerique semper idem scribuntur.

Alterum genus est eorum quibus ordō indicatur. Huius generis sunt **primus, alter, tertius, quartus, quintus, sextus**, et cetera. His indicatur non verus numerus sed de quota ordine re agatur. Hi omnes declinantur prima et secunda declinatione. Numeri *ordinales* dicuntur, quod tantum ordinem nōtant.

Tertium genus est eorum quī singulis totidem numero res attribuunt. Huius generis sunt **singulī, binī, ternī, quaterni, quini, sēni**, et cetera. His indicatur quotenae res singulis tribuantur. Omnes primae et secundae declinationis sunt, plerumque plurales. Hi numeri *distribuentes* appellantur.

Quartum genus (Nom.) is neuter. See note, p. 5, and §§ 42, 54. What is the acc. sing. and pl. of **genus**? **tempus** (p. 20)? **aliud lumen**. id **lumen** (pp. 5, 10)? **sīdus** (p. 11)? **nōmen** (p. 29)?

general = relating to a class
identity = sameness § 112 b

agatur it is treated, account is taken, one speaks, discusses

est eōrum consists of those
tot so many quot as many § 64

totidem just as many § 119 b

inscribe = write upon § 220, 7
tribute = what is given

de quota (ordine) **re** about which thing (in order)

quotenae . . . singulis, how many . . . (to) each

tribuant assign, give cf. § 139

Quartum genus est eorum quī de duplicando, de triplicando, de multiplicando agunt. Huius generis sunt **simplex**, **duplex**, **triplex**, **quadruplex**, **quīncuplex**, et cetera. Hi indicant quam multae sint rei plicaturae. Omnes declinatione tertia declinantur. Omnes adhuc numeri nōmina adiectiva sunt.

Quintum genus est adverbiorum numeralium. Huius generis sunt **semel**, **bis**, **ter**, **quater**, **quīnquiēns**, **sexiēns**, et cetera. Haec indicant quotiens fiat, quotiens numeretur, quotiēns repetatur aut capiatur. Adverbia nōn declinantur sed eadem ubique scribuntur.

Maximus numerus Latinus est **mille**. "Mille libri" scribere licet. Supra hunc numerum necesse est **duo milia librorum**, **centum milia librorum**, **bis centēna milia librorum** scribere. **Milia** nomen est substantivum. Qua de causa casus genitivus ei ubique succedit.

Find the bases of nouns (pp. 28-9) by comparing forms (§ 54).

adjective = added <i>name denoting quality</i>	duplicate = <i>the double of</i>
biscuit = <i>twice cooked</i> § 83	substantive = (name) <i>standing out by itself</i>
capiatur (<i>a thing</i>) <i>is taken</i>	plicaturae <i>folds, repetitions</i>
fiat (<i>something</i>) <i>is done</i> § 213	simplex <i>one-fold, simple</i>
-iens, -ies <i>times</i> § 120 g	succedit <i>come-s up or after</i>
licet <i>it is lawful, permitted</i>	ubi- <i>-where</i> -que <i>every-</i> § 119 e

Indeclinable Numerals. (Many numerals are declined, § 120.)

quinque <i>five</i>	quīnquiēns <i>5-times</i>	decem <i>ten</i>	decies <i>10-times</i>
quīndecim <i>fifteen</i>	quīndecies <i>15-times</i>	viginti <i>twenty</i>	
vicies <i>20-times</i>	vicies quīnquies <i>25-times</i>	viginti quinque <i>25</i>	
quīnquaginta <i>fifty</i>	quīnquagies <i>50-times</i>	centum <i>hundred</i>	
centiens <i>100-times</i>	quingenties <i>5-hundred times</i>	mille <i>1000</i>	

DE COLÖRIBUS

Colörēs radiīs lūcis fiunt. Nocte obscūrā nūllus cernitur color. Absente luce, color abest. Cum primum lūcescit, omnia colores proprios trahunt. Suus quidem cuique color est. Tenebrae atrae vel nigrae dicuntur, quod colorem habent nullum.

Lux clara candida est. Sed lucī sunt radii variī. Omnes coniūcti atque iūstis modis mixti albam vel candidam faciunt lucem. Dispersi ac separati alii alio sunt colore.
10 Nonnulli oculis cerni non possunt. § 62 g

Colōrum infinita varietās. Dē paucis ac summīs breviter dicendum est. Nix alba vel candida est. Sanguis ruber. Rosae variae sunt. Aliae albo colore; aliae vivo, aliae suavi rubro; nonnullae etiam flavo. Auro color est flavus.
15 Herbae arborumque foliis viridis. Caelō ac marī caeruleus. Violae violaceus. Inter caeruleum autem et violaceum est color caeruleus obscurus, quī Indicus vocatur. Summī igitur colores sunt ruber, luteus, flāvus, viridis, caeruleus, indicus, violāceus.

Select (pp. 28–9, 30): a. Indicatives; b. Subjunctives (§ 216); c. Datives; d. Ablatives; e. Masculine nouns. See § 55 f.

Suus cui-que color est, every thing has its § 105
(its-own to-each-thing color is) particular color. Int. § 5 e

Omnes coniuncti (when or if) all (are) taken together (§ 95): et iustis modis mixti and (if) mixed in the right proportions. Dispersi ac separati (if or when) scattered and separated. Dicendum est it is to-be-spoken, we must speak.

indigo = Indian blue

property = what is one's own

sanguinary = bloody

cum primum when first, as soon as

possunt can quidem indeed § 69

summi most important

DE MĒNSŪRĀ TEMPORIS

Tempus hōris, diēbus, mēnsibus, annis, saeculis mētīmur. Brevissimum spatium punctum temporis dicimus. Modi igitur temporis sunt punctum, hora, dies, mensis, annus, saeculum. Qua ratione tempora notamus, de ea nunc legemus.

Apud nos dies initium capit a media nocte. Pertinet ad mediam noctem proximam. Tempus diēi aut noctis hora notamus, ut sexta hora Ante Meridiem [6 A.M.] vel decima hora Post Meridiem [10 P. M.]. A media nocte ad meridiem 10 horas duodecim numeramus. Ā meridie ad mediam noctem posteram horas duodecim numeramus. Dies igitur in viginti quattuor horas divīsus est.

Trigintā diērum spatium vulgō mēnsis habētur. Tempora mensis numero vero diēi indicamus, ut primo die, secundo 15 die, tertio die, quarto die, reliquisque ordine diebus usque ad ultimum diem mensis.

Annus est in duodecim mensis divīsus. Quorum primus est Ianuarius, ultimus December. Septembri sunt dies trīginta; Aprili, Iuniō, Novembri totidem. Reliquis omni- 20 bus praeter Februarium sunt dies trīginta ūnus. Huic mensi soli sunt dies duodetrīginta.

Omnibus ita completis mensibus, verus annus exactus non est. Quarta fere pars diēi reliqua est. Semel igitur quattuor annorum spatio ūnus addendus est dies. Is dies 25 mensi brevissimo additur Februario. Hoc quadriennium

addendus est	<i>is to be added,</i>	mensi sunt	<i>they measured</i>	§ 101
	<i>has to be added</i>	§ 104	meti-mur	<i>we measure</i>
			§ 211	
initium capi-t	<i>take-s its start</i>	modus	<i>limit, measure</i>	

paulo longius facit. Is igitur dies omittendus interdum est. Quod accidit ter annorum quadringentum spatio. Tempus annī mensī et die notatur, ut die septimo mensis Marti [March 7] aut die vicensimo septimō mensis Mai.

5 Spatium centum annorum saeculum dicitur. Tempus saeculī anno indicamus, ut anno nonagensimo octavo [98]. Omnes fere gentes tempus hodie indicant numero annī post Christum natum aut ante Christum natum. Ita dicimus Anno Domīni millensimo quadringentensimo nonagensimo
10 secundo Columbum Americam invenisse et annō quadragen-
simo quarto ante Christum Caesarem interfectum. § 182 b

Omnes fere gentes tempus hodie metiuntur atque indicant, ita utī supra demonstravimus. Romanī quidem tempus mensī sunt eīdem fere modis quibus nōs ūtimur. Addenda
15 sunt autem bīduum, trīduum, quadrīduum. Nam pro duobus diebus illī bīduum dixerē. Ad hos quos supra diximus modōs accēdēbant biennium, triennium, quadriennium, et cetera. Spatium annorum duorum biennium dixerunt.

Sed longe alia ratione horas dieī et dies mensis notavere
20 ac numeravere. Annī autem apud Romanos consulibus notatī sunt. Temporibus enim rei publicae Romanae Christus nondum natus est. Et trecentis post annis imperatoribus principibusque populi Romanī ille vix notus fuit. Quid plūra? Hae res in longiorem diem conferendae sunt. § 67

ac-cede-ba-nt were add-ed
cōnferendae sunt are to be
put off, must be put off
eīdem by the same — quibus as
fu-it he-was, has been § 115 b

inter-dum between whiles, at times
non-dum not yet
natus est was born § 101 a
quod and this, which, that
spatium period, lapse § 77 b

DE SPATIO

Intervallum temporis Rōmānī spatium vocant. Intervallum loci apud eōs et spatium vocatur. Saepius autem de loco quam de tempore dicitur. Omnia suum loci modum occupant. Omnia suum spatii modum continent. Omnia 5 in spatio sunt ibique continentur. §§ 62 b, 74, 3, 5

Spatio omnī nullus est modus aut terminus, nullum initium aut finis. Sine fine in longitudinem pertinet. Sine finibus in longitudinem et in latitudinem patet. Sine termino in altitudinem pertinet. Nulla ex parte finibus coarctatur aut continetur. Atque praeter finis in omnis partis patescit. Spatium immensum, infinitum, interminatum. Id tamen vacuum nōn novimus. Spatium omne terra aut aqua, aere aut aethere plenum.

Ratiōne, declinatiōnis, aestās, aestate, altitudinem are feminine. Select feminine nouns (pp. 12, 17, 20–21, 23, 28, 30, 33).

Select (pp. 23, 29, 31–32): *a.* Nominative forms; *b.* Ablatives.

Write out the declension: *p.* 33, **modus** (§ 75); **omnia** (§ 79 *b*); **nulla** (like *una*, § 120); **terrā** (§ 77 *a*); **initium**, **intervallum** (§ 77 *b*); *p.* 32, **bīduum** and **biennium** (sing. only, § 77 *b*); **trecentis** (pl. § 120 *d*); *p.* 29, **duplicando** (§ 129); **librorum** (§ 76); **milia** (§ 120 *c*); **generis** (like **vulnus**, § 78 *b*); **hī** (*these, they*, like pl. §§ 75, 117 *b*); *p.* 20, **tempus** (**tempor-**) sing. only (cf. § 78 *b*); **loca** (pl. like **castra**, § 77 *b*); **locus** (§ 75).

con-tine-nt *with-hold, hold in, contain, bound, occupy*

in-fini-tum *un-end-ed* § 98

in-men-sum *un-measure-d*

ibi in it loci *of space, room*

novimus *we have found out, know*
omnī *all, as-a-whole* § 88

pate-t *lie-s open, extend-s*

per-tine-t *reach-es, extend-s*

praeter (*w. Acc.*) *beyond, past*

ALIA STUDIA

In ludo Romano omnia diligenter in studiis versantur. Hi legunt, hi scribunt. Nonnulli mensuris spatii, circuli, ponderis operam dant. Alii arithmetica discunt. Appolo-
 5 nius eos multa de gravitate, de spatio, de motibus siderum docet. Longum est omnia studia magistri puerorumque perspicere. Sed pauca ac summa notabimus, quae iam nobis magno erunt usus ad libros Caesaris, Ciceronis, Vergili aliorumque scriptorum Romanorum legendos. § 159 b, g
 10 Theodorus, ut iam ante diximus, Graecus est et latine loqui discit. Audit reliquos dicere: proxima nocte de tertia hora lunam oriri; servum prima vigilia venire.

Ille rem difficilem habet horas diei ac noctis recte et latine dicere. Etiam nunc multa de ea re ex Aemilio quaerit.
 15 Aemilius haec omnia, ut potest, explicat atque proponere conatur. Haec res nobis tantum negotii quantum Theodoro facit. Qua de causa, quod in longiorem diem collaturi fuimus, repraesentabimus; et hodie discemus, qua ratione Romani horas diei numerent et quo modo dies mensis dicant.
 20 Deinde quosdam labores cotidianos sequemur notabimusque quantum differant ab nostra consuetudine. § 119 b

explicit = well *explained*

ponderous = *having great weight*

-bi-, -e- shall-, will- § 164

collāt-ur-i going to put off

habē-t ha-s, hold-s, regard-s

iam now, soon, already

et-iam even, also **nunc** now

in (w. Acc.) till, for, unto

notā-bi-mus we shall notice

per-spicere look through, over

prō-pōnere set forth, explain

re-praesentā-bi-mus shall bring
 back to the present, do now

scrip-tor writ-er

sequ-e-mur we shall follow

tantum as-much . . . **quantum** as

DE HÔRIS DIËI ET VIGILIIS NOCTIS

Apud illos dies initium capit ab ortū solis; pertinet ad occasum sōlis. Sed singuli dies semper aut longiores aut breviores fiunt. Vere, cum longiōres fiunt, sōl in dies oritur maturius paulo, paulo tardius occidit. Itemque autumnō, cum noctēs longiōrēs fiunt, ortum retardat, occāsum mātūrat. Numquam duos continuos dies eadem longitudine invenimus neque duās umquam continuās eādē longitūdine noctis.

Rōmanī quemque diem sive longum sive brevem in horas duodecim dividunt. Qua re fit, utī, longiore die, quaeque 10 hora paulo longior sit; item, brevior die, quaeque hora paulo brevior sit. Sexta hora circiter merīdiem est; occidens horae duodecimae sol finem dat.

Noctem nonnumquam in horas duodecim, saepius autem in quattuor vigiliās dividunt, quod urbis et castrorum vigiliae 15 quartam partem noctis vigilant et per noctem quater mutantur. Ita vigilia est quarta pars noctis. Spatium vigiliae aestimātur hōrārum circiter trium. Sed noctēs nōnumquam longiores, alias breviores sunt. Qua de causa fit, utī media aestate propter noctium brevitatem vigiliae brevis-20 simae sint; itemque summa hieme propter brevitatem diērum vigiliae longissimae sint.

Select (pp. 31, 32, 33, 35) -ā-, -e-, -e- verb forms (§§ 187-201);

Irregular verbs (§ 212); -I- verb forms; *e.g.* **metimur** (§ 207).

cum (quon-, um-) *when, at* -que and **item-que** and *like-*
which time, at what time wise. Cf. § 119 a, b

um-quam *at any time, ever* **quem-que, quae-que** *every (one)*

n-umquam *at no time, n-ever* **sit** (Sub.) *be, is, shall be* § 183

nōn-numquam *sometimes* § 119 b **utī** (w. Sub.) *that; (w. Ind.) as*

DE DIEBUS MENSIS

Apud Romanos principes mensium dies erant Kalendae et Idus. Primus dies mensis a pontifice calabatur et Calendae sive Kalendae dicebatur. Idus Martiae erant dies 5 quintus decimus mensis Marti. Itemque Idus Maiiae, Iuliae, Octobres dies quintus decimus. Ceterorum mensium Idus dicebatur tertius decimus dies. Nonae cuiusque mensis vocabatur dies nonus ante Idus.

Diēbus numerandis nōs respicimus. Rōmānī autem sem-
 10 per prospexere. Illi enim dicebant non ipsum diei numerum vel quot diebus post Kalendas mensis fieret sed quot diebus ante posteras Nonas vel Idus vel proximas Kalendas. Si quid accidit primo die mensis Marti, illi dixere id Kalendis Martiis fieri. Si quis secundo die Marti venit, dixerunt eum
 15 ante diem sextum Nonas Martias (a. d. vi. Non. Mart.) venire; si tertio die Marti, ante diem quintum Nonas Martias (a. d. v. Non. Mart.). Et quod nobis plūs negoti facit, apud illos mos erat numerare et Nonas aut Idus aut Kalendas, ante quas fieri dicerent, et diem, quo res fieret.
 20 Qua de causa fit, uti apud eōs numerus semper uno maior sit quam apud nōs.

Select: a. First and Third Declension *noun* forms

b. First and Second Declension *adjective* forms

Calends = <i>days to be called out</i>	approximate = <i>next to, close to</i>
moral = <i>conforming to custom</i>	pontifical = <i>priestly</i> [§ 220, 2
faci-t <i>make-s, cause-s, do-es</i>	Nōnae <i>Nones, 9th day before Ides</i>
fie-rī <i>be done, become, happen</i>	cuius-que <i>of each, of every</i>
Id-us <i>Ide-s</i> Id-ibus <i>on the Ides</i>	sī <i>if</i> quid <i>any(thing)</i> § 71 b
Marti, Martiae (Adj.) <i>of March</i>	quot <i>how many</i> § 64

KALENDĀRIUM

	Dates given in full	Abbreviated
On Dec. 1.	Kalendis Decembris.	Kal. Dec.
On Dec. 2.	quarto (die ante) Nonas Decembris. or ante diem quartum Nonas Decembris.	IV. Non. Dec. a.d. IV. Non. Dec.
On Dec. 3.	tertio (die ante) Nonas Decembris. or ante diem tertium Nonas Decembris.	III. Non. Dec. a.d. III. Non. Dec.
On Dec. 4.	pridie Nōnas Decembris.	prīd. Non. Dec.
On Dec. 5.	Nōnis Decembris.	Nōn. Dec.
On Dec. 6.	octavo (die ante) Idus Decembris. or ante diem octavum Idus Decembris.	VIII. Id. Dec. a.d. VIII. Id. Dec.
On Dec. 13.	Idibus Decembris.	Id. Dec.
On Dec. 14.	undevicesimo Kalendas Ianuarias. or ante diem XIX. Kalendas Ianuarias.	XIX. Kal. Ian. a.d. XIX. Kal. Ian.
On Dec. 15.	duodevicesimo Kalendas Ianuarias.	XVIII. Kal. Ian.

Kalendārium Iūliānum

Our Days	March, May, July, October	January, August, December	September, April, June, November	February
1	Kal.	Kal.	Kal.	Kal.
2	a.d. VI. Non.	a.d. IV. Non.	a.d. IV. Nōn.	a.d. IV. Nōn.
3	a.d. V. Non.	a.d. III. Non.	a.d. III. Non.	a.d. III. Nōn.
4	a.d. IV. Nōn.	prīd. Nōn.	prīd. Nōn.	prīd. Nōn.
5	a.d. III. Non.	Nōn.	Nōn.	Nōn.
6	prīd. Nōn.	a.d. VIII. Id.	a.d. VIII. Id.	a.d. VIII. Id.
7	Nōn.	a.d. VII. Id.	a.d. VII. Id.	a.d. VII. Id.
8	a.d. VIII. Id.	a.d. VI. Id.	a.d. VI. Id.	a.d. VI. Id.
9	a.d. VII. Id.	a.d. V. Id.	a.d. V. Id.	a.d. V. Id.
10	a.d. VI. Id.	a.d. IV. Id.	a.d. IV. Id.	a.d. IV. Id.
11	a.d. V. Id.	a.d. III. Id.	a.d. III. Id.	a.d. III. Id.
12	a.d. IV. Id.	prīd. Id.	prīd. Id.	prīd. Id.
13	a.d. III. Id.	Id.	Id.	Id.
14	prīd. Id.	a.d. XIX. Kal.	a.d. XVIII. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.
15	Id.	a.d. XVIII. Kal.	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.
16	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.
17	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.
18	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.
19	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.
20	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.
21	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.
22	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.
23	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.
24	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.
25	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal. ¹
26	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal. ²
27	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal. ³
28	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal.	prīd. Kal. ⁴
29	a.d. IV. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal.	— ⁵
30	a.d. III. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal.	prīd. Kal.	
31	prīd. Kal.	prīd. Kal.		

For leap years, viz.: ¹ VI. Kal. ² V. Kal. ³ IV. Kal. ⁴ III. Kal.
⁵ prīd. Kal.

DE SPATII MENSURA

Montes alti sunt. Muri alti aut humiles dicuntur. Pes
modus est altitudinis. Altitudinem murorum pedibus me-
timur. Montis humiliores collis vocamus. Altitudinem
5 collium pedibus aestimamus. Alius modus altitudinis est
pedes mille. Altitudo montium milibus pedum aestimatur.

Iter aut longum aut breve dicimus. Lineae aut longae
aut breves dicuntur. Linea solum in longitudinem pertinet.
Modi longitudinis sunt pes et passus. Modus itineris est
10 passus mille. Linearum longitudinē pedibus vel passibus,
longitudinē itinerum milibus passuum aestimatur.

Finis aut latos aut angustos arbitramur. Agri aut lati
aut angusti existimantur. Fines in longitudinem et in
latitudinem patent. Agros in longitudinem et latitudinem
15 metimur. Pes et passus modi sunt longitudinis latitudinis-
que. Longitudinē et latitudinē pedibus, passibus, milibus pas-
suum aestimantur.

Modus agri apud Romanos iugerum fuit. Nos quoque
agrum iugeribus metimur. Sed iugera quibus illi sunt usi
20 multo minora fuere quam quibus nos utimur. Apud illos
iugerum in longitudinem pedum ducentum quadraginta et
in latitudinem pedum centum viginti patebat. § 74, 19

For the form of *iter* (line 1), see § 82 *e*. Find the bases of
pēs, *iter*, *latitudō* (p. 38); *arborum*, *tenue*, *vada* (p. 39); *sīdus*,
lumen (p. 11); *mel*, *color*, *hiemem* (p. 21); *genus*, *ōrdō* (p. 28).
What is the nom. and acc. sing. of each? (p. 5, note.)

itinerary = list of routes

linear = of lines

finis ends, limits, boundaries

sunt usi (are having-used) have
used, used, did use

iugerum (Roman) acre

Aliae arbores altae, aliae humiles sunt. Trunci arborum magnarum crassi dicuntur. Truncus arboris parvae et gracilis tenuis est. Folium arboris tenue est. Pes modus crassitudinis est. Crassitudo truncorum magnorum saepe est pedum circiter trium; saepius pedum circiter duorum; saepissime unius pedis.

Aquam aut altam aut brevem dicimus. Flumen alibi angustum et altum, alibi latum est et breve. Lacus plerumque latiores et altiores sunt. Mare vastissimum est atque altissimum. Altitudo multorum fluminum alibi non est 10 amplius pedum trium aut quattuor, alibi amplius pedum quadraginta. Loca, qua altitudo fluminis minima est, saepe vada dicuntur.

§§ 64, 70, 212

Flumina non nullis locis vadō transeuntur, sed alias navibus vel pontibus transeunda sunt. A ripis flumina plerumque 15 minus alta sunt. Plerique lacus secundum oram brevissimi, a medio autem sunt altissimi. Pauci lacus sunt in altitudinem pedum amplius mille. Mare secundum oram plerumque breve, per medium autem est in altitudinem multorum milium pedum.

20

Nōmen, lumina; sidus, sidera, tempus, tempore are neuter.

Select all neuter noun and adjective forms on pp. 8, 10, 18, 29, 33, 38-9. Make a list of the adverbs on pp. 24-5, 28, 31-2, 33-4.

navy = fleet of ships § 79 *attenuate = make thin* § 88

<i>alibi in one place . . . alibi in another place</i>	§ 117 a	<i>minus alta not so deep</i>
<i>amplius more</i>	<i>crassi thick</i>	<i>transeunda su-nt are to be or have to be crossed</i>
<i>gracilis slender, thin</i>		§ 215
<i>ab initio from (at) the start</i>		<i>vada wading places, fords</i>

Ab initio omnes homines ferī erant. Omnia ad corpus suum referebant, quod alios modos habebant nullos. (Idem faciunt hodie homines barbari ac ferī.) Omnia digitis numerabant. Digniti aut palmae latitudine, pedis, gradūs
5 aut passus longitudine omnia metiebantur. Ex his pristinīs modis paulatim orti sunt illi modi, quibus pleraeque gentes hodie utuntur. § 182 a, b

Romani omnia his modis pristinīs mensi sunt. Hi modi multum a nostris differebant. Passus apud nos est tres
10 pedes; apud illos pedes aequabat quīque. Pes autem, quo Romani ūsi sunt, paulo brevior erat quam quo nos utimur. Illi enim erant corpore paulo minōre quam nōs itemque bre- viore statura. Ita brevius gressi sunt quam nos gradimur. Gradus apud illos fuit dīmidia pars passus. Apud nōs autem
15 gradus et passus dicitur. §§ 62 g, 89

Digniti latitūdo *digitus* dicebatur. Palmus erat latitudō palmae vel manūs passae, digitōsque quattuor aequābat. Pedis erat longitudō palmorum quattuor, digitorum sedecim. Modi igitur spatii apud Romanos fuere digitus, palmus, pes,
20 gradus, passus, passus mille, centum milia passuum, bis centēna milia passuum.

For the form of **corpus** (line 9) see § 82 b. Select all accusa- tives used with prepositions (pp. 13, 16, 18, 19, 22, 31, 34, 40).

-bā- was-, were-, did-, -ed

digitus finger, toe

§ 23

gradus a step

§§ 180-2

gressi sunt (are *having-walked*)

have walked, walked

§ 22

manus passae of the open or

spread-out hand

§ 81

a nostris from ours

[§ 161

orti sunt are *having-arisen*

palma palm (of the hand)

DE CIRCULI MENSURA

Globus rotundus est. Circulus quoque rotundus est. Ex solidis globus, ex planis circulus. Hic et orbis appellatur, ille et sphaera dicitur. Circulus verus circum punctum circinō circumducitur. Quod punctum centrum est. Circinatio circuli verī ex omnibus partibus aequo spatio a centrō abest. § 221 b

Solida in longitudinem, in latitudinem, et in crassitudinem metimur. Circuli in diametrum et in circinationem sunt metiendī. Pedibus, passibus, milibus passuum metiri licet. 10 Alia autem ratio circulorum metiendorum est. Hac ratione modus circuli est pars. Omnis circulos sive magnos seu parvos in trecentas sexaginta partis dividimus. Dimidium circuli partis centum octoginta aequat. Quadrans partis nōnāgintā aequat. Globis quoque haec ratio metiendī 15 accommodata est. § 129

Select all feminine forms (p. 41). Note ratiō, ratiōne f.

Libri legendi sunt *books are to be read, ought to be read* § 106

Librōs legendōs curō *I take care of the books to be read,*
I oversee the reading of the books

Haec ratiō librōrum legendōrum *this plan of reading books*

Dies librīs legendīs dictus est *a day was set for the books to be read, a day was set for reading the books* § 158 c

Ei est liber *a book belongs to him, he has a book*

Liber ei est legendus *for him there is a book to be read,* § 104
he has a book (that is) to be read, he has to read a book

Ei legendum est *for him there is reading to be done,*
he has reading (that is) to be done,
he has reading to do, has to do reading

circinō *with compasses* **in diametrum** *for diameter* **orbis** *ring*

DE GRAVITATE

Alias res levīs, alias gravīs esse dicimus. Omnibus rebus, quas novimus, pondus est. Suum cuique pondus est. Montes in interiora terrae nituntur. Oceanus pondere suo in terram nititur. Idem facit aer et omnia terrestria. § 111

Si qua res e terra emittitur, in terram nutat atque eodem gravitate fertur. Nix et pluvia e caelō cadunt. In terram incidunt. Aqua fluminum e montibus fluit et in mare labitur. Eius rei causa quae sit, miramur. Ex nobis quaerimus. 10 Causam gravitatem esse dicimus. § 221 b

Aqua cadens se in globulos format. Terra se in globum formavit. Luna sibi formam globosam suscepit. Sol sibi eandem formam sūmpsit. Idem fecere sidera. Idem faciunt omnia, quibus nihil est impedimentō ad eam rem faciendam. 15 Omnia terrestria se in vicem trahunt. Altera alteris copiam ponderis faciunt. Omnia gravitatem inter se dant. In centrum terrae feruntur. In terram ex omnibus partibus nituntur. Ea res terram globosam fecit. Sed quae vis pondus vel gravitatem faciat ignoramus. § 220, 14

Select all accusatives with prepositions. **Marī** is Abl.

gravity = <i>heaviness</i>	alleviate = <i>lighten up</i>	§ 220, 2
ignorant = <i>not knowing</i> § 220, 7	ponderous = <i>weighty</i>	§ 42, 1
cadē-ns (when) <i>fall-ing</i>	mirā-mur <i>we-wonder</i>	<i>admire</i>
e-mitti-tur <i>is thrown up</i> § 220, 6	nīti-t-ur <i>rest-s (itself)</i>	§ 180
eō-dem <i>to the same, back to it</i>	nuta-t <i>nod-s, droop-s, settle-s</i>	
fer-t-ur <i>bear-s itself, is borne, carried</i>	terrestr-ia <i>earthly things</i>	
§ 212	sumps-it <i>has taken on</i>	§ 219, 4
in centrum <i>toward the center</i>	trahu-nt <i>draw, pull upon</i>	
labi-t-ur <i>glide-s</i> § 182	in vicem <i>in turn</i>	vis <i>force</i> § 80
<i>lapse</i>		

DE ARITHMETICIS

Arithmetica dē numeris agunt. Primum numerōs scribere et scriptos legere discendum est. Eos et arabice et romane discimus. Quo facto, summas arithmetorum artis ordine docemur. Primum instituimur ad summam aliquot numerorum conficiendam; deinde ad alium alii numerum detrahendum; tertium ad singulos numeros aliquotiens ducendos; quartum ad reperiendum quotiens alius alio numerus contineatur. §§ 119 b, 120 f

Sī quot numerorum summa quaeritur, inter se addendī sunt. Exempli gratia: quot sunt viginti quinque et quindecim. Respondetur quadraginta esse. §§ 59, 142

Cum detrahitur, maior numerus minuendus, minor ei detrahendus est. Exempli gratia: sī ducenta quingentis detrahuntur, quot sunt reliqua? Respondetur trecenta reliqua esse. Sī tria tribus detrahuntur, quid est reliquū? Respondetur nihil esse reliquū. §§ 64, 70-2, 104

Exempli gratia: Quot sunt bis bina? Bis bina sunt quattuor. Quaerō quot sint quater quaterna. Respondēs quater quaterna sedecim esse. 20

Sī quī numerus dividendus est, in aequas partīs dividimus. Exempli gratia: sī quaeris quotiens centum quinquaginta nōngentis contineantur; respondeo centum quinquaginta nōngentis sexiēns continērī. Quaeritur quotiēns quaterna sedecim conficiant. Respondetur quater quaterna sedecim conficere. Quaeritur quotiens bina in decem insint. Respondetur quinquiens bina in decem inesse. § 67

minuend = (number) to be lessened bis bina twice two §§ 67, 120 e

DE PARTITIONE

Multa adhuc de integris numeris dicta sunt. De integris enim rebus agebatur. Saepe autem in aequas partis dividendum est. Haec res partitio dicitur. § 220, 5

- 5 Si qua res integra in duas partis aequas divisa est, utraque pars dimidium dicitur. Dimidium et dimidia pars vocatur. Si quam rem in tris partis aequas divisimus, quaeque pars triens vocatur. Trientem et tertiam partem dicimus. Si cuius rei duae ablatae sunt partes, tertia pars reliqua est.
- 10 Si quid in quattuor partis partitur, quaeque pars quadrans vocatur. Quadrantem et quartam partem dicimus. Si cui rei tres partes detractae sunt, quarta pars reliqua est. Item dicitur quinta pars, sexta pars, septima pars, et cetera. Duodecima pars uncia appellatur.¹ § 113

addenda = *things to be added*

equalize = *make even or equal*

detractio¹ = *taking from*

dividend = *to be divided* § 106

integrity¹ = *wholeness*

legends = *things to be read*

annihilate¹ = *reduce to nothing*

partition = *separation*¹

quadrant = *quarter*

subtrahend¹ = *to be taken away*

actum est *discussion took place*

ab-latae sunt (*are having-been-taken away*) *have been taken*

de-tractae sunt *have been taken away*

dicta¹ **sunt** (*are having-been-said*) *have been said, were said*

dividendum est *division has to be made, one must divide*

divis-imus *we have divided*

si cui *if to any (from any)*

si qua, si quam *if any* § 113

si cuius *if of any* §§ 110-3

quae- *one* **-que** *every-* § 119 b

utra- *one (of two)* **-que** *each*

parti-tur¹ *is parted, divided*

triens *a third*

uncia *inch, ounce, etc.*

¹ Write a list of words having the same root (§ 47). Define each. Make other lists. Consult *Etymological Dictionary* of W. W. Skeat.

DE ARTE LEGENDI

Parvuli audiendō loquī discimus. Postea legere docēmur. Primum voces noscimus; voces legimus. Deinde litterarum figuras notamus, litterasque discimus. Ab initio rem difficilem habemus. Alias ab aliis litteras vix discernimus. 5 Sed cotidie plus possumus. Cotidie amplius progredimur. Paulatim prō diligentia nostra facilius fit. Iam omnia legere possumus. §§ 73 e, 150

Omnes legere docendī sunt. Omnis legere posse oportet. Primum ars legendī nobis est ornamento, nobis usui est. 10 Priores bona et pulchra scripsere. Quod boni aut pulchri scriptum est, id legendo accipere licet. Legenti aditus est ad ea, quae librīs scripta sunt. His rebus humaniores fimus. Legentibus aditus est ad ea, quae ad cultum atque hūmanitatem spectant, quae ad animos omnium hominum meliores 15 faciendos pertinent. §§ 56, 3; 72; 159 g

Omnis posse oportet (that) *all be able is necessary* § 152

Ars nobis (Dat.) usui est the art . . . is (for) use to us

Quod boni aut pulchri what (of) good or (of) beautiful § 72

Id . . . accipere licet gaining that is permitted; one may gain that

Legenti for (a) reading (man), for (one) who reads § 94

Ad animōs hominum meliores faciendos pertinent tend to make men's minds better, tend to improve men's minds § 158

ad-itus ac-cess . amplius more parvuli (when) small §§ 94, 95

bon-a good (things) plerumque most § 70

ea, quae those (things), which paulatim gradually plus more

figur-ās shape-s, form-s primum first priores former men

habe-mus regard § 219, 3 scrips-ere (they) have written

humānitās refinement spectant look, face, tend

iam soon nosci-mus we learn vix hardly vōc-es phrase-s

Deinde nobis disciplinae est. In schola, multum audiendo, multum videndo, plerumque autem legendō accipimus. Pleraeque res legendae sunt. Ita multa et magna accipimus ac discimus. Item parati sumus ad plura et maiora accipi-
5enda. His omnibus rebus paratiores eximus ad omnis labores vitae subeundos. §§ 129, 135, 158

Tertium, aliquid novi cotidie accidit. Aliquid pulchri semper scribitur. Aliquid boni cotidie cognitum est. Summae res interdum geruntur. Salus rei publicae omni tempore
10agitur. Hae res nobis cognoscendae sunt. Has omnis res legendō accipere licet. § 131

Quartum, omnibus sunt socii atque amici. Omnibus aliquid negoti est. Alii amicitiae causa nos sequuntur; alii negoti gratia ad nos veniunt. Si quis ad nos venturus est,
15litteris nos certiōres facit. Litteris de amicorum adventū certiores fimus. Item de negotio socios certiōres facimus. Quid igitur miserius est quam quā alium, uti litteras sibi praelegat, roget? § 59

Ad maiōra accipienda for learning greater things § 159 b

Hae res nobis cognoscendae sunt for us these things are to be investigated, we ought to find out about these things

Nōbis sunt amīcī to us there are friends, we have friends Int. 5 e

Hoc nōbis cognōscendum est we have this to investigate

Eum certiōrem facimus we make him rather-certain, we inform him

Nemō est, quī accipiat there is no one that receives or gets § 151 b

Nemō est, quīn accipiat there is no one but gets (who doesn't get)

adventus coming	agitur is at	quam quī than (one) who
stake	ali-quit some-thing	rēs -wealth
prae-leg-a-t (that) he read-to	publica common-	
parāt-iōr-es better prepared	ad sub-eundos for under-going	
	vent-ur-us going to come	§ 103

Multi sunt, qui unas aut binas litteras, unam aut duas epistulas cotidie accipiant. Nemo est, quin litteras interdum accipiat. (Litterae plerumque breves sunt, epistula longior et maiore cura scripta.)

Nos litteras **a, b, c** vocamus. Apud Romanos litterae **l, m, n**, vel elementa (**el-em-en-ta**) dictae sunt. Graeci litteras **alpha, beta**, et cetera dixere. Hinc saepe litteras cunctas alphabetum dicimus. § 137 *b*

Hic pauca praecienda sunt. Cum legitur, sinistra manu tenendus est liber. Dextra manus libera esse debet. 10 Folia enim libri dextra vertuntur. Ad lucem vertendum est tergum, ut lux in folium incidat. Oculi a luce avertendi sunt, ne in oculos incidat. Cavendum est ne qua umbra in librum incidat. §§ 139, 221

Apud nos folia ab altera parte libera sunt, uti manu vertantur. Apud Romanos folia libri neutra ex parte libera erant. Illi folia non vertere sed totum librum volverunt. Hac re fiebat, ut liber et volumen vocaretur. § 147 *g*

Hoc praeciendum est *this ought to be directed, this ought to be given as a precept, this should be taught*

debt = *that which is owed*

dexterity = *skilfulness*

incident = *falling upon* § 220, 7

liberty = *freedom* § 91

cunctas (coniunctas) *all taken together, all*

debe-t *owe-s, ought, should* § 219

foli-a *leave-s* p. 18, note

hic *here* **hinc** *hence, from this*

legi-tur *reading is done* § 106 *c*

manual = *handbook* § 81

oculist = *eye specialist* § 75

paucity = *fewness, scarcity* § 64

umbrella = *little shade*

qua umbra *any shadow* § 113

ne (w. Sub.) *not, that not*

sinistra *awkward, left, unlucky*

tergum *the back* § 77 *b*

ut, uti (w. Sub.) *(in order) that*

volv-erunt *they rolled*

DE ARTE SCRIBENDI

Parvī legere discimus. Eodem tempore scribere docemur. Primo litterarum figuras aegre ducimus. Tarde ac magna cura nobis scribendum est. Paulatim pro cotidiano usū et
 5 pro diligentia nostra facilius fit. Iam omnia celeriter scribere possumus. §§ 130–2, 155

Scribere magno nobis est usui. Nemo est enim qui omnia memoria tenere possit. Nemo est, quin quid memorandum interdum habeat. Multo facilius est memoranda scriptis
 10 mandare quam omnia memoria tenere conari. §§ 113, 151 b

Nobis omnibus sunt amici sociique. Nemo est, quin ad amicos scribere interdum velit; nemo cui ad socios interdum scribendum non sit. Multi sunt qui cotidie scribant. Nonnulli pluris epistulas cotidianas aut scribunt ipsi aut
 15 scribendas curant. His enim negotium est cum multis.

Ita, si quid novi est, litteras ad amicos dant. Item de negotio suo socios certiores faciunt. Si quis iter factururus est, litteras ante se mittit. Ita de eius adventu socii certiores fiunt. § 102

Nobis scribendum est *for us there is writing to be done, we have writing (that is) to be done, we have to write, must write*

accelerate = *quicken* § 69

conative = *inclined to try* § 127

docile = *teachable*

induce = *draw into* § 220, 7

identify = *prove to be the same*

aegre *with difficulty, hardly*

cotidianus *daily* **cui** *for whom*

fact-ur-us *going to make* § 102

inter-dum *at times, sometimes*

commend = *entrust, give over*

negotiation = *business dealing*

novelty = *new thing* [§ 220, 9

plural = *more than one*

unused = *inexperienced*

parvi (when) *small* §§ 92, 94

qui *who* **qui-n** *who-not, but*

scriptis *to (things) written*

vel-i-t *wish-es, will-wish* § 140

Plerique dextra manu scribunt. Perpauci dextra bene ūti non possunt. Hi sinistra manu scribere coguntur. Ubi scripturi sumus, primum curamus oculos a lumine avertendos, tergum aut latus ad lumen vertendum. Dextra scribentibus lux a latere sinistro lucere debet, ne umbra manus in scrip-
tum cadat. Sinistra scribentibus eadem de causa lucem a latere dextro lucere oportet. §§ 148, 152

Apud nōs scribitur pēnicillis aut pennīs aut māchinātiōnibus. Librī māchinātiōnibus celerrimē imprimuntur. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad scribendum usui sunt, summam 10 facultatem habemus. Sed longe aliter apud Romanos res sese habebat. Nam omnia fere, quae tanto nobis usui ad scribendum sunt, illis ignota fuere. §§ 92, 159 g

Illi vulgō epistulās stilō tabulis cērātis scripsērunt, librōs autem calamīs papyro. Stilus erat ferrum ab altero extremo 15 ad scribendum praeacutum, ab altero latum ad cera scripta delenda. Librī apud illos manu scripti sunt. Ars imprimendi iam omnino ignota fuit. Quod librī servus Romanus aegerrime multis diebus scribere potuisset, id hodie puncto temporis machinatione conficitur. 20

Scribent-ibus *for* (those) *writing, for those who write* § 97
Rēs aliter se habet *the matter stands (holds itself) otherwise*

cogent = *compelling, forcing* **lateral** = *of the side* § 78 b
indelible = *not to be erased* **utility** = *usefulness* § 201

aeger-rime *with great trouble* **nōta** *known* **ignōta** *unknown*
calam-is *with reed pens* § 74, 12 **potuisset** *would have been able*
cerā in wax **cerātis** *waxed* **quod librī** *what of a book* § 72
im-primu-ntur *are printed* **script-um** (thing) *written* § 77 b
nam- *for* **-que** *at any rate* § 119 **usuī ad** *for use for, useful for*

EXTRĀ LŪDUM

Multa iam in ludo Romano vīdimus, multa more ac ratione
 populi Rōmani didicimus et cum nostris rebus comparavimus.
 Longum est omnia enumerare, sed hoc unum satis erit dictum.
 5 Puer Aemilius studiis libenter operam dat. Multum legit;
 scribit multum; graece multum cum Theodoro colloquitur;
 nam memoria tenet summum Romanorum oratorem philo-
 sophumque, Ciceronem, etiam Arpinī esse natum; eum lit-
 terarum Graecarum studiōsum fuisse, itemque Gaium Cae-
 10 sarem. Eos quoque adulescentis Rhodī apud alterum Ap-
 polonium, quem supra diximus Molonem, artī dicendi operam
 dedisse. Puer se quoque oratorem fieri cupit. Hodie dili-
 genter studiis operam dedit. Iam hora nona fit. Et iam
 finis est. § 221 b

15 Pueri e ludo egressi sunt. Aemilius iam domum in fundum
 est profecturus. Hodie amicum Theodorum secum dūcere
 in animo est. Eos in fundum secuturi sumus. Maturamus
 Arpino proficisci. Nam ante pueros pervenire eorumque
 adventum vidēre volumus.

20 Itaque in fundum proficiscimur et magno itinere eo ire
 contendimus atque non amplius quinque aut sex milibus
 passuum progressi fundum ante nos conspiciamus. Ibi com-
 pluris servos laborare videmus. Alii ex his agrōs arant,

ad-olescent = *growing up* § 223

ad-ult = *grown up* (person)

didic-imus *we have learned*

ē-gressi sunt *are having walked
 out, have come out* eō *to it*

fu-isse (to) *have been, was* § 127

native = *born in, arising in*

satisfy = *do enough* (for) § 70

liben-ter *glad-ly* (is glad to)

per-venire *come over, arrive* § 220

profect-ur-us *going to set out*

secut-ur-i *going to accompany*



aliī equos, boves, ovīs curant atque custodiunt. Eorum unus boves ad villam agit. Fīdī canes a tergo sequuntur eīque magno sunt auxilio ad boves ex agrīs cogendos.

Villa ipsa non longe abest a flumine Fibrenō, quod in Līrim influit. In eo flumine pons est, idque nonnullis locīs vado transitur. Paulus ad utramque partem eius fluminis possessiōnes habet. Homines cum carris ponte transeunt. Boves autem traducunt vadīs Fibrenī, qua altitudō fluminis minima est. § 220, 15

Ad villam accedimus. Exterior domus nobīs parum placet. 10 Romanī enim exterioribus rebus non student. At domus interior satis bona et ampla omnibus rebus ornata est. Ad portam accedimus. In limine legimus CAVE CANEM. Canis autem abest. Primum in vestibulum ingredimur. Post hoc in atrio sedet dominus ipse Paulus. Chilō magister 15 servorum cum eo colloquitur.

Primum dominus, quid novī sit, ex eo quaerit. Ille dīcit bobus iam minus aquae in agrīs esse; ad flumen cotidie agendos; quendam ex servīs Gallis paulo ante effūgisse; huc accedere quod certa de causa alius Gallus nomine Bren- 20 nus poenas dare debeat. Deinde dominus Chilonem laudat, quod boves ad flumen agendōs curet. Mandata eī in proximum diem dat; operis labores partibus iustīs aequat; statuit, quo quisque proficiscatur, quid cras faciat; cuique iūstam partem laboris tribuit. § 111 25

laudable = *praiseworthy*

eliminate = *push from doorstep*

ātrium-I (reception) room

parum little § 70 pōns bridge

auxiliō (for) help canis dog

place-t please-s, suit-s 3 § 230

cavē beware debeat ought

statui-t decide-s, settle-s

Iam exitūrus Chilo iterum de Brenno mentiōnem facit. Dominum rogat, quid de eo faciendum putet. Hic primo recusat quo minus magistrum de eo supplicium sumere iubeat. Chilo quidem Graecus non bonō animo in Gallos videtur.

5 Postea autem instanti Chiloni cedit. §§ 102, 154

Dominum in atrio relinquimus. Inde in peristylium progredimur. Ibi floribus, picturis, statuīs ornatum est. Ibi apertum caelum suspicimus. Fons in medio fluit. Ab utraque parte columnae tectum domūs sustinent. Volitant

10 per aera columbae. Pisces aquis natant. Ignis perpetuus in ara Vestae lucet. Sol occidens summas iam columnas suavis illuminat radiis. Ad focum congregantur dominae, filiae, servae.

§ 51

In familia Romana sunt pater, mater, filii, famuli. Quo-

15 rum famuli et servi vocantur. Pater domum regit. Dominus dicitur. Vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem. Patri domus omnis est curae. Patris est domicilium sibi suisque parare, domum aedificare aut aedificatam conservare, omnia, quibus ad vivendum opus est, providere. Pater

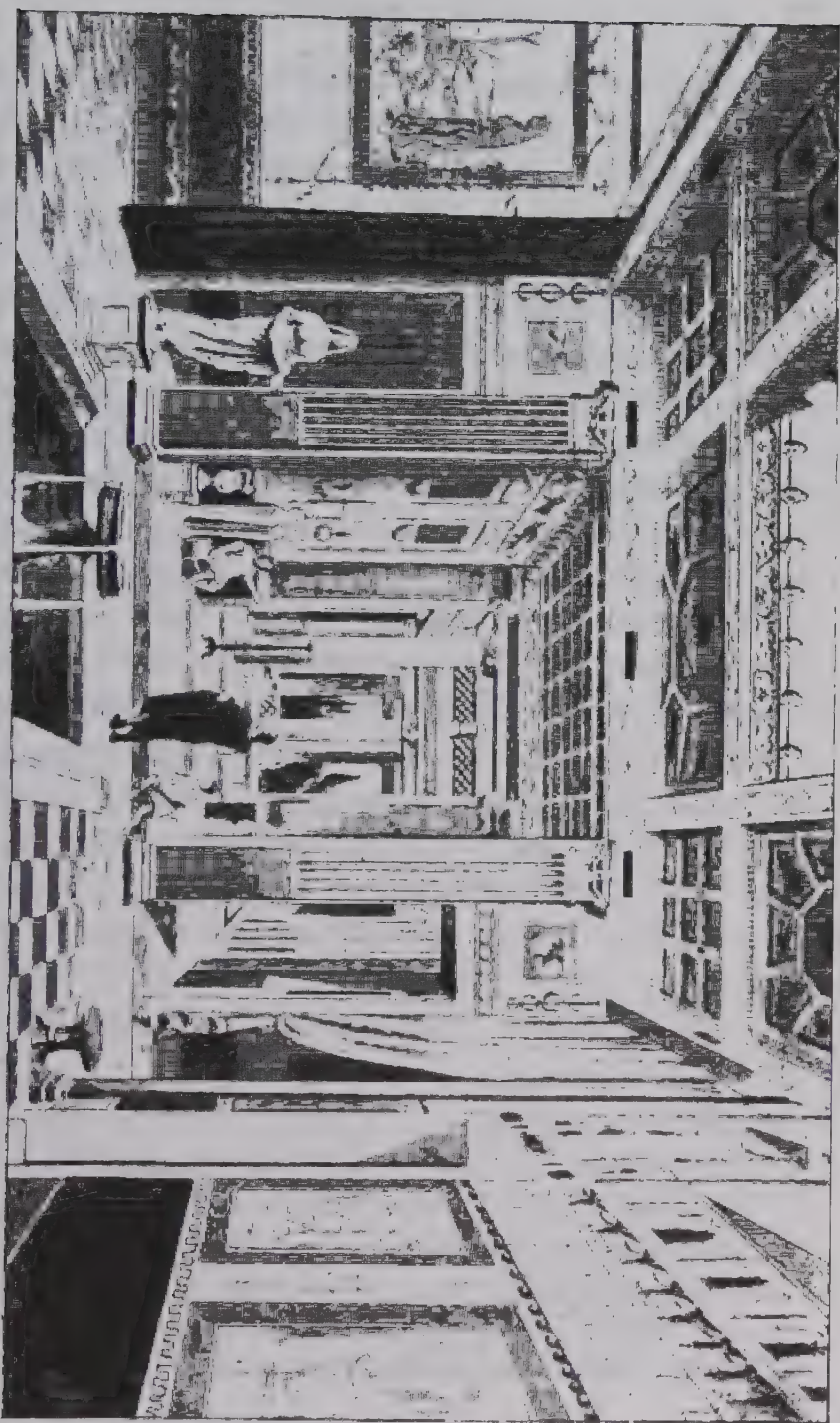
20 patris avus est. Patres et avi maiores dicuntur. § 98

Mater domina est. Matrona quoque dicitur. Matri cura domus est. Matris est liberos educare, res domesticas providere, domum curare atque omnia domestica perspicere.

Patri . . . est curae is (for) a care to the father **Ei . . . est auxiliō** is (for) a help to him **Patris est** it is the father's (duty)
Bonō animō in (with or) of good mind toward § § 57, 62 g

columba dove **ignis** fire
peristylum -ī open court
pisces fish **put-e-t** think-s

sumere take (from), inflict (on)
summas tops of **focum** hearth
tectum -ī roof **vita -ae** life



DOMUS RŌMĀNĀE PERISTYLIUM

Servae quidem liberōs cūrant, molita cibāria cōservant, panem faciunt, victum parant, omnia in ordine servant, dominae auxilium ferunt, huic oboediunt, eius voluntātī obtemperant, ei cēdunt. Māterfamiliās liberōs vestiendōs, 5 victum parandum, omnia in ordine servanda cūrat.

Romanī bello captos in servitūtem abducunt. Sed his licet aliquot annos serviendō libertatem redimere. Tum manū mittuntur ac liberātī sive libertī dīcuntur. Servi domino, dominae, magistro oboediunt. His cedunt, eis fidī 10 sunt atque auxilium ferunt. Servorum est audire, cedere obtemperare, servīre, fidī esse. Servi agros arant et sementis faciunt. Fructus legunt frūmentumque metunt. Domino hortus, agrī, animalia, opera omnia cūrae sunt. Ille agros arandōs, sēmentis faciendās, frūmenta metenda, pābulum 15 colligendum servandumque, fructus legendos curat. Dominum prudentem esse oportet. Hinc proverbium illud habemus: “ Ut sementem feceris, ita et metes.” § 147 b

Liberī aut filiī aut filiae sunt. Fili filius nepos dīcitur. Filiī et nepōtēs minōrēs sive posterī dīcuntur. Filiī puerī, 20 filiae puellae vocantur. Servi quoque nonnumquam puerī appellantur. Liberī inter se fratres dīcuntur. Filiī se fratres appellant. Filiae se sorores vocant. Frater ma-

belli-gerent = *war-making*

horticulture = *gardening*

molar = *grinding (tooth)*

conservation = *keeping together*

ab-ducu-nt *they carry off (away)*

audīre, ob-oedīre *hear (to)*

cibāria *food stuffs* **cibus** *food*

capt-os *(men who are) taken* § 94

service = *drudgery, toil*

vestibule = *hall for clothing*

vituals = *prepared food*

voluntary = *willing* § 137

met-e-s *thou shalt reap* § 197

manu mitte-re *let out of hand*

obtemperant *conform, agree (to)*

panis *bread* **red-imere** *buy*

ternus liberis est avunculus. Frater paternus eis patruus est. Liberi Romani patribus maioribusque oboediunt, cedunt et eorum voluntati obtemperant. Liberos semper patribus maioribusque oboedire oportet. Hinc mandamentum illud :
 “ Patrem et matrem honoratote.”

5

Dum omnia in peristyllo lustramus subito foris clamatur. Paulus clamorem audit. Exit. Exeunt mater filiaeque. Nos quoque eximus. Cum Theodoro reversum videmus Aemilium. Quem servi magnō cum strepitu ac tumultu excipiunt, equosque in stabula deducunt. Simul et raucis et suavis linguīs salutatur. Nam in his servis sunt Afri, Galli, Germani, Graeci. Hi plerique ambobus pueris cupiunt atque amici sunt. Graeci principes Theodoro salutem dicere contendunt. Sperant enim per eius auctoritatem sese olim libertatem consequi posse, quod vident Aemilium bono in eum animo esse.

§ 157 b

Statim progrediuntur pater et mater pueros salutatum. Primae puellae Theodoro salutem dicunt et, cum Aemilia maior eum ad domum comitatur, Aemilia minor, puella novem annorum, manum fratris prēndit et secum gaudens se vocat. Tum leni voce, ne audiatur : “ hodie,” inquit, “ est ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias.” Cui frater :

Salutatum *to greet.* **Salutem dicere** *wish good health.*

ambiguous = *driving at both*
gaudy = *showing joy, rejoicing*
leniency = *gentleness, mildness*

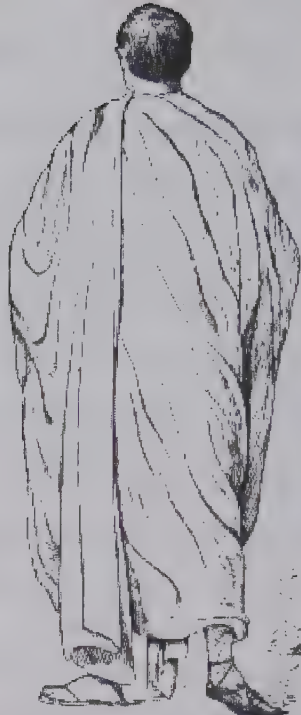
com-itā-tur *ac-com-pani-es*
ex-cipiunt *take up, welcome*
honōrātōte *ye shall honor* § 189
inquit *says she* **ōlim** *one day*

apprehend = *seize upon* § 220, 2
secede = *go apart* § 220, 13
simultaneous = *at once with*

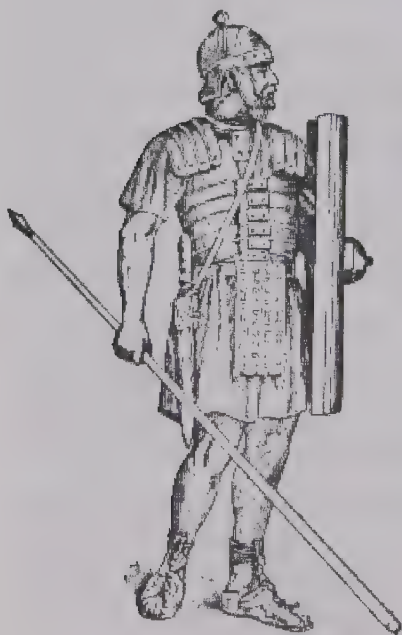
quem = *et eum and . . . him*
raucus -a -um *hoarse, guttural*
re-versum (who has) *come back*
strepitus -us *noise, din, uproar*



TOGA VIRILIS
(à fronte vīsa)



TOGA VIRILIS
(vīsa à tergō)



MILES LEGIŌNARIUS



TOGA PRAETEXTA
(puerilis)

Et quibus consulibus? Dic mihi recte. § 96 b

Iterum tibi dico. Tertio die ante Kalendas Maias Gaio Iulio Caesare et Marco Bibulo consulibus. Satin dictum?

Et quid novī aut mīrī est? Qua re commoveris?

Num Nonarum Maiarum oblivisceris? Nihilne memi-
nistī? § 145 b, c

Nonne, soror cara, oblita ipsa es me cotidie Arpinum in ludum ire ibique toto die summīs rebus operam dare?

Minime, frater care. Eas omnīs res memoria teneō. Sed hodiē gaudeō maximē. 10

Qua re gaudes? Dic mihi.

Non tibi dico. Cogita tantum, quid rei sit. § 72

Numquam cogitare possim. Nihil rem intellego. § 141

Quī vocaris? Nonne suspicere coepistī?

Nunc puer suspicit aliquid de sua die natali esse. Sed
ut sorōrem vexet, dissimulat atque ita respondet: 15

Aemilius vocor. Quid novī in eo est?

Quem ad modum vestitus? Ecquid intellegis?

Toga vestitus sum, ut mos est Romanis.

Nonne toga praetexta? Tua causa gaudeo. 20 .

Certe. Sed cur mea causa gaudes? § 59

Mihi dicendum esse puto. Nonis Maiis annos sedecim compleveris. Tum vir esse incipies; toga virili vestiere. Tibi praenomen dabitur itemque cognomen. §§ 164 -ē-, 184

Satin dictum? = satis-ne dictum (est)? *has enough been said?*

Nōn-ne oblita ipsa es? *Art thou not become forgetful thyself?*

cogitation = *act of thinking* commotion = *excitement* § 192

certē *yes* coep-istī *hast begun* nātālī *birth-* pos-si-m *I could*

cur? *why?* incipi-ē-s *will begin* praetexta *bordered* quī? *how?*

Subito a domu "Age Aemilia" vocatur. Puer manum sororis'prendit. Iunctis manibus ad portam currunt et cum reliquīs in domum ingrediuntur. In peristylum itur. Tum Claudia cenam parandam curat. Mater enim Claudiae 5 gentis est eique nomen Claudiae. Aemilia maior cum ea manet et ei auxilium fert. Aemilia minor patrem in atrium sequitur. Aemilius, absentem sorōrem uti effugiat, Theodorum se sequi iubet atque in hortum procurrit. Inde casas servorum petunt. Theodorus cum Graecis colloquitur. 10 Aemilius interim de Brenno dici exaudit. Ea res quae sit, miratur neque tum quaerere potest, quod eodem fere tempore servus accurrit pueros petiitum atque ad cenam vocatum.

Cum hoc servo in domum revertuntur, ubi expectanti patri et sororibus in atrio occurrunt. Inde in triclinium itur. 15 Toris discumbitur. Theodoro licet ad socium Aemilium accumbere. Lente apud Romanos cenari mos est. Victus in pane, lacte, olivīs consistit. Paulus et Claudia vinum aqua miscent sed eius rei parci sunt. Liberi nullum omnino vinum ad se adferri patiuntur. §§ 137 a, 224

20 Dum cenatur, Aemilia minor iterum mentionem facit de Nonis Maiis. Frater autem, cum exaudiat, dissimulat; cum Theodoro graece colloquitur. Pater filium laudat, quod tam bene loquitur tantamque operam studiis dat.

current = *running, rushing*

parsimonious = *sparing*

casa -ae hut cena -ae dinner

iube-t bid-s lente slowly

discumbitur reclining is done,
they take places § 220, 5

oc-curre-nt come or run upon
petu-nt go to torus couch

ex-audi-t over-hear-s

triclinium -i dining couch(room)

ex-specta-nt-i (who is) waiting

vocatum to invite, summon § 157



A DINING ROOM
From a Pompeian wall painting



A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

Vatican Museum, Rome

Portrait sculpture from a tombstone

Post cenam omnes ad focum congregantur. Aemilius autem commoveri videtur; nam paululum temporis ibi moratus discedit. Theodorus sequitur. Domō egressi ad flūmen casasque servorum proficiscuntur. (Interim secunda fere hora noctis facta est.) Iam apud servos moveri atque 5 ad flūmen concurrere conspiciunt. Pueri ne videantur, umbra sese tenent atque eo pervenire maturant. §§ 100, 137 b

Sunt in ripa flūminis lauri duae, quae arbores tantum inter se distant, quantum loci longitudo hominis iacentis occupare potest. Ubi eo ventum est, Aemilius videt Brennum, Gallum 10 de quo supra dictum est, humi iacere, manibus ad alteram arborem, ad alteram pedibus vinctis. Duo Thraeces ingenti magnitudine corporum ei verbera parant. §§ 62 g, 95 b

His rebus cognitis, Theodoro signum dat atque eum ad se vocat. Quid rei sit, ostendit. Quid sui consilii sit, edocet. 15 Tum pueri sese recipiunt. Alter in alteram partem circuitu iter facit atque utrimque ad lauros per tenebras accedunt. Primo verbere, quod tempus inter eos rei agenda convenit, vincula Brenno laxant. Qui liberatus subito praeter omnium opinionem ex humo exsilit. Thraeces timore perterriti dif- 20 fugiunt.

Morāt-us (after) *having delayed*, (after *he*) *has delayed, waited*
e-gress-i (after) *having stepped out*, (as soon as *they*) *get out*
tantum distant *are as far (apart) — quantum loci* *as (can occupy)*
of space **homin-is iacent-is** *of a man (who is) lying (down)* § 94
ēo ventum est *arrival has been made or they have come there* § 106 c
quod tempus . . . convēnit *which was agreed upon (as) the time*
rei agenda *of doing the thing, to act* **liberātus** (when) *set free*
concurrere *a rush (be) being made* **umbrā** *shadow* **verber-a** *lashes*
ex-silit *leaps up, springs up* **utrimque** *from either side* § 119 f

Tum vero puer non expectandum sibi statuit, dum, hac re Chiloni nuntiata, apud patrem causam dicere cogatur. Itaque, Brenno quam celerrime potest ad se vocato, domum ire contendit Brennum sibi servum postulaturus. Sed ubi eo ventum est, veretur, ne patri sua sponte persuadere non possit. Itaque Gallō foris relictō, sorōrem minōrem Aemiliam petit. Quid suī consilii sit, celeriter edocet, eamque secum ad patrem ducit. §§ 153, 196

Liberi in atrium ingressi primum patri subrident neque eloqui audent; deinde quid rei geratur, quaerenti Aemilia dicit: sese habere quasdam res, quas ab eo petere velint. Ea re permissa, sororcula petit, uti hoc tempore frater summa apud patrem gratia sit; ipse, quam fidem postulet, eam fratri det memor proximarum Nonarum. § 107 c

15 Ea re impetrata, Aemilius ipse loquitur: se proximis Nonis annos sedecim completurum; si qua eo tempore apud patrem gratia sit, illud unum sibi confestim concedatur et Brennus Gallus sibi in servitūtem tradatur. Tum pater duos filios amplexus se eam rem libenter concedere dicit. 20 Brennum ad se vocari iubet. Gallus Aemilio traditur et manūs novo domino dare iussus libenter facit.

non expectandum (esse) *that waiting ought not to be done* § 106 d
hāc re nuntiātā (as soon as) *this affair (had been) reported* § 96
dum . . . cogātur (while he *be* compelled) *till he is compelled* § 224
postulat-ur-us *intending to ask* **sibi servum** *as a slave for him*
veretur ne possit *fears that he can* **suā sponte** *of his own efforts*
verētur ut possit, veretur ne nōn possit *fears that he cannot*
quaere-nt-i *to (him when he is) asking, to (him as he) asks (them)*
com-plet-ur-um (esse) (is) *going to complete* **libenter** *gladly*
foris *outside* **geri** *be done, go on* **sub-rident** *stand smiling*

Paulō post Chilo dominum petit: Brennum quoque, supē-
rātis Thraecibus, effūgisse. Cui Paulus respondet eum nōn
abesse atque filio Aemilio esse novasque tabulas habere.
Aemilius statim Chilonem apud patrem accusat, quod
Graecus superbe et crudeliter servīs Gallīs imperet. Tum
denique pater se a filiū circumventum sentit; sed, quod
eo tempore domī nihil molestiae fieri vult, filium tacere iubet.
Chilōnī autem suādet, ut praeterita condōnet atque monet
ut in reliquum tempus omnīs suspīciones vitet. § 147 *a, e*

Postera nocte, dum cenatur, tabellarius Roma venit. 10
Dicit se a M. Crasso venisse; sibi ad Paulum esse datas
litteras, quas ipsi in manus daret. Paulus litteras ad se
ferri iubet. Libenter accipit. Tabellariō grātiās agit eum-
que respōnsum exspectāre iubet. Tum līnum incīdit. Lit-
teras aperit, apertasque suis exspectantibus praelegit. Sunt 15
Crassī manū scriptae eiusdemque signum Paulus cognōscit.
Sunt autem sine nomine sed ita:

“S. v. b. e. e. v. Libentissime legi tuas litteras in quibus
dixisti Aemilium tuum iam sēdecim annōs proximīs Nōnīs
completurum. Hodie tam multa habeo quae scribam, 20
ut mihi exspectandus videātur adventus tuus. Licēbit,
Aemilium, cum vir sit, ad me ducas.

D. Rōmae iv. Kal. Maiās, Iuliō et Caesare cōs.”

filiō esse belongs to his son novās tabulās a clean sheet

S. v. b. e. e. v. = sī vales, bene est, ego valeo D. = datae § 98

unmolested = *unannoyed*
preterit = *gone by, past*

signet = *ring, ring for sealing*
inevitable = *unavoidable*

in (l. 9) for in-cidi-t *cut-s*
līnum *string, cord (of linen)*

superb-e *haughti-ly* sī §§ 224-5
tabellārius *letter carrier*

Suis subridens Paulus tabulas confestim ad se ferri iubet.
Quibus lātis scribit ita :

“ L. Paulus Crassō suō S. D.

Nos cotidie tabellarios de Tusculano exspectamus, qui
5 si venerint, erimus certiores quando nobis domo proficis-
cendum sit. Quod spero fore VIII. Id. Mai. aut postridie.
Nisi quid accidit, in Tusculanum nos venturos pro certo
putamus a. d. iv. Id. Si quid erit impedimentū, faciemus
te statim certiozem. Ita postridie eius diei sub vesperum
10 apud te fore speramus. Datae Arpino prid. Kal.” § 113

His litteris datis atque profecto tabellario, Aemilia minor
ex patre quaerit, qua de causa Crassus scripserit litteras suas
esse datas iv. K. Mai., Iulio et Caesare consulibus; num
Bibulum esse mortuum? Cui pater: id per iocum factum.
15 Quoniam ad hanc rem perventum est, non alienum esse
videtur de ea breviter, qua re facta sit, proponere. Eo
quidem tempore apud Romanos longe nobilissimus fuit
Gnaeus Pompeius, ditissimus Marcus Licinius Crassus, cuius
ad Paulum litteras modo legimus, prudentissimus autem
20 Gaius Iulius Caesar. §§ 114, 143

S. D. = salutem dicit qui si venerint *and if they come*
Num Bibulum esse mortuum *Bibulus hasn't died (has he)* § 145 c
id per iocum factum *(that) this was done by-way-of joking*

accident = *happening, befalling* imprudent = *not looking ahead*
Dives = *the rich man* ridiculous = *causing laughter*

aliēnum *strange, out-of-order* profecto *(as soon as he) set out*
confestim, statim *straightway* sub toward suis *to his family*
fore = futurum (esse) *will be* tabulae *wooden writing tablets*
lātus -a -um *(when) brought* Tusculanum *Tusculan villa*

Priore anno consulatum petens Caesar Lucium Luceium collegam sibi satis amicum fore speraverat. Id si fieret, optimates intellegebant magno cum periculo sibi futurum, ut ambō cōsulēs populāribus favērent. Itaque nē agrōs totius Italiae paulatim occupare aut agrum publicum sibi colere aut prōvinciās spoliāre prohibērentur, M. Bibulum collegam Caesarī crearunt. § 62 g

Interim Caesar societatem cum Pompeio et Crasso fecit, ne quid fieret in re publica, nisi quod his tribus viris placuisset. Ipse autem summa erat apud populum propter liberalitatem gratia. Legem tulit, qua magna pars agrī publici populo distribueretur. Huic legi optimates per M. Bibulum et. M. Catōnem resistēbant. Tum dēmum Caesar legem ad populum tulit. Et cum Bibulus iterum resistendī causa in forum venisset, ita expulsus est, uti quam annī partem domo se teneret. Postea Caesar solus omnia in re publica ad suum arbitrium administravit. 15

Paulus, his rebus expositis, pollicetur filium Rōmam secum ducturum. Hac re constitūta, Aemilius dicit sibi esse in animo socium Theodorum una deducere. Rogat, uti patris voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Paulus respondet sibi placere, si Appoloni pace fieri possit. § 220, 12

ne occupāre prohibērentur that they might not be prevented from seizing **ne quid fieret** that nothing might take place (be done)

arbitrary = to one man's notion

administrator = manager

constitution = settled law

license = permission, allowing

optimātēs aristocrats Cf. § 91

pact = agreement

legal = lawful

resistance = standing against

spoliation = plundering, robbing

populārēs popular party

Kalendis Maiis maturius paulō quam necessitas temporis postulat, puerī Arpinum in ludum proficiscuntur. Patri Appoloniō sēsē persuāsūrōs existimant, utī filium Rōmam ire patiatur. Primus Theodorus patrem adit. Is ita cum Appolonio agit: paucis diebus amicum suum Aemilium togam virilem esse sumpturum; quo facto, Romam in urbem iter cum patre Paulo esse facturum; magnō sibi usui fore, si una cum eis iter fecerit; itaque se rogare, utī patris voluntate sibi iter una facere liceat; id non sua sponte petere sed rogatum atque sollicitatum ab Aemilio. §§ 56, 3; 159 g

Ita puer instat. Pro hoc Aemilius facit verba: puerum multa latine discere posse; magno non solum huic sed sibi ipsi usui fore, si puer una iter fecerit, quod tanto sibi auxilio ad Graeca discenda sit; praeterea in itinere tam longo sese amicum Theodorum magnopere desideraturum. § 226

Appoloniū rem concedendam putat, sed ut spatium intercedere possit diemque utī ad deliberandum sumat, negat se more Graecōrum posse id filio dare. Dicit quamquam sibi gratissimum sit, ut Theodorus Romam videat, tamen neque se velle neque morem Graecorum pati ut sui molestiae cuiquam aut impedimento sint. § 159 g

Huic cum sua sponte persuadere non possint, ad Paulum eunt ut eō dēprecātōre ab Appoloniō inpetrent: Theodōrum patre invito Romam iter facere non posse.

cui- to one -quam any- § 119 c

dēprecātōr (as an) intercessor

desiderare miss dies time

im-petr-e-nt they may obtain

in-stat stands on, persists

inter-cēdere inter-vene § 220, 8

invītus unwilling iter trip

rogātus (because he was) asked

suā sponte of their own efforts

sumat may take

§ 159 e

sui his (people)

sūmpturum (esse) will put on

Itaque Paulus rem suscipit atque a magistrō impetrat, utī filium una proficisci patiatur. Ea re constituta, diem dicunt, qua die Theodorus ea, quae ad profectionem pertinent, in fundum ferat. Is dies erat III. N. Mai. § 225

Pridie Nonas Maias tabellarius Formiis venit, quī se a 5 M. Cicerone consulari missum esse dicit. Paulo tradit epistulam, in qua clarus ille Arpinas scripsit sese IV. Non. Mai. in Tusculanum profectum; die, quo dictum erat, amicum Paulum filiumque libentissimē ibi exceptūrum.

Nonis Maiis in peristyllo domus magna fit gratulatio. 10 Familia omnis eō convenit iuvenem Lūcium Aemilium Paulum gratulatum, quod togam virilem sumpserit. Et quoniam est eodem praenomine, quo pater, appellatus, licet appelletur L. Aemilius Paulus iunior; pater L. Paulus senior.

Servi omnes domino futuro salutem dicunt. Chiloni, 15 petente Aemilio, mandatur, eo die uti servis quies ab labore detur. Idoneis verbis adulescens omnibus gratias agit, quod bono in se animo sint. Et cum advesperascit Brennum ad se vocat atque ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinent, comparari iubet. § 57, "in" 20

Prima luce domo proficiscuntur Paulus, Aemilius, Theodorus, Brennus. Biduo post, cum iter non intermittat, hora diei circiter duodecima Tusculum perveniunt. Inde in Tusculanum contendunt, ubi Ciceronem eos in hortis expectantem inveniunt. Ille Arpinatis libentissime suscipit. Pauli 25

die, quod on the day, on which eodem by the same . . . quod as § 115

juvenile = of young people

verbosity = wordiness

Arpinās -ātis son of Arpinum § 45 profectum (esse) had started

iunioris manum prendit. In atrium itur. Orator adulescentem ad Quīntum fratrem deducit. Terentia coniūnx et filia Tullia Paulum salūtant. Dē Arpinātibus quaeritur. De Claudia et filiabus exquiritur. § 137

5 Cicero diu cum Paulo colloquitur. Fata sua queritur. Reī publicae statum miseratur: Sese omnino a re publica abesse; Graecis litteris operam dare; scripta sua publicare. Aemilius sermōnem orātōris vōcēsque mirātur. Longum est omnia enarrare. Illud ūnum satis erit dictum. Adulescenti librum orationum, quas in Lucium Catilinam habuerit, sese datūrum esse pollicetur. § 225

Postero die de hōra tertia e Tusculano profecti via Latīna ad urbem accedunt et circiter merīdiem nōta moenia conspiciunt. Porta Capena urbem ingrediuntur. Aemilio 15 multa mīranda videntur. § 100

“Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.”

In forum itur. Hinc tabernae, ubi librī, picturae, statuae exposita sunt; hinc servī et servae veneunt. Ibi moratur ignobile vulgus. Nam frumentum publicum exspectant. 20 Nihil agunt. Nihil student, nisi ludis et circo. Securi fātōrum reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis praetereunt equitēs Rōmāni et patrēs cōscripti; aliōrum enim obliti, suī memores sunt. Ūnus ex omnibus Gaius Caesar omnia

patrēs conscripti *enrolled fathers, senators (heads of families)*

commiserate = *take pity on*

sermon = *a talk, a speech*

con-iūnx *wife, husband*

porta *gate*

ex-quiri-tur *inquiries are made*

securi *careless, regardless*

lud-i *game-s* **memor** *mindful*

strat-a *pavement-s*

moen-ia *wall-s (of a city)*

taberna *shop* **venire** *be sold*

nōn modo videt sed etiam perspicit plānēque sentit. Reliqui omnes clarissimam fortunatissimamque rem publicam in exitium ruere patiuntur. §§ 107 c, 223 b

Inde maturius paulo, quam litteris dictum est, in Marci Crassī domum veniunt. Ibi amice excipiuntur. Omnia ibi 5 mīranda videntur; nam Crassus, cum multas domus possideat, ūnam sibi et eam magnificentissimam aedificāvit, eaque regalī luxu ornata est. Paulus diu cum Crasso et Publio filio adulescente colloquitur. Ibi Aemilius dīcī audit Caesarem proximo anno Galliae provinciae prōcōsulem se 10 fore sperare; Publium velle una cum eo in provinciam īre; nihil omnīno in senatū Caesarī impedimento esse, ex quo M. Catonem in carcerem ducī iusserit; Bibulum semper a senatū abesse; iam non Catonem eo consilio totum diem dicendō cōsūmere, ut alicui lēgi resistat. 15

Postrīdie eius diei Aemilius cum patre et M. Crasso in cūriam venit. Ibi patrēs cōscrip̄tōs, summōs rei pūblīcae viros, videt atque loquī audit. De summa re pūblica deliberatur. Multae a Caesarianis dicuntur sententiae, quae optimatibus displicere videntur. Hī saepe inter sese 20 aspiciunt; plerumque silent; sibi expectandum statuunt, dum peracto cōsulatū Caesar in prōvinciam abierit. Huc accedit, quod legati ab Ariovisto rege Germanorum Romam vērē societatē postulātum. Senātus hortante Caesare decernit, consules videant, utī ad Ariovistum mūnera ample 25 remittantur, ipse rex atque amicus appelletur. § 137 b

Inde in M. Crassī domum proficiscuntur. Iam strepitum ac tumultum in viis audiunt. Accelerant, ut quid rei sit

cognoscant. Incendium fieri sentiunt. Aedificium magnum ardet. Cuius sit, quaeritur. Crassus dominum arcessit. Ardens parvo emit pretio. Proxima quoque ab utraque parte aedificia parvo coemit. Servos suos arcessit, ut ignis restinguant aedificiumque reficiant, ut quam primum sibi usui sit ad suam rem familiarem augendam. Nam Crassus ab non nullis dicitur avarus esse et pecuniae cupidus.

Miseri habitantes correpta sua ex aedificio in omnis partis efferunt aut fuga sibi salutem petunt. Brevi tempore 10 servi arcessiti adsunt et magno cum strepitu ac tumultu operi ignis restinguendi instant.

Atque in ea re omnium intentis animis, alia ex parte latro impetum in Aemilium facit, sive spoliandi causa seu quod magis veri simile est abducendi et retinendi, dum pater 15 magna redimat pecunia. At Brennus celeriter latronem brachio arripit ac longe per terram sternit. Quod nisi fidissimus adfuisset Gallus neque eum propulsasset, nequaquam facile dici potest, quid de Aemilio factum esset. § 119 b

Postero die Paulus, quod ipse paucos dies apud Crassum 20 moraturus erat, Theodorum et Aemilium cum Brenno domum remittit, ne plus temporis studiorum dimittant. Illi autem, multis rebus et in itinere et in urbe cognitis, libenter Arpinum ad studia sua revertuntur.

avarice = *greediness*

edification = *up-building*

arcessere *summon*

bracchium *arm*

ardē-ns (while it is) *burn-ing*

cor-repta (that were) *snatched*

coemere *buy up* **instare** *be at*

incendiary = *starter of fires*

pecuniary = *of money, monetary*

latrō brigand **morari** *stay* § 191

quam primum *as soon as possible*

rēs familiāris *estate, property*

red-imere *ransom* §§ 219, 4; 220,

sternere *lay low*

ARMINIUS PUER SUËBUS

Rhenus antiquitus Gallōs a Germanis dividebat. Gallis Rhenum, plerique Germani trans Rhenum incolebant. Hōrum magna pars finium ex silvis ac paludibus cōstabat; illi agros feracis possidebant. Antiqui Galli humaniō-⁵ res erant; nam privati ac separatos agros habebant. Frumento, lacte, pecore vivebant. Maximam partem agricultura, parum venatione ad vivendum nitebantur.

Germani antiqui feri ac barbari erant neque multum frumento sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivebant. ¹⁰ Parum agriculturae studebant multumque erant in venationibus. Privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil erat. Ita sedis fixas non habebant. Late quotannis vagabantur. Meliora semper petebant loca, ubi oves, iumenta, boves pascerentur. Potentiores gentes optimum occupabant ¹⁵ agrum. Infirmitates finibus expellebantur. §§ 84, 97

His rebus factum est, uti paucis annis ante Caesaris in Galliam adventum quaedam Sueborum nationes ad superiorem partem fluminis Danubi accederent. (Eorum gens erat longe maxima et potentissima Germanorum omnium.) Pauci ²⁰ ex Suebis id flumen transiere non longe ab eo loco ubi ex monte Abnoba profluit. In his erat princeps Nasua nomine.

ameliorate = *make better*

antiquity = *ancientness, oldness*

ferax *rich* **factum est** *happened*

ferus *wild* **gens, gentis** *tribe*

humānus *-a -um civilized*

iumenta *yoke animals* **-itus** *-ly*

lac, lactis *milk* **lat-e** *wide-ly*

optimistic = *expecting the best*

sediment = *settlings*

nite-ba-ntur *depend-ed, lean-ed*

ovis *sheep* **palus** *marsh* § 43

pāsce-re-nt-ur *might feed* § 181 b

quotannis *every year, yearly*

venātiō -onis *a hunt, hunting*

Locī natura erat haec, quem locum Nasua domicilio sibi ac sedibus suis delegerat. Flumen est Isara, quod ex Alpibus a meridie in Danubium influit. Collis a medio aequaliter declivis ad flumen Isaram vergebat. Ab eō flumine, non magna interiecta planitie, pariter acclivis collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius. Uterque collis ab superiore parte silvestris. Hic totus locus altissimīs montibus undique continebatur. Hinc atque hinc secundum flumen loca erant aperta, quo pastores boves et iūmenta agerent.

§§ 119 d, f, 159 g

In ripa eius fluminis in umbra arborum magnarum Nasua casam aedificarat humilem, proximo anno relinquendam, quod non longius anno remanere uno in loco colendī causa licēbat sēdēsque quotannis erant mūtandae.

15 Eo quī secutus est autumnō, quī fuit annus Marco Mesala et Marco Pisone consulibus, paulo post merīdiem diē clārī atque serēnī, puer ūndecim annōrum, flāvō capillō, oculis caeruleis, cervi pelle vestitus pro casa Nasuae stabat. Paulo robustior pro aetate erat; namque nōbīs quīndecim 20 esse annorum vīsus esset; tanta enim statura, tantis membris, tantaque erat magnitudine corporis.

Pater in venatione aberat. Servus aderat nullus. Mater intra casam versabatur. Puer in aliquam rem intentus videbatur. Omnia paulisper apud casam lustrat. Patris vestigia 25 in harena conspicit. Cupit ipse venatum ire.

de-clivity = *down-sloping*
nascent = *being born, rising*

relinquishing = *abandoning*
vestige = *trace, track* § 77 b

aequāl-iter *even-ly* aetas *age*
capillus *hair* cervus *buck*

harēna *sand* lustrat *surveys*
pellis *skin* quō *where-to* § 119 d

Subito pharetram cum sagittis rapit. Gladium puerilem petit. Haec cingitur arma. Tum sinistra manu arcum, dextra duas hastas rudis corripit. Ad casae portam respiciens adverso flumine proficiscitur seque celeriter e conspectu effert. § 181 b 5

Cum Arminius (nam puero nomen erat Arminio) circiter ducentos passus a casa progressus esset, feminea vox repente a tergo sonat. Lingua rauca nobisque aliena "Age Arminī" vocatur. Prospectus impediabatur arboribus, quae inter puerum atque matrem intercedebant. Ille consistit. Re-10 spicit. Dum dubitat quid faciendum sit, iterum maiore vōce "Arminī" clāmātur.

Arminius respondendum non existimavit neque matrī concedendum putavit. Duobus ante diebus pater Nasua domo exierat. Se domī relictum indignabatur. Non dubium erat 15 quā illō ipsō die pater domum rediret. Cupiebat cum patre redeunte in via congregari et cum eo reverti. §§ 220, 13

His rebus adductus non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum armis desideratis atque inventis vēstigiis mater consequeretur sēcumque domum reduceret. Itaque cōstituit opti-20 mum esse quam celerrime potuit procurrare. §§ 69, 90

Ea re constituta, quam maximo poterat cursu provolavit et circiter quingentos passus progressus cum lupo congregitur. Quī cum fugere nollet, puer ei sagittam in apertas faucis misit. Fera irata impetum in puerum facit atque 25 iterum vulnerata hastā cōficitur.

adverso flumine <i>upstream</i> § 96	indignabatur <i>was irritated</i>
arcus <i>bow</i> adductus <i>induced</i>	pharetra <i>quiver</i>
fera <i>wild (beast)</i> lupus <i>wolf</i>	red-i-re-t <i>would re-turn</i>
hasta <i>spear</i> inventis <i>found</i>	sagitta <i>arrow</i>

Interea desideratis armis mater filium venatum proficisci sensit, et verita ne cum feris congrediretur, servos vocat et subsequi iubet. Ipsa vehementer commota praecurrit et prima filium, vixdum lupo interfecto, est consecuta. Simul puerum incusat, quod solus exisset, et gloriatur, quod tam paratus esset ad periculum subeundum.

Cum autem servorum auxilio puer lupo pellem detraheret, voces hominum pedumque sonitus audiuntur. Nasua cum suis accedit. Duo magna cervorum corpora reportabant. 10 Erant praeterea tres homines Norici, qui dicebantur cum eis in venatione armis congressi pugnam commisisse ac superati esse. Hos captos manibus post tergum vinctis trahebant.

Nasuae cum id nuntiatum esset, uti puer lupum solus interfecisset, factum magnopere laudat. Socii autem, magna 15 gratulatione facta, puerum alte sustulerunt atque in casam patris reportarunt.

Ubi eo ventum est, Nasua socios dimittit. Duos ex captivis servis custodiendos tradit. Principem autem captivorum secum retinet et in casam ducit. Is enim regio 20 erat vultu nobilique genere natus. Nasua eum suo beneficio habere obstrictum volebat. Itaque vincula ei laxat, victum communicat. §§ 5 f, 130, 134 b

Tum pater, mater, filius colloqui incipiunt. De venatione quaeritur ac respondetur. De filii virtute praedicatur. A captivo etiam quaeritur. Ille primo nihil respondere sed tacitus permanere. Post paulo autem, cum eos non esse inimico in se animo vidisset, loqui coepit, et quo 25 amplius loquebatur, eo liberior atque audacius dicebat.

predication = *statement* **tacitly** = *quietly* **uti** (line 13) *how*

Tum demum Nasuam in ludum prōvocat. Dicit alea consulerent, utrum ipse in servitute maneret an se in libertatem vindicāret. Nasua assēnsit, et aleā semel atque iterum iacta, Noricus non solum suam sed etiam suorum libertatem consequitur. Suebī dextram prendit. Fidem inter se dant. 5

Rursus in ludum provocatur. Prīmo recusatur, quo minus de libertate contenderetur. Tum denique homo Noricus libertatem, filium Suebus in ludo ponit. Semel atque ultimum iaci convenit. Iacitur. Iterum Nōricus vincit. Iterum homines fidem inter se dant. Arminius vocatur. 10 Deditur. Dominō manus dare iubetur. Servus est factus.

Postero die Voccio (Nōrico enim nōmen erat Voccioni) domum suam revertī constituit. Suos ad se vocat et ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparari iubet. Iumenta emit. Frumentum flagitat, ut cōpia cibī in itinere sup- 15 peteret. Trium enim dierum molitīs cibariīs opus fuit.

Miser Arminius in conspectu servorum, patrum, amicorum in servitutem abducitur. Immotus tamen, fortis et aequo animō mōre suōrum condiōnem accipit.

“Spem vultu simulat, premit altum corde dolorem.” 20 Domino servīre incipit. Huc illuc currit. Imperata facit.

Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatīs, hora diei circiter quārtā proficiscuntur, et magnīs itineribus Nōreiam contendunt. Tertio die, cum iter non intermitteret, eo perveniunt. 25

cordially = *heartily*

§ 21

convenient = *agreeable* § 220, 4

alea die, dice denique at last

iaci be thrown imperāta orders

opus fuit there was need (of)

premit represses, conceals

simulat pretends spem hope

utrum whether vultus fac

Cum ad Noreiam accederent, subito magnum strepitum atque tumultum audierunt. In servum inciderunt, qui auxilii causa veniebat. Dixit multitudinem Boiorum ex finibus exisse. Hos repente in agrum Noricum praedandi causa
5 venisse et oppidum Nōreiam oppugnare.

Quod ubi Voccio audiit, alium in aliam partem mittit. Ex agris homines convocari atque in unum locum convenire iubet. Quōrum magnō numerō coāctō atque armātō, oppidum circumveniunt. Undique fit in Boios impetus.

10 Hostes autem ancipiti periculo perterriti terga vertunt ac per ōrdenes Noricorum erumpunt seque fugae mandant atque in proximas silvas abdunt. Paucis diebus discedunt et eo tōtō anno vagati ad Helvetios perveniunt. Hi Boios amice suscipiunt et socios sibi asciscunt.

15 Post hostium fugam statim soror Nōrica ad regem Voccionem venit gratulatum, quod tam opportuno adventu rediit hostisque tam necessario tempore in fugam dedit. Norici regem suum magna gratulatione facta susceperunt. In primis regis soror multa de errore fratris quaerit. Cui Voccio
20 Arminium more suorum statim in servitūtem dat, quod servos aleā acceptos diūtius retinere nōn placēbat. Ita Nōricae servus est factus. Puer autem in dies dominam benignam amare discebat eiue bene servire cupiebat.

Proximā aestāte multi barbari finibus ab Suēbīs expulsi
25 sunt et magna cum multitudine hominum in Noricos venerunt. Ibi agrōs vāstābant, aedificia incendēbant, vicōs cēpē-

circum-vent = *come-around*

e-ruption = *a breaking out*

anceps double abdunt conceal

depredations = *plunderings*

association = *alliance* § 220, 2

benignus -a -um kind, generous

runt, multōs ex incolis in servitutem abduxerunt. Extremo tamen autumnō proelio superatī sunt et primā hieme cum omnibus copiis discesserunt seque trans flumen Danubium recēpērunt.

Ea quae secuta est aestate, quī fuit annus Gaio Caesare 5 et Marco Bibulō consulibus, Vocciō cum Suebīs pacem et amicitiam cōfirmāre volēbat, nē Boiī aliūque barbarī saepius impetum in suos finis facere auderent.

Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum legatōs mitteret, quī societatem cum eo peterent atque postularent, utī Suebos 10 sibi conciliaret; eīque sororem suam Noricam in matrimonium dat — multi enim Suebī Ariovistum in Galliam sequebantur; ipse uxorem ex Suebīs habebat, et propter eam affinitatem et fortunam suam magna erat gratia apud Suebos et alios Germanos. Itaque legatī, Norica et Arminius 15 proficiscuntur cum mercatoribus, quī iter in Galliam facturi erant seque eos ad Ariovistum deducturos polliciti sunt.

Galliae tōtius factiōnēs erant duae. Alterius principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī inter se multos annos contendebant. Sequanī, quī proximī fluminī Rheno erant, 20 sese cum Arvernīs coniunxerunt. § 159 g

Ubi neutriū victoriam reportant, factum est ut Sequanī arcesserent Germanōs, quī trans Rhenum incolebant. Hōrum primō circiter milia quīndecim duce Ariovistō Rhēnum transierunt et Arvernīs subsidio venerunt. Germano- 25

Arvernīs subsidio ven-erunt *came for aid to the Arvernians*

Quam ob rem = et ob eam rem *and for this reason, and therefore*
placuit eī *it suited him, it was decided by him, he decided* § 133

affinity = relation *(by marriage)* **mercantile = trading**

reconcile = make friendly

uxorious = fond of a wife

rum auxilio Aeduī victī et coactī sunt Sequanīs obsides dare et iurare sese neque obsides repetīturos neque auxilium a populō Romano implorāturos neque recusāturos quō minus perpetuō sub illorum imperio essent. §§ 154, 229

5 Sed Ariovistus, hoc bello confecto, domum reversus non est. Plurīs autem Germanos trans Rhenum in Galliam tra-
ducebat. In Sequanīs consedit. Tertiam partem agri Sēquanī occupāvit. Locum ac sēdis sibi sociīsque parāvit. Sequanī ob eam rem incitatī armīs ius suum exsequī conan-
10 tur. Sociōs arcessunt et magnam multitudinem cōgunt.

Hae res dum apud Sequanōs geruntur, cum omnibus copiīs suis Ariovistus in silvas se ac paludes recepit. Ibi multōs mensīs se castrīs tenebat neque suī potestatem fecit. Galli exspectandō fatigātī dē pugnā dēspērānt et domum discēdere
15 coeperunt. Quos Germanī dispersos adortī vicerunt. § 107

Hoc proelio facto, Ariovistus magnōs sibi spīritus magnamque arrogantiam sūmere et superbē crūdēliterque im-
perare coepit. Omnia fere oppida Sequanorum occupavit. Liberos nōbilissimorum obsides poscebat. De his, sī qua
20 res non ad voluntatem suam facta sit, summum supplicium sūmēbat. Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs erant perferendī, neque tamen querī neque auxilium implorare audebant. § 106 b

Ubi in Sequanos ventum est, rex Ariovistus legatos Noricos honorificentissime suscepit. Noricam in matri-
25 monium duxit. Pacem cum rege Voccone et amicitiam confirmavit. Legatos domum dimisit. Uxorī novae permisit, utī Arminium servum retineret. Quī brevī tempore magna

adortī *surprising* coactī *forced* gerī *go on* exsequī *enforce*
cōpiaē *troops* fecit *made, gave* suī *potestatem* *a chance at him*

erat gratia apud Suebam uxorem et filiam novem annorum, cui nōmen erat Velaeda. Multōs etiam amicōs inveniēbat in servīs regis, et nonnullos et Sequanōrum et Aeduorum obsides, quī apud Ariovistum erant, cognōvit. § 105

Cum ab hīs quaereret, quo statu res in Gallia se haberent, sic reperiebat: totius Galliae factiones esse duas; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernos; hos omnī tempore de potentatu inter se contendere; Sequanos, quī sese cum Arvernīs coniūnxissent, auxilium a Germānīs implōrāsse; hōrum primō circiter milia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsisse; Germānōrum auxiliō Aeduōs victōs et coactos esse Sequanīs obsides dare et civitatem iure iurando obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque recūsāturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum imperio essent; Aeduos omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum āmisisse; sed peius Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus domum reversus non esset et tertiam partem agrī Sequanī occupavisset ibique consedisset. § 56, 3

Cum autem ex eīs quaereret, quae genera Germanorum et quam multi in Gallia essent, ita repperit: primō Suebōs et Marcomannos Sequanīs auxilio venisse; postea, cum Aeduīs victīs civitātēs Galliae Ariovistō bellum inferrent et ad eum oppugnandum venissent, traductos esse plurīs; nunc esse in Gallia ad numerum c. milium; hos separatim cōnsedissee atque eīs generatim esse datos agrōs, Marcomannīs, Tribocīs, Vangionibus, Nemetibus, Sedusiīs, Suēbīs.

generatim by tribes or nations
iure iurando by a right (that is)
 to be sworn, by oath

potentatus -us power, supremacy
principātus -us leadership § 81
res se habent matters stand

Haec omnia Gallos moleste ferre ac vererī, ne omnes Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent et omnis Gallōs finibus expellere conarentur; nam horum meliorem esse quam illōrum agrum.

Dē Rōmānīs quoque pauca interdum audiēbat; populum
 5 Romanum tōtius orbis terrarum firmissimum esse ac potentissimum; magnam et superbam habere urbem, quae Roma appellaretur; hanc maximam et florentissimam totius orbis aestimari; Rōmānīs regem esse nullum; duos magistratus creārī annuōs, quōs cōsulēs appellārent; iam Ariovistum
 10 legatos Romam ad senatum mīsisse, quī et munera ferrent et societatem cum populō Rōmano peterent. § 217 f

Romanī saepe numero cum Gallis bellum gesserant, cum finibus suis eōs aut prohibērent aut expellerent, eōsque plērumque superārāt. Antīquitus enim Galli semel atque
 15 iterum in Rōmānōrum finis impetum fecerant atque etiam ad Rōmam accesserant; et quī ex Gallis in Italia consederant et ab utraque parte fluminis Padī vicos possessionesque habebant, ei contra populum Romanum coniūraverant atque sese cum Hannibale, acerrimo acerbissimoque Romanorum
 20 hoste, coniūnxerant.

His rebus fiebat, uti eae cīvitates Galliae, quae proximae essent, paulatim a Romanīs victae et in prōvinciam redactae sint. Hanc appellābant ‘prōvinciam nostram’ sive ‘Galliam provinciam.’ Quae pars provinciae citra Alpīs
 25 posita est, eam ‘citeriorem provinciam’ sive ‘citeriorem Galliam’ vocabant, et quae pars ultra Alpīs posita est, eam ‘ulteriōrem provinciam’ sive ‘ulteriōrem Galliam’ dicebant. §§ 74, 5; 152

citerior nearer, hither

remunerate = return gifts, repay

Ibi collocabant legiones, quae praesidio essent cīvibus Romanīs, quī hīs in locīs versarentur. Ibi disponebant praesidia, quae barbaros intra finīs Romanorum ingredi prohiberent. Ibi proconsul imperium tenebat, delectus habēbat, tōtī prōvinciae militēs imperābat. Eō mercātōrēs 5 cum mercibus proficīsciebantur atque inde com-meabant ad eas cīvitates, quae sub septentriōnibus positae sunt. § 119 d

Paucīs diebus quibus in castra Suebōrum venit, Arminius contentus esse coepit. Omnis fere pro amīcīs habebat. Omnibus praeter Ario-vistum cupiebat. Homo enim erat bar- 10 barus, crudelis, iracundus. Ab initio puer eius imperia vix sustinebat. Quo amplius eum cognoscebat, eō magis oderat. Quod tamen tacebat, neque cuiquam dīcebat, et aliqua re intentus in officiīs semper versabatur.

Qua re inductus rex nōn inimicō erat in puerum animō; 15 namque eum tacēre vidēbat neque aliīs sēsē antepōnere intellegebat. Fortem, modestum, diligentem esse sciebat. Et eius summum in utramque uxorem studium animadverterat, summam in Velaedam voluntatem, fidem, iustitiam, temperantiam cognoverat. 20

His rebus fiebat, utī Arminius interdum custōs poneretur puerīs Aeduīs et Sequanīs, quī obsides in castrīs tenebantur. Post paulo, ubi bono in eōs animo est cognitus, fiebat, utī eum magis pro amīco quam custōde aestimarent.

quae . . . essent = ut eae . . . essent that they might be § 148 g
praesidiō cīvibus (for) a defense (protection) to the citizens § 73 e
prō amīcīs habebat took for friends, regarded as friends § 58

ire = anger, wrath fortitude = bravery odious = hateful
custodian = guardian merchant = trader officious = dutiful
com-meābant went and came dis-pōnere put at intervals

Et in primis obses Aeduus, puer quattuordecim annorum, nōmine Litaviccus eī maximam fidem habēbat.

Ex eo Arminius multa de Aeduīs, de Sequanīs et de aliīs civitatibus Galliae cognovit: apud Gallōs quīnque esse
5 genera hominum; horum ūnum genus esse druidum, quī sacris praeessent; alterum nobilium, quī essent optimates Gallorum ac plerumque agrī tenerent; in his esse principes civitātum, ē quibus magistrātūs creārentur et quīdam dē-
ligerentur ad summas res conficiendas; tertium genus esse
10 equitum, quī plerumque in bellis versarentur; quartum genus esse plebis, — partim quī sese divitum et potentiō-
rum amicitiae dedunt et a patronīs ‘clientes’ appellantur, partim quī aere alieno oppressi ‘obaerati’ dicuntur; quo-
rum condicio paulō est supra servitutem; — quīntum genus
15 esse servorum, quorum plerique essent, quī bello capti sint.

Multis ante annis Arvernos cum populo Rōmanō bellum gessisse ac superatos esse; postea autem populum Romanum pacem cum eis fecisse neque stipendium imposuisse atque
eōs lēgibus suis ūtī voluisse; Rōmānōs enim rārō umquam
20 exercitum ē finibus Galliae prōvinciae ēdūcere et Gallōs liberōs esse velle; qua ex re fieri, utī Galli multō minus imperium Rōmānōrum quam Germānōrum timēre dēbērent.

Aeduōs populī Romanī esse amicos, saepe numero fratres et consanguineos a senatu appellatōs; eos regem nullum
25 habere sed magistratum creare annum, quem ‘vergobretum’ appellarent; eius imperium summum neque firmissimum esse,

sacris (Dat.) praeessent were to take charge of sacrifices. § 220, 11

aes alienum another's money

druid-um of druids (priests)

ob-aerati held for debt, debtors

stipendium tribute, tax

quod Dumnorix, frater Divitiaci, qui paucis ante annis principatum in civitate obtinuerat, facultates magnas ad largiendum haberet; hunc non solum domi sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu alere et circum se habere; saepe plebem 5 deterrere, ne imperiis oboedirent; quod eius auctoritas apud plebem privatim plus valeret quam ipsorum magistratum; ipsum regni obtinendi cupidum esse; qua cupiditate inductum, nisi quid accideret, regnum iam occupaturum.

Dixit idem Litaviccus apud Sequanos fuisse regem patris 10 sui memoriā hominem potentissimum, Catamantaloedem; regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuisse et a senatu populi Romani amicum appellatum esse; nunc autem apud Sequanos longe nobilissimum esse et ditissimum Casticum, Catamantaloedis filium; regnum obtinere cupere neque 15 occupare audere propter inimicitias principum Sequanorum et Ariovisti auctoritatem.

Paucis post diebus legati, quos Romam miserat, ad Ariovistum reversi sunt: senatum munera accepisse et petente Gaio Caesare, qui eo tempore erat consul, Ariovistum regem 20 atque amicum appellasse. Quibus rebus Ariovistus magnopere sublatus, praesentibus obsidibus Aeduīs et Sēquanīs, summopere gloriatus est atque ita locutus: se quoque fratrem esse Romanorum; Caesarem, qui proximo anno proconsul imperium Galliae provinciae obtenturus esset, sibi 25 suisque amicissimum esse.

§§. 100, 228–9

Eo quod secutum est vere, qui fuit annus Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabīnio consulibus, crebri rumores ad Ariovistum

alere feed **audere** dare **sūmptus** expense **sub-lātus** puffed up

afferebantur, itemque per mercatores certior factus est Helvetiis esse in animō de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exire. Exeundi has esse causas; primum, quod pro multitudine hominum angustos se finis habere arbitrarentur; deinde quod ab non nullis principibus sollicitarentur. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendō Ariovistus quosdam ex Aeduīs et Sequanīs videri non inimicō in Helvetios animō esse.

His rebus commotus Ariovistus exploratores in diversas civitates Galliae dimisit. Eis negotium dat, uti ea quae apud eas gerantur cognoscant seque de his rebus certiore faciant. Eodem fere tempore legatos trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit; sed qua de causa aut quam in partem iter facturī essent, Arminius non cognōvit. § 226

Itaque ad obsides Aeduōrum se recepit. Litavicum ad se vocat. Quaerit ex solo quibus de causis e finibus Helvetiī exiturī essent, quī homines essent, et qua re Ariovistus tantō opere commovērētur. Aeduus respondit: his paucis annis bello fractōs esse Aeduos, Arvernos, Sequanos; nōn esse dubium, quin eo tempore totius Galliae plurimum Helvetiī possent; bellandī cupidos esse; reliquōs Gallos virtute praecedere; magno dolore affici, quod angustos finis haberent; montibus enim altis aut latis fluminibus undique continerī; his rebus prohiberī, quō minus aut late vagarentur aut facile finitimis bellum inferrent.

Eis negotium dat uti assigns them the task that (they find out).

commotion = *agitation*

fractured = *broken*

angustus -a -um *narrow*

dimittere *send away, let go*

dubious = *doubtful*

query = *seek to know, ask* § 153

plurimum possent *were most able*

prae-cedere *pre-cede, excel* § 220, 11

Omnem civitatem Helvetiam in quattuor pagos divisam esse; horum unum pagum Tigurinum appellari; Tigurinos patrum suorum memoria domo exisse; bellum cum populo Romano gessisse; Lucium Cassium consulem occidisse exercitumque eius pepulisse et sub iugum misisse; hac victoria Helvetios insolenter gloriari et virtutem Romanorum despiciere consuesse. § 60

Ubi Arminius ex eo quaesivit, quis rex apud Helvetios esset, Litaviccus ita respondit: eos regem habere nullum; Gallōs enim libertatem maximam aestimare; cupere se ipsos creare magistratus, qui sibi praessent; reges habere nolle; ipsum nomen regis vereri atque odisse. §§ 128, 130

Potentiores tamen vulgo regna occupare conari; qui cum ob eam rem alias domo expellantur, alias a civitate interficiantur (apud Helvetios enim poena erat ut damnati igni cremarentur), tamen hoc conatu non desistere; omnis sibi conciliare; domum coniurare; societates cum principibus aliarum civitatum petere. Atque eo sorores, filias, propinquas suas nuptum collocare. § 157

In hoc genere fuisse Celtillum Arvernum, qui victis Aeduis, principatum totius Galliae obtineret, Orgetorigem Helvetium, Casticum Sequanum, Dumnorigem Aeduum, quorum primus ab Arvernīs interfectus esset, alter timore poenae perterritus sibi mortem conscivisset, duo reliqui etiam nunc in spem regni obtinendi venirent. 25

belli-gerent = *making war*

odium = *hatred, dislike*

cremate = *burn up*

penalty = *punishment*

nuptials = *marriage ceremonies*

vulgar = *of the crowd*

consciscere *take upon*

iugum *yoke*

propinqua *relative*

Idem dixit: Helvetios virtute omnibus praestare; Ariovistum hoc intellegere atque timere, ne Sequanos defensum et Germanos oppugnatum venirent; — namque biennio ante Orgetorix coniuratiōnem nōbilium domi fēcerat et Helvētiis
 5 persuasum habebat, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent, tōti Galliae bellum inferrent, imperiōque potirentur et domicilio maxime frumentaria loca occuparent. § 182 b

His rebus adducti Helvetii constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmenta et carrōs
 10 coēmere, sēmentis quam maximās facere, frūmenti quam maximam copiam parare, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt. Profectionem in tertium annum lege confirmant. §§ 129, 158

15 Orgetorix sibi legationem ad civitates suscipit. In Sēquanōs et Aeduōs venit pācem et amicitiam cōfirmātum, societātem petītum, auxilium sibi rogātum. Dumnorīgī filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Cum eo et cum Castico societatem suo nomine facit. Utrique persuadet, ut regnum
 20 in civitate sua occuparet. Illis probat facile esse conata perficere. Dicit sēsē illis, illōs sibi rēgnū cōpiis atque exercitu esse conciliaturos. Hac oratione adducti fidem et ius iurandum inter se dant, et regno occupato totius Galliae imperio sese potiri posse sperant. §§ 108 b, 147

biennial = *two-yearly* § 67

conciliation = *winning over*

copious = *well supplied*

probable = *to be proven*

conāt-a things attempted § 100

con-firmare establish, assure

ducere lead, draw, decide

legātiō mission legātus envoy

op-pugnat-um (§157 b) to at-tack

potiri get prae-stare excel

His rebus confectis, index ad magistratūs Helvetiorum venit. Dicit alia domī, alia cum finitimīs consilia inīrī, coniurationem fierī. Orgetorīgē proditorem indicat. Omnia enūntiat. Haec res in vulgus Helvetiorum effertur. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgē indiciō auditō causam dicere 5 cogunt. Diem causae dictionis constituunt. Iudex nominatur. Die constituta ad iudicium itur. Eo Orgetorix omnem familiam suam cōgit. Clientis obaerātōsque suōs eōdem condūcit. Per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem incitata armīs ius suum exsequī cōnare-10 tur, Orgetorix mortuus est. Neque abest suspīcio, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit. §§ 152-3

Arminius hac orātionē Litavicī intellexit post eius mortem Helvetios nihilo minus e finibus exīre conārī et iam ad eam rem paratos esse. Ariovistum autem eos timere vidit atque 15 legatos trans Rhenum in Germaniam auxiliorum petendorum causa mīsisse sentiebat. 118 c

Quīndecim post diebus legatī, quos trans Rhenum ab Ariovisto missos supra demonstravimus, ad eum reverterunt: Harudes hominum milia vigintī quattuor eī auxilio mittere; 20 hos iam domo profectos esse. §§ 56, 3; 94 b; 159 g

Eodem fere tempore speculatores ex Aeduīs redierunt: esse omnīno itinera duo, quibus itineribus Helvetiī domo exīre possent, unum per Sequanos angustum et difficile, vix qua singulī carrī ducerentur et qua Sequanis invītis 25

carriage = *cart, car, wagon*
e-nunciation = *a telling out*
ex-ecution = *following out*
causa case dicere plead

incited = *roused, angered*
indicator = *pointer (accuser)*
speculator = *one who spies*
qua § 119 g vix hardly

ire non possent; alterum per provinciam Romanam, multo
facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finis Hel-
vĕtiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluat, isque nōnnūllis
locis vadō transeat; in eō flumine pontem esse; illac
5 autem Caesare invĭto Helvetios transĭre non posse. § 119 g

Plerosque Aeduos et Sequanos recūsare, quo minus per
suos finis eos ire paterentur; timere enim, ne agros popu-
larentur; sperare faciliore itinere adductos Helvetios iter
per provinciam temptaturos et cum exercitu populī Romanī
10 armīs congressuros. § 153

Ūnos ex omnibus Casticum et Dumnorīgem nihil earum
rĕrum dicere, quās reliquī dicerent, sed tacitōs permanĕre
et nihil eīs rebus commoverī. § 137 c

His nuntiīs acceptīs Ariovistus nihil sibi timendum putavit
15 ac satis habebat in praesentia domī remanere et, quid
Caesar faceret, exspectare. Dumnorīgī autem et Castico
custodes ponere instituit. Eius reī causa quosdam e suis
in Sequanos et in Aeduos mittit speculatores, quī negotiatum
et mercatum venīre viderentur. § 157 b

20 His negotium dat, utī quae agant et quibuscum loquantur
cognoscant seque de hīs rebus certiozem faciant. Nam
societatis reminiscebatur, quam biennio ante cum illīs
Orgetorix fēcerat, et memoriā tenēbat Dumnorīgem filiam
Orgetorigis in matrimonium duxisse. § 107 b

commotion = *disturbance*
desperation = *hopelessness*
facility = *easiness, ease*

confine = *keep in boundaries*
patient = *allowing, suffering*
taciturnity = *silence, stillness*

in praesentia for the present
negotiāt-um to do business

recusāre give back reasons . . .
quō minus why not, refuse to

Dum haec in Sequanīs geruntur, Helvetiī non sibi expectandum statuunt, quā domō proficiscantur. Trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Reliquum omne frūmentum combūrunt. Oppida incendunt, ut domum reditionis spem tollerent. Qua sublata, sese paratiores ad omnia perīcula subeunda fore sperant. § 106 d

Helvetiī iter per Sequanos timebant. Per provinciam iter temptare malunt. Sibi Rhodanum esse transeundum constituunt. (Eīs enim in animo erat Allobrogibus vel persuadere vel vī cogere, ut per finis suos eos ire pate-10 rentur.) Diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodanī omnes conveniant. Is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pīnone, Aulo Gabīnio consulibus. § 151 b

Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam iter facere conari, matūrat ab urbe Roma proficisci, et quam 15 maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Rhodanum pervenit. Tōti provinciae milites imperat. Pontem, quī in Rhodano erat, rescindit. §§ 5 f, 148 g

Cuius adventu cognito, ad eum Helvetiī mittunt, quī dicerent: sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per 20 provinciam facere; rogare, ut id sibi facere liceat. § 229

Caesar concedendum non putabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites convenirent, legatis respondit: diem se ad deliberandum sūmptūrum; si quid vel-
lent, ad Idus Aprilis reverterentur. § 147 d 25

imperative = *demanding*
inter-cede = *come-between*.

male-factor = *evil-doer*
re-scind = *cut away or down*

com-b-urere burn up § 220, 4
dicere say, set geri be done

tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātus
take away, remove, lift

Interea ripam Rhodani vallo fossaque munivit. Hoc opere perfecto, praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius si se invito transire conentur prohibere possit; et, ubi legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare, et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. §§ 80, 96, 148 f

Qua spe deiecti Helvetii, si vadis Rhodani perrumpere possent, conantur. Operis munitione repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt. Legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt. 10 Is a Sequanis impetrat, ut per finis suos eos ire patiantur.

Interea Caesar munitionibus Titum Labienum legatum praefecit. Ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit et tris, quae in Italia hiabant, ex hibernis educit et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpīs erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi pulsīs barbaris, qui itinere exercitum prohibere conabantur, in ulteriorem provinciam die septimō pervenit. § 63 a

Helvetii iam per angustias et finis Sequanorum copias suas traduxerant et in Aeduorum finis pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Haec eodem tempore Caesarī referēbantur et lēgātī ab Allobrogibus et ab Aeduīs veniēbant; Allobroges nuntiatum sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī; Aeduī auxilium rogatum et questum, quod

de-jected = *dis-ap-pointed*, refer = *relate* = *report* =
down-cast, dis-hearted *bring back* (word or news)

munire, com-munire *fortify*
 per-rumpere *break through*
 prae-ficere *put in charge*

quest-um (§ 157) *to complain*
 quō = *ut eo that by this means*
 trādux-erant *had led over*

Helvetiī eorum finis popularentur: ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitūs Romani agrī vastari, liberī in servitutem abdūci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. §§ 130, 149

Quibus rebus adductus Caesar maturandum sibi statuit; et Aeduīs frūmentum exercituī pollicentibus, magnīs itineribus hostis sequitur. Helvetiī trīs iam partis copiarum flūmen Ararim traduxerant. Caesar subito ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantis aggressus magnam partem eorum concidit; reliquī sese fugae mandaverunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurīnus. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. §§ 98 i, 156

Hoc proelio facto, pontem in Ararī faciendum curat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commotī, legatos ad eum mittunt, cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, quī bello Cassiano dux Helvetiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiīs faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros, ubi Caesar eōs esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum; nē ipsōs dēspiceret; sē virtute contendere quam dolo nīti malle. §§ 107 b, 143

ag-gressor = *at-tacker* § 220, 2

casually = *by chance* or *luck*

insolvent = *not paying* § 220, 7

merited = *were deserving*

opinion = *way of thinking*

peninsula = *almost an island*

incommodum -ī *defeat, disaster*

mandāre *bid, entrust, give up*

nīti rely nōn-dum *not yet*

repente or subitō *suddenly*

His Caesar, quae visum est, respondit, sed exitus fuit orationis: si obsides ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Aeduīs de iniuriis, quas eis intulerint, item si aliis satisfaciant, sese cum eis pacem
5 esse factūrum. §§ 143, 148 g

Divico respondit: Helvetios obsides accipere, non dare, consuesse. Hoc responso dato discessit.

Posterō die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem praemittit, quī videant quas in
10 partis hostes iter faciant. Suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis prohibere. Ita dies circiter quīndecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et Rōmānōrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut senis milibus passuum interesset. § 115, p. 28

15 His omnibus diebus Caesar frumentum flumine Ararī navibus subvexerat. Id cum animadvertissent Helvetiī, iter ab Ararī averterunt, si forte Caesarem a flumine abdūcerent et frūmentō commēātūque interclūderent.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent
20 polliciti, flagitare. Nam frumenta in agris matūra non erant. Diem ex die dūcere Aeduī; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. § 134 b

avert = *turn away, turn aside*

contain = *withhold, hold in*

exclude = *shut out, cut off*

commeātus *supplies*

forte *perchance* [§ 220, 7

inferre, intulī, illātus *bring*

upon, carry against, inflict

inter-cludere *shut off, cut off*

rapine = *plundering, robbery*

satisfactory = *doing enough*

secession = *withdrawal*

novissimus *newest, last (of)*

si abducerent (to see) *if they might draw (him) away*

sub-vex-er-a-t *had brought up*

visum est *seemed (good, right)*

Ubi se diūtius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus mētiri oportēret, convocātis Aeduōrum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his vergobreto Liscō, quī vitae necisque in suos habuit potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī frumentum posset, tam necessariō tempore ab iis non sublevetur. Multo gravius queritur, quod ab iis sit destitutus, quibus auxilio venīret. § 66

Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quī privātī plus 10 possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā ōrātiōne multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod debeant: Aeduos Helvetiis cupere debere; Romanos e finibus prōvinciae ēgredi incipere; neque quemquam dubitāre dēbere, quīn, sī Helvetios superaverint, Aeduīs libertatem 15 sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem Rōmānōrum cōnsilia hostibus enuntiari; hos a se coerceri non posse. §§ 119 b, 219, 4

Caesar hac oratione Liscī Dumnorīgem designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex 20 solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit. Reperit esse

quibus auxiliō venīret *for aid to whom he was coming* §§ 159 g, 225
privātī plus possint (though) *private citizens are more powerful*
neque dubitāre debere quīn *nor ought (anyone) to doubt, but-that*
sī superāverint, sint ēreptūrī *if they overcome, they will take away*
pluribus praesentibus *when too many were present* § 95 b

coercion = *restraint, checking*
counsel = *advice, plan* [§ 119 c
iactari *be aired* quem-quam

instance = *pressing on, urging*
querulous = *complaining*
tacu-er-a-t *had kept quiet*

vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Omnia Aeduorum vectigalia quotannis parvo pretio redimere; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptū
 5 semper alere et circum se habere; neminem domī contra eum quicquam audere; neque solum domī sed etiam apud proximas cīvitates largitēr posse; huius potentiae causa sororem et propinquas suas nuptum in alias cīvitates collocasse; ipsum ex Helvetiīs uxorem habere. Favere et cupere Helvetiīs
 10 propter eam affinitatem; odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta sit. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar satis esse causae arbitrabatur, qua re in eum animadverteret. § 72

His omnibus rebus ūnum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris
 15 sumum in populum Romanum studium cognoverat; nam, ne Dumnorigis supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiācum ad se vocari iubet. Per interpretem cum eo colloquitur. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse
 20 de Dumnorige statuatur, vel cīvitatem statuere iubeat.

Divitiacus Caesarem obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se, illa esse vera; nec quemquam plus quam se doloris capere. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgī commoveri. Quod si quid
 25 ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. §§ 115 c, 119 b

anim-ad-version = *turning*
mind to, attending to

grace = *favor largess = bribery*
sumptuously = *expensively*

ob-secrare *be-seech, beg*

res novae *revolt* **vectigal** *tax*

Haec cum pluribus verbis a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit. Rogat, finem ōrandi faciat. Tanti eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, ut iniurias condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat. Fratrem adhibet. Quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit. Quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit. Monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnis suspiciōnēs vitet. Iniuriās praeteritās Divitiācō frātri se condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur scire possit. Postero die Caesar, quo consuerat intervallo, hostis sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit. §§ 61, 73 a

Postridie eius diei, quod omnino biduum supererat cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit. Iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte, oppidum Aeduorum longe maximum et copiosissimum, ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, quod Romanos timore perterritos existimabant, a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

Caesar copias suas in proximum collem subducit equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum. In summo colle duas legiones novas et omnia auxilia collocavit. Impedimenta in unum locum

apprehend = *seize upon*

condone = *forgive*

orator = *pleader*

admonition = *a warning, advice*

ad-hibere have present § 220, 2

consuerat was accustomed § 225

colle medio halfway up the hill

ostentatious = *showy* § 220, 9

praeterit = *bygone*

science = *knowledge*

inevitable = *unavoidable*

lacessere harass, annoy

a novissimo on the rear (of)

super-esse be (left) over § 220, 15

conferri et eum muniri iussit. Helvetii impedimenta sua in unum locum contulerunt. Ipsi phalange facta sub primam aciem Romanorum successerunt.

Caesar primum suum, deinde suorum equos ex conspectu sustulit, ut spem fugae tolleret. Quibus sublatis, suos cohortatus proelium commisit. Romani e loco superiore pila misere. His phalangem facile perfregerunt, quod plura hostium scuta pilis transfixa et colligata sunt, ut multi scutum manu emitterent et nudo corpore pugnarent.

10 Tandem vulneribus confecti et pedem referebant et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipiebant. Capti monte et succedentibus Romanis, Helvetii rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. § 130

Ita acipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Nam 15 hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima usque ad noctem pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Diutius cum sustinere Romanorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Ad multam noctem etiam ad 20 impedimenta pugnatum est. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque Romani potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. § 106 c

phalange facta with a phalanx formed, after forming a phalanx
proelium commisit let the battle go together, joined battle

fragile = breakable

ancipital = two headed, double

escutcheon = ornamental shield

succeed = come up, get up (to)

colligata bound together § 220, 4

con-ferre, con-tuli, col-latus
 bring together, collect, put off

sub-esse be near

tollere, sus-tuli, sub-latus lift,
 take away, remove § 220, 14

· Ex eo proelio circiter milia hominum cxxx. (centum trigintā) superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continentur iērunt. Caesar litteras nuntiosque ad reliquos Gallos mīsit, ne eos frumento neve alia re iuvarent. Helvetiī omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad eum mīserunt. 5 Quī cum eum in itinere venissent, sese Caesari ad pedes prōiēcērunt et flentēs pācem petiērunt. Obsidēs, arma, servos, quī ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. His traditis eos in deditionem accepit. § 115 c

Helvetios in finis suos reverti iussit. Allobrogibus im- 10 perāvit, uti eis frūmentī cōpiam facerent. Ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Boiōs petentibus Aeduīs ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit. § 97

Dum haec in Aeduīs geruntur, Arminius inter spein atque metum dubius erat. Dominam et Velaedam amābat. Ari- 15 ovistum oderat. Res Sequanorum miserabatur. Amico Litavico et Aeduīs cupiebat. Suebos autem trans Rhenum in armis esse et Ubiis bellum inferre intellegebat. His praeesse patrem Nasuam et Cimerium patruum audiēbat. Saepe ardebat effugere seque ad patrem Suebosque conferre. 20

Eodem tempore multa Ariovisto erant cūrae. Galli finis latissimos feracissimosque agros possidebant. Trans Rhenum autem conferti Germani sibi ipsi impedimentō erant.

adjutant = *helper, assistant*
se cōferre *betake himself*
conferti *crowded*
dē-ditiō *giving up, surrender*
facere(i) *make up, give*
flere *weep* metus *fear, dread*
obses, obsidis *hostage*

restitution = *rebuilding*
per-fugere(i) *flee over* § 220, 10
poscere, poposci *demand, ask*
prae-esse *be in command (of)*
quī = et ei *and (when) they*
prō-icere(i) *throw forward*
trā-dere *hand over, deliver*

Hī paulatim consuescebant Rhenum transire et in Galliam venire optimosque agros occupare. Id Galli moleste ferebant neque Germanos diutius in Gallia versari volebant.

His rebus adductus huc illuc animo ferebatur. Primo
 5 gaudere coepit, quod Aeduīs causa inimicitiae cum Helvetiīs intercederet, quod veteres inimicī Helvetiī cum Romanis essent armīs congressī. Eī autem gratum fuit, quod Aeduus Dumnorix Caesari in suspicionem venisset. Postea autem cum Helvetios proelio pulsos in Lingonas fugere, Caesarem
 10 insequi audiret, ancipiti sententia commovebatur. § 147 g

Dum dubitat, quid faciendum sit, speculatores, quos in Aeduos Sequanosque ab eo missos supra diximus, ad eum reverterunt: Bello Helvetiorum confecto, Caesarem in provinciam non reverti exercitumque eius in Lingonibus esse.
 15 Principes autem totius Galliae Celticae ad eum gratulatum venisse; hos petiisse, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicare liceret, quod habuerint quasdam res, quas a Caesare petere voluissent; quod concilium permis-
 20 sum et paucis post diebus Bibracte convocatum esset; neque abesse suspensionem, quin contra Germanos coniurarent.

His rebus commotus Ariovistus maturat nuntios in omnis partis dimittere. Iubet manus cogi, in armīs exerceri, exercitum in Tribocos conduci, ut, si quo opus esset ad bellum educi posset; nam qua de causa Caesar exercitum suum

Aeduīs . . . intercederet *there happened (to be) a reason of hostility for the Aeduans; they happened to have reason for hostility*
in diem . . . indicare *arrange (set) for a certain day* § 221 b
si quo opus esset *if there should be need of any* § 71 c

congressi essent *had met*

manus *bands, hands*

in Lingonibus teneret, nondum perspexerat; et cuius absentis amicitiam antea nixus erat, eius praesentis imperium magnopere verebatur. § 70-3

Eodem tempore, quod paratiores ad bellum erant, principes Harudum ad se vocat. Quos maxime cohortatus docet, 5 quanto opere communis salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Harudes in finis Aeduorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His datis mandatis, eos a se dimittit. 10

Dum haec in Tribocis geruntur, legati a Caesare ad Ariovistum missi sunt, qui dicerent: Haec sibi ad Ariovistum esse data mandata; ne quos Germanos amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; obsides Aeduis redderet. Si id ita fecisset, Caesaris populoque Romano perpetuam 15 amicitiam cum eo esse futuram; sin obsides retinere et bello persequi perseveraret, Aeduorum iniurias Caesarem non esse neglecturum. §§ 143, 225

Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse belli, ut qui vicissent, eis, quos vicissent, imperarent; Aeduos belli fortunam 20 temptasse ac superatos esse; si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quem ad modum suo iure uteretur, non oportere se a Caesare in suo iure impediri. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret, se Aeduorum iniurias non esse neglecturum, neminem 25

cuius absentis *on whose (friendship . . . when he was) absent*
eius praesentis imperium *his power (he feared when) present* § 94
 (Direct Statement.) **Obsides redde** *give back the hostages* § 143

uñti, nixus *rely, depend*

dis-tinēri

See § 220, 5

secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum Caesar vellet, congregaretur; intellecturum, quid Germani virtute possent. Hoc responsō dato, legatōs ad Caesarem remittit.

Paucis post diebus nuntiū Roma missi ad Ariovistum
 5 vērunt: Iniussū senātus Caesarem ē finibus prōvinciae
 ēgressum; Gallōs sibi conciliāre cōnārī; iam apud eōs
 plurimum posse, et huius potentiae causa inimicos regis
 atque amīci populi Romanī defendere; haec omnia contra
 senātus voluntātem facere; Rōmae Caesarem rei pūblīcae
 10 hostem aestimārī; Catōnem, Lentulum, Mārcellum aliōsque
 summōs populi Rōmānī virōs Caesaris potentiam verērī;
 magnō opere rei pūblīcae commūnisque salūtis interesse
 eum aut capī aut interficī; Romanis tamen id facere non
 licere. Quod si Ariovistus fecerit, multis nobilibus prin-
 15 cipibusque populi Romanī gratum esse factūrum, quorum
 omnium amicitiam Caesaris morte redimere posset. § 73 c

His Ariovistus ita respondit: Sibi esse in animo Caesarem
 in colloquium venīre invitare; quem, si posset, vel capturum
 vel interfecturum; si minus potuisset, facturum, uti intel-
 20 geret, quid Germani in bello possent. §§ 70-1

His rebus cōstitutis, Ariovistus castra movit et ad
 occupandum Vesontionem, quod erat longe maximum et
 munitissimum oppidum Sequanorum, contendit. Cum sep-
 tem dierum viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei, Sequanos

Cum vellet, congregaretur *when he wished, he should come on*
 interesse eum . . . capī *it was the interest (of the state) that he*
be (either) captured (or killed) §§ 66, 73 c, 143, 151

estimate = *reckon, rate* § 73 pernicious = *ruinous, destructive*
 grātum *favor* minus *not so* quod si *but if* quorum *and their*

Rōmānīs frūmentum sumministrāre et Caesarem magnis itineribus accessisse et Vesontiōnem iam occupāsse.

Quibus rebus vehementer commotus Ariovistus cum omnibus copiis in Tribocos sese recepit nuntiōsque ad Nasuam et Cimerium misit, quī ab eis postularent, utī quam celer-5 rime possent, Rhenum transirent sibi que centum pagos Sueborum auxiliō adducerent aut, sī minus potuissent, quam plurimos possent sibi subsidio summitterent. § 90

Interea paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae causa moratus Caesar castra movit et in Tribocos profectus 10 est. Ariovisto cum id nuntiatum esset, Caesarem ad se venire neque iam longe abesse, legatōs ad eum misit: Quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id iam fieri posse, quoniam propius accessisset; diem colloquiō diceret; ne quem peditem adduceret; uterque cum equitatu veniret. §§ 113, 158 c 15

Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio a castris utriusque aberat. Eo ad colloquium venerunt. Caesar equis devexit legiōnem, quam ducentis passibus ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equites Ariovisti parī intervallō constiterunt. Ario-20 vistus ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos uti ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. § 147 e

Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit. Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat; ne Aeduīs bellum inferret; 25 obsidēs redderet; nē quōs Germānōs amplius Rhēnum transire pateretur. § 143

postulant = one who asks
subsidiary = giving support

vehemently = mightily
vehicle = carriage, carrier

Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē non sua sponte sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis: sedis habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos. Non sese Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. Amicitiam populi Romanī sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere; alia ratione non minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetierit atque Caesarem nōn prō amīcō sed hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romanī gratum esse facturum. § 115 b

Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, equites Ariovistī propius tunulum accedere et ad Caesarianos adequitare, lapides telaque in eos conicere. Quo facto, Caesar loquendī finem fecit seque ad suōs recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum reicerent. Eo facto, Ariovistus intellexit armis sibi esse cum Romanis congrediendum. Statuit autem Suebos expectandos, Romanos frumento prohibendos. §§ 113, 134 b

Trīduo post Ariovistus castra prōmōvit et praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit atque milibus passuum duōbus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, utī frumento com meatūque Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quīnque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et Ariovisto pugnandi potestatem fecit. §§ 58, 103, 226

potestatem fecit *made, arranged, or gave an opportunity (to fight)*

lapidary = *polisher of stones*

predication = *declaration*

ad-equitare *ride at, dash at*

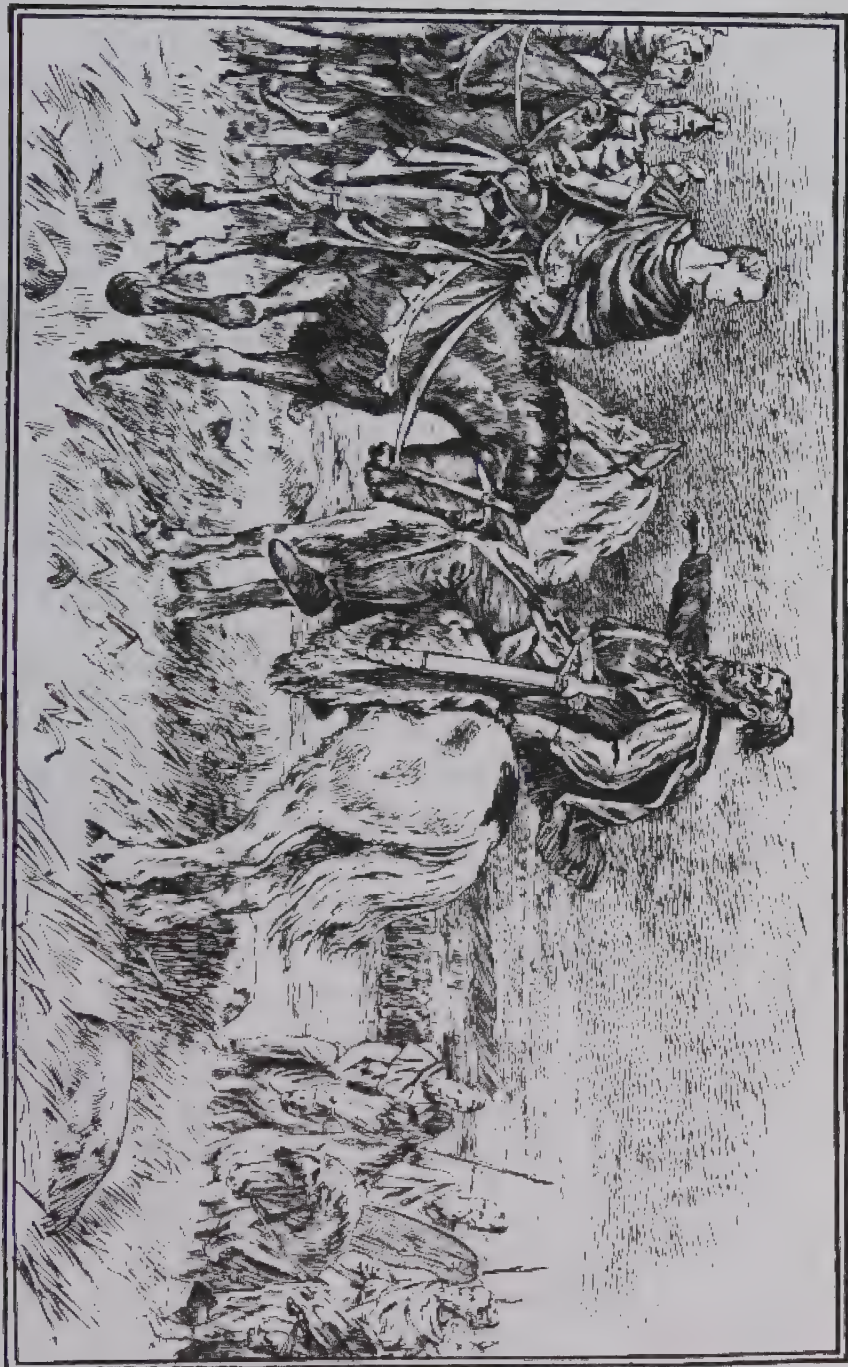
prō-duxit *led forth* § 220, 12

alia ratiōne *otherwise, else*

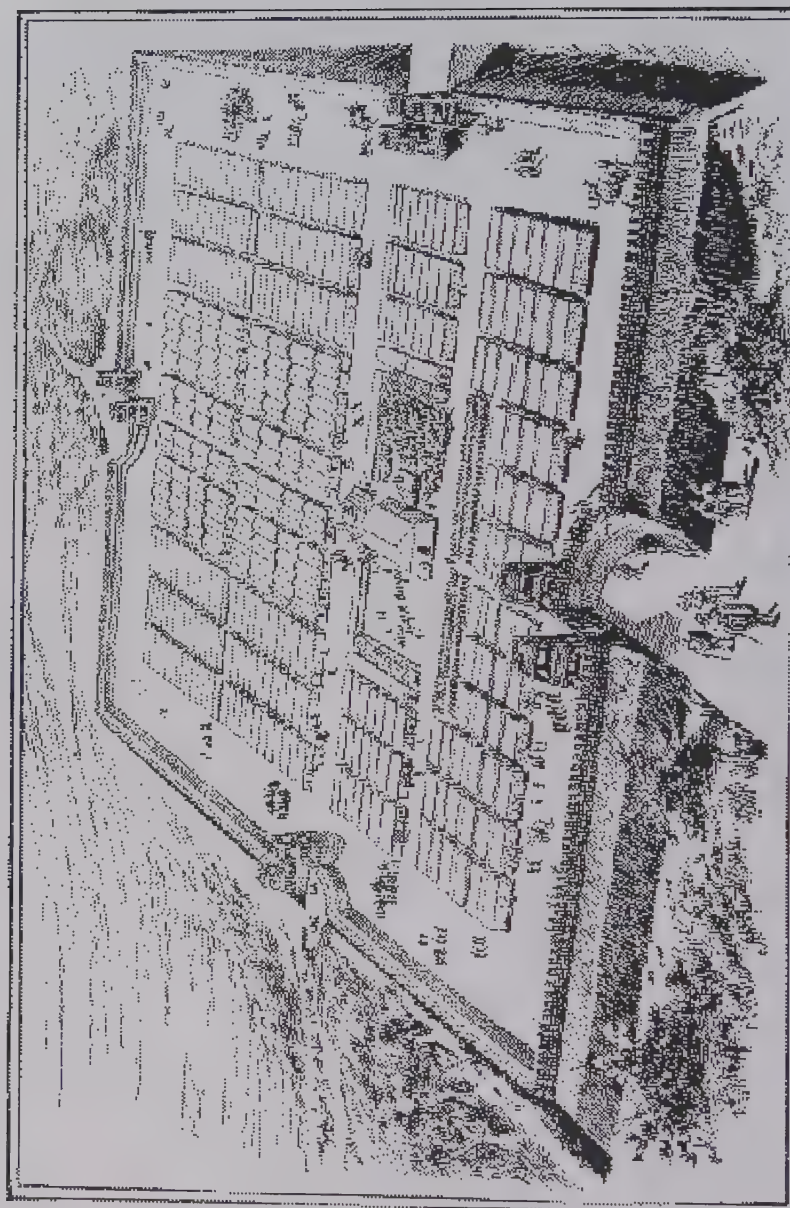
prō-movere *move forward*

arcessitum (because) *sent for*

praeter by re-icere *hurl back*



CAESAR'S INTERVIEW WITH AROVISTUS



Ariovistus his omnibus diebus suos castris continuit, quod matresfamilias sortibus declarabant, non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent. Quod ubi Caesar compertum habuit, triplici acie instructa usque ad castra Ariovisti accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani copias suas eduxere generatimque constituerunt, Harudes, Marcomannos, Tribocos, Vangiones, Nementes, Sedusios, Suebos. Omnem aciem suam raedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae passis manibus flentes implorabant in proelium proficiscentis, ne se in servitatem Romanis traderent. Arminius viros secutus est et in conspectu Noricae et Velaedae pro carris versabatur.

Caesar proeli committendi signum dedit. Romani acriter impetum fecere. Germani celeriter proucurrere. Spatium pila coniciendi datum non est. Reiectis pilis, gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter phalange facta scutis impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. Sed complures Romani in phalangem insiliebant et scuta manibus revellebant hostisque desuper vulnerabant.

20

Quo facto omnes Germani terga vertere coacti sunt neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci

proficiscentis (them as they were) *starting out* (for battle)
spatium pila coniciendi *time to throw javelins* (was not given)

de-super from above

eō on them *fās* right, fate

in-silire leap up on

in-struere draw up (in order)

passae manus outstretched hands

raeda wagon

proucurrere run

re-vellere pull back, tear away

sors, sortis lot

superare win

aut navīs nactī transiere aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt. In his fuit Ariovistus. Qui naviculam nactus eā profūgit. Reliquōs omnīs cōsecūtī equitēs Rōmānī interfecerunt. § 100

5 Et Norica et Sueba regis coniūnx in ea fuga perierunt. Infans filia Noricae periit. Famulī plerīque ab equitibus Rōmānīs concīduntur. Arminius Velaedae manum prēndit eamque secum ex agmine traxit. Quos paulo post eques Romanus ferro petit. Sed P. Crassus adulescens, quī tum
10 equitātū praeerat, equitem dēterret, nē eōs cōficeret. Tum eos in equum imponit secumque retinet. Sub occasum solis Crassus suos in castra reduxit. § 60

Cum ad castra acceditur, porta decumana patet. Praesidia cedunt. Equites cum captivīs intromittuntur. Viam
15 praetōriam sequuntur. Arminius videt utrimque tabernacula equitum Romanorum et stabula equorum. Post haec ab utraque parte tabernacula peditum longīs ōrdinibus recedunt. Ōrdinem ac disciplinam undique mīrātur. Praetorium in castrīs fere mediīs est. Huc contendit Crassus.
20 Imperatōrem in praetorio petiit; Arminium enim et Velaedam sibi servos retinere volebat. Ad Caesarem adit. Rogat ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar ex captivīs quī sint quaerit. Illi nihil intellegere et taciti permanere. Tandem misera Velaeda se ex primo
25 terrōre ac fuga recipere coepit. Ab ignoto Romano abhorret. Familiārī Suēbō haeret. Neque vultum fingere

agmen rout

ferrum iron

navicula little boat

cōfisi relying

nactus finding

vires strength

nāre swim

utrimque § 119 f

via. See p. 142

neque iam lacrimās tenēre poterat. Arminī amplexū haesit atque flens eī collo pependit. § 134 b

Tum per interpretem comperit Caesar puellam barbaram Ariovisti regis filiam esse, matrem et infāntem sororem in fuga amīsisse, alteram quoque regis coniugem Noricam 5 perisse, huic Arminium fuisse servum. Quibus cognitis rebus, proconsul vix ipse lacrimas continuit; namque in miseros ac supplicis semper misericors et mansuetus erat.

Itaque constituit Velaedam diligentissime obsidis loco servandam eīque Arminium servum cūstōdemque tribuen- 10 dum. P. Crasso custodiendos tradidit. Huic adulescentī Caesar et indulgebat praecipue propter patris in se beneficia et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

Multos dies puerī miseram apud Crassum agebant vitam. Omnia verebantur. Quid de se fieret, ignorabant. Abditī 15 in tabernaculo crudelia fata suorum miserabantur. Fatum suum secum querebantur. § 64

Interim Caesar propter vulnera militum et propter sepul- turam occisorum trīdium moratus castra movit, et quieta Gallia, matūrius paulo, quam annī tempus postulabat, in 20 hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit. Ibi milites silvas caedere maurant. Casas hibernas pro tabernaculis aedi- fīcant. Castra hiberna vāllō fossāque mūniunt. Frūmen- tum eō comportant. Pābuli magnam cōpiam cōferunt at- que in hiemem servant. Quietem capere statuunt. 25

Saepe per hiemem parva Velaeda flebat et misera matrem quaerebat. Puer autem eam consolabatur animumque verbis

caedere *cut*

cōfirmāre *comfort*

miserārī *bemoan*

occisī *the killed*

confirmabat. Timorem mittere ac bene sperare iubet, illud saepe dictans, quod elegantius postea Vergilius: §§ 154, 222

“ Forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvābit.”

Primo autem vere tempestas calescebat. Omnia longo
5 rigōre hiemis solvuntur. Inita aestate copia pabulī esse incipiebat. Ex Italia Caesar ad exercitum reverti contendit. Romanī castra movere. In Belgas profecti sunt. Tum
vērō Arminius disciplinam Rōmānam mirābātur. Illi enim longe alia ratione ac barbari bellum gerebant. Cf. § 69 “ac”
10 Rem frumentariam diligentissime provident. Cotidie sub vesperum consistunt. Castris idoneum locum deligunt.

Semper locum ex planitie editum petunt. Castra vallo fossaque muniunt, ne quī hostis noctu accedens adoriatur. Omnes operi munitionis instant. Nemini nisi munitis cas-
15 tris discedere licet. Cotidiana exercitatio viris militum alit eosque paratiōres facit ad omnis labores subeundos. Semper, post se quae sunt, tuentur atque tuta ab hostibus reddunt. Frumentum commeatusque ut sine periculo ad se supportari possint, efficiunt. Prudentiā et cōsilio quam
20 vi hostis superare malunt. §§ 130, 137

Extrema aestate, dispersis ac fere superatis Belgis, Caesar Publium Crassum cum una legione misit ad Venetos, Venellos, Osismos, Esubiōs, Aulercos, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt. His omnibus civitatibus
25 in dicionem potestatemque populi Romanī redactis, obsidibus datis et pace facta, in Andes legionem in hiberna deduxit. Tum vero faciendum non existimabat, uti Velaedam semper

forsan perhaps	idōneus suitable	mittere let go	ōlim one day
iuvat delights	meminisse recall	sistere halt	solvere release

in castris aut in itinere teneret, et quod constabat paucis mensibus patrem M. Crassum esse Lucam ad Caesarem venturum, eō Suebos obsides cum Caesare mittit. § 61 b

Ibi primum vidērunt concursum et divitiās Rōmānōrum. Eo enim Cn. Pompeius et M. Licinius Crassus venerunt. 5 Eo alii summī rei publicae viri multī et nonnullae matronae Romanae convenerunt ad Caesarem gratulatum, quod tantas res armis gessisset. Ibi inter Caesarianos convenit Pompeium et Crassum proximo annō consulatum esse petīturos ac per eōrum auctoritatem alterum quīnquennium Caesarem 10 Galliam provinciam obtenturum. Cf. § 67

Acto concilio Suebī obsides magnam in spem veniebant clārissimae pulcherrimaeque urbis videndae. Libenter eō proficiscuntur. Sed paucis diebus, quibus in M. Crassi domum perventum est, patrias silvas desiderabant. § 62 g 15

Biennio post Velaeda flavo capillō, oculis caeruleis, forma pulcherrima quīntum decimum iam annum agens omnibus admiratiōni fuit. Quam L. Paulus iunior, de quo supra dictum est, apud Crassum videns adamavit atque in matrimonium ducere volebat. Petenti autem ita respōsum est : 20 Suebam virginem Rōmānō numquam nubere posse. § 97

Eodem anno P. Crassus ex Gallia a patre revocatus Romam venit. Quem obsides libentissime excipiunt, quod antea pro

aliment = *nourishment, feeding* **tangent** = *touching* § 219, 3

concourse = *gathering* **contingent** = *touching*

efficient = *bringing about* **tutor** = *protector, guardian*

omnibus admiratiōni (for admiration to all) *the admiration of all*

ad-amare *take a liking to* **nubere** *wear veil, marry*

actus over flavō (See p. 30) **patrius native** **virgo girl**

tutore habuerant. Iterum cum eo ire volunt. Ille autem cum patre ad Parthos profecturus secum ducere nōn potest. Ea spe deiecti rogant, se ad exercitum remittat. Itaque eōs Publius custodiendōs tradit amico Q. Ciceroni, quī
 5 legatus in Gallia militabat; illi cum legionibus tribus ex Italia proficiscentibus ad exercitum perveniunt. §§ 96, 102

Dum iuvenes Romae apud M. Crassum habitant, quadriennio intermisso omni Gallia pacata, Caesar navibus Britanniam bis adierat et primum ponte facto exercitum Romanum
 10 trans Rhenum in Germaniam traduxerat.

Hoc anno complures Galliae civitates a populo Romano deficere et contra Caesarem coniurare coepere ac Treveri finitimos Germanos sollicitabant. His autem a Labienō pulsīs, Suebī, quī auxilio veniebant domum sese recepere.
 15 Cum his quidam Treverorum ex civitate excesserunt, et, quod constabat iterum Caesarem exercitum Rhenum traduciturum, Arminius quendam Gallum profugum mittit, quī patri Nasuae denuntiaret: Sese iam vivere; obsidis loco in exercitu Caesaris teneri itemque regis Ariovisti filiam. Monere,
 20 ne Suebī proelium umquam cum Romanis committerent, nisi in locum iniquum aut in silvas induci possent.

Ponte facto atque exercitu trāducto fit ab Ubiis certior Caesar Suebos ad extremos suos finis se recepisse atque ibi in silvis adventum Rōmanōrum exspectare. Ita inopiam
 25 frumentī veritus, quod homines Germani minime agri culturāe studēbant, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius. Sed

excessive = *going out or beyond*

iniquity = *unfairness*

prefect = *one put in charge*

survive = *live over or through*

metus *fear, dread, anxiety* § 107

veritus (because he) *feared*

nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, reductō exercitu partem ultimam pontis in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causa ponit. Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis prīncipis Eburōnum profectus 5 est ; quī copias suas non conduxit sed missis per agrōs nuntiis sibi quemque cōsultare iussit. Quōrum magna pars in Arduennam silvam profūgit.

Tum copiīs suīs in trīs partis distributīs impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen 10 est. Hoc fere est in mediīs Eburōnum finibus. Praesidio impedimentīs legiōnem quārtam decimam reliquit. Eī legiōnī castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praeficit ducentōsque equites eī attribuit. §§ 100 e, 220, 12

Partitō exercitu T. Labienum cum legiōnibus tribus ad 15 Ōceanum versus proficisci iubet ; C. Trebonium cum parī legionum numero ad agrum Eburonum depopulandum mittit ; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flumen Scaldem extremasque Arduennae silvae partis ire constituit. Discedens post diem septimam sese reversurum confirmat. § 119 b 20

Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar. Omnis evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit. §§ 40, 154

Dies iam appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad im- 25 pedimenta legionemque reverti cōstituerat. Trans Rhenum

famous = *talked of, reported*

disparity = *inequality*

ap-petere *be at hand, seek for*
diripere *rob*

periclitāri *be risked* § 181 b
pecus *cattle*

ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque omnis ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno. Transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque. Primos Eburonum finis adeunt. Magno pecoris numero potiuntur. Invitati praeda longius procedunt. Non hos palus, non silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt. Profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis: "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc miseram sectamini praedam, quibus licet esse fortunatissimos? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis. Huc omnis suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit. Praesidi tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat." Oblata spe Germani Aduatucam contendunt. § 149

15 Cicero omnis superiores dies milites in castris continuerat ac ne calonem quidem egredi passus erat. Septimo die diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod nulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, nullum casum exspectans, quinque cohortis frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis iumentorum sequitur. Arminius et Velaeda data facultate ex castris egrediendi longe sequuntur. §§ 149 b, g, 221 b

Hoc ipso tempore Germani equites interveniunt protinus-
25 que ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur, nec

ap-propinquare come close to

aegre hardly **calo** camp servant

ir-rumpere break into § 220, 7

protinus straight on, straightway

secta-mini you are seeking

seges grainfield

vis drove

usque eo so far (that)

prius visi sunt, quam castris appropinquarent usque eo, uti puer et puella, qui in silvis lente errarent, sui recipiendi facultatem non haberent, seque fugae mandarint atque in silvas abdiderint. Re nova perturbantur inopinantes Romani. Nemo tam fortis est, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Cir- 5 cumfunduntur hostes, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas tuentur Romani; reliquos aditus locus ipse munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris. Alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit. Alius castra iam capta pronuntiat, alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores 10 barbaros venisse contendit. §§ 94-6

Interim confecta frumentatione milites Romani clamorem exaudiunt. Praecurrunt equites; quanto res sit in periculo cognoscunt. Reliquos arcessunt. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt. Redisse legionem cre- 15 dunt. Interea cuneo facto Romani inter se cohortati duce C. Trebonio per medios hostis perrumpunt. Ita militum pars praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit. § 221 b

Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod milites 20 Romanos iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, sese

indelible = *not to be destroyed*
dif-fident = *dis-trustful*
casually = *accidentally*
erratic = *likely to wander*

novelty = *newness, strangeness*
relent = *slow up, slacken*
pronunciation = *speaking out*
intrepid = *unfearing, fearless*

abdere *hide* ad-itus *ap-proach*
conspicati *having spied* § 100
e-ripere(i) *snatch out, rescue*
ex-audire *over-hear, hear*

in-columnis *un-harmed, safe*
in-opinans *un-suspecting*
prae-currere *run ahead* § 220
sign-a (military) *standard-s*

recipere coepērunt. Quōs Arminius ē latebrīs ēgressus adiit hortatusque est utī data facultate regis Ariovistī filiam e manibus Romanorum eriperent. Ea re impetrata, Arminius et Valaeda amīce a Sugambrīs suscepti cum eīs trans
 5 Rhenum in Germaniam sese receperunt. Paucis post diebus cum equitatu Sugambrōrum iuvenes in Sueborum finis ad suos pervenerunt.

Bienniō post Ariovistus, quem a Caesare superatum supra demonstravimus, filiam Velaedam Arminio in matrimonium
 10 dedit. Germani autem nomen Caesaris et opes Romanorum ita verebantur, utī satis haberent patrias silvas a populo Rōmānō dēfendere atque annis quadringentis vix Rhēnum trānsire audērent.

credence = *believing, trust*

cuneiform = *wedge-shaped*

hostile = *inimical, of enemy*

latent = *hiding, lurking*

opulent = *having resources*

susceptible = *capable of taking*

APPENDIX

SOUNDS

21. Latin letters are always sounded as indicated below by the English words printed under them.¹

VOWELS

a	ā	e	ē	i	ī
pars (<i>side</i>)	pār (<i>equal</i>)	vel (<i>or</i>)	pēs (<i>foot</i>)	sit (<i>be</i>)	sīc (<i>so</i>)
parse	par	well	pace	sit	seek
o	ō	u	u	y	ȳ
cor (<i>heart</i>)	nōn (<i>not</i>)	vul'-tu (<i>face</i>)	Pyr'-rho ²	Cy'-ro ²	
core	known	wool'too	peer'roe	key'roe	

DIPHTHONGS

ae	au	ei	eu	oe	ui
aes (<i>money</i>)	laus (<i>praise</i>)	hei (<i>alas</i>)	seu (<i>or</i>)	coe'-pit	hui (<i>ho!</i>)
ice	louse	hey	say'oo	coy'pit	whee

CONSONANTS

22. Double consonants are sounded separately

buc'-cam (<i>mouth</i>)	ad'-dō (<i>add</i>)	il'-lī (<i>him</i>)	mis'-sī (<i>sent</i>)
book'calm	oad'aoe	in'Lee	miss'see
du'-cam (<i>lead</i>)	de'-do (<i>give up</i>)	ve-lis (<i>sails</i>)	mī'-sī (<i>I sent</i>)
do'calm	day'aoe	way'lease	me'see

23. The following require special attention

bs and bt like ps and pt	ob'-sto (<i>block</i>)	ob-ten'-tō (<i>held</i>)
	ope'stow	ope ten'toe
c and g always hard	cin'-get (<i>gird</i>)	con'-do (<i>build</i>)
	king'get	cone'doe

¹ Words illustrating the sounds of *short a* and *short o* should be uttered quickly.

² Pronounce *peer* and *key* with the lips rounded as for *ū*.

i-consonant ¹ or j	iū'-ra or jū'-ra ² you'rah	ma'-ior or ma'-jor ² ma'yore
n before c or qu as ng	cin-get (<i>gird</i>) king'get	in-quit (<i>says</i>) ing'quit
s always as in	rēs (<i>thing</i>) race	trēs (<i>three</i>) trace
si and ti always as in	vī-si-ō (<i>sight</i>) we'see oh	nā-ti-ō-nī (<i>tribe</i>) knotty oh knee
tu always as in	vir-tū-tī (<i>valor</i>) we're too'tea	fōr-tū-naē (<i>luck</i>) fore too'nigh
u (never as in union)	ū-nō (<i>one</i>) oo'no	o-cu-lis (<i>by eyes</i>) oh'coo lease
u in qu-, -ngu-; some- times in sua- and suē- as w	in-quit (<i>says</i>) ing'quit	suē-tae (<i>used</i>) sway'tie
v always as w		
x always as ks or cs	sa-xō (<i>written for sac-sō, with rock</i>) sock'so	vel-let (<i>would</i>) well'let
ch, ph, th practically ³ the same as c, p, t	pul-chrō (<i>pretty</i>) pull'crow	the-ā-trō (<i>theatre</i>) tay ah'trow

24. Final -e is silent in English words of more than one syllable. There are *no silent letters in Latin*. It is not easy for beginners to get the correct pronunciation of the Latin short final -e. This will become much easier, if one forms the habit of pronouncing all Latin words with the tip of the tongue well down behind the lower front teeth. The tongue may be bent upward somewhat back of the tip, when necessary.

¹ The i is a consonant (sounded as y in *yet*) before a vowel at the beginning of a word or root syllable, as in *Iulia* (*Julia*), *iūra* (*rights*), and *iniūria* (*wrong*), or between two vowels within a word, as in *maior* (*greater*).

² In some works these words are written *Julia*, *jura*, *injūria*, and *major*.

³ Strictly as in *blockhouse*, *uphold*, and *knothole*.

25. It will be very helpful to pronounce the following words several times, then repeat them omitting the final *-t*,

bet	debt	get	let	met	net	pet	set	wet
be-	de-	ge-	le-	me-	ne-	pe-	se-	we-

taking pains to keep the quality of the *vowel* unchanged.

dē'-det	vel'-let	cin'-get	es'-set	a'-get
day'debt	well'let	king'get	ess'set	ah'get
dē-de	vel-le	cin-ge	es-se	a-ge
sē-de	mit-te	nōn-ne	ca-pe	e-me

26. We are utterly indifferent about the pronunciation of vowels before final *-r* in English words. Constant care must be exercised to sound all unstressed Latin vowels distinctly.

TO BE AVOIDED (as pronounced in English)

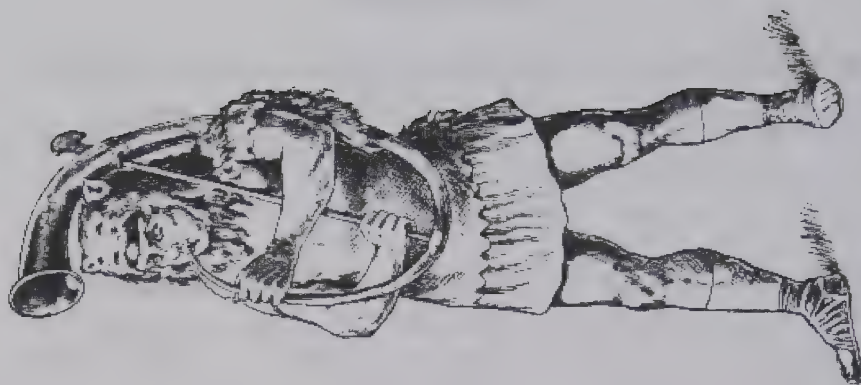
TO BE STRICTLY OBSERVED IN PRONOUNCING LATIN VOWELS BEFORE FINAL *r*

altar		vin'-car (be won)	ca'-pi-ar (be taken)
		wing'car	copy are
alter	her	ca'-pi-er ¹ (be taken)	nūn'-ti-er (be reported)
		copy ere	noon'tea ere
Kaffir	fir	fīr'-mae (solid)	vir (man)
		fear'my	we're
labor	for	fōr'-mae (shapes)	la'-bor (toil)
		fore'my	la'bore
sulphur	fur	dē'-mur (be given)	vul'-tur (vulture)
		day'moor	wool'tour
zephyr	myrrh	Pyr'-rhō (to Pyrrhus)	zep'-hy-rō ² (west wind)
		peer'roe	zeppy roe

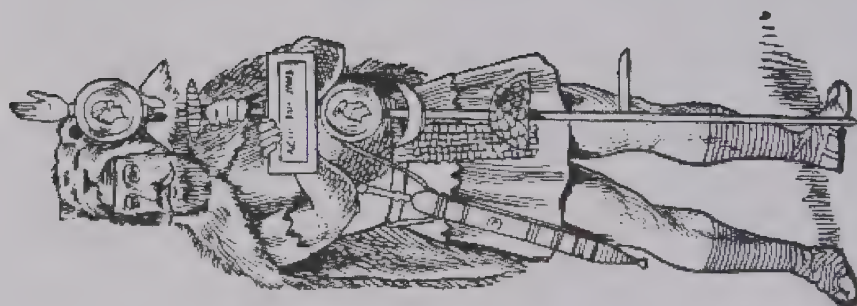
NOTE. — Be careful always to pronounce *-er* like the English word *ere* (*before*) in *erga* (*toward*), *tergum* (*back*), *alter* (*the other*), *inter* (*between*), *iter* (*journey*), *ter* (*thrice*), *per* (*through*), etc.

¹ An older form of the infinitive, *capī*.

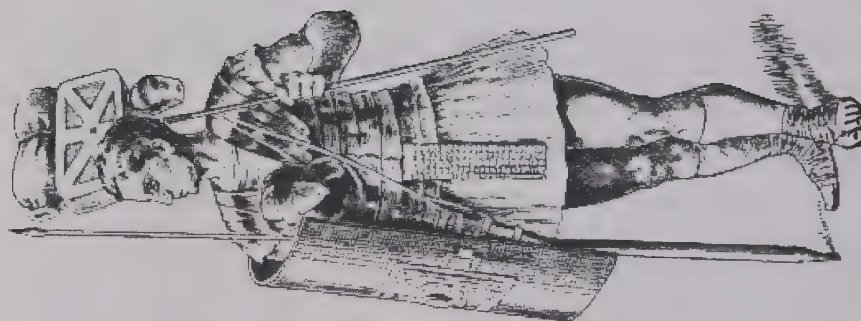
² To pronounce the Latin *y*, the lips should be rounded as for *u*. The Latin *r* is made farther back in the mouth than the English *r*.



BUCKINATOR



SIGNIFIER



MILES IMPEDITUS

27. Diphthongs are always long and do not have to be marked. The quantity of vowels must be learned in order to pronounce each syllable correctly. § 21

28. Vowels are always long in certain combinations and nearly always long in certain positions.

(a) A vowel is *lengthened* before **nf, ns, nx, nct**.¹

Final **u** is always long.

Final **o** is long except in **ego, duo, modo** (*only*), **cito**.

Final **i** is long except in **mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, nisi, quasi**.²

(b) A vowel is usually *shortened* before **h, nd, nt**, or *another vowel*.

A vowel is *shortened* before *final* **m** and **t**, and before *final* **l** and **r**, except in a few monosyllables, as **pār, sol**.

in + fāns	cingere	prō + habē	habeō	agāmus	vocēre
infāns	cīnxī	prohibē	habētur	agam	vocer
in + sto	cīnctus	habendī	habet	animalis	pār
insto	cīnctu	habent	habeam	animal	paris

The length or quantity of final **a** and **e**, and of all the vowels in many positions and various root syllables will be easily mastered with the vocabularies.

SYLLABLES

29. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. Lone consonants go with the vowels that follow them; as, **cae-di-tur**.

¹ See Latin Grammar of Hale and Buck.

² Sometimes used as long in verse.

30. Where there are two consonants together, the first regularly goes with the preceding, the second with the following vowel.

parte	illud	contento	saxō
par-te	il-lud	con-ten-tō	sac-sō ¹

But if the last of the two consonants is *l* or *r*, they combine with the vowel that follows; *h* is not counted.

sacrō	duplicēs	tenebrae	pulchrō	explicuit
sa-crō	du-pli-cēs	te-ne-brae	pul-chrō	ex-pli-cu-it

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

31. The quantity or length of syllables must be learned in order to know where to accent words.

As would be expected, syllables containing long vowels or diphthongs are long, but *those containing short vowels are not all short*.

32. Short vowels followed by *no consonants* make short syllables; as, *ea*, *e-a*; *duo*, *du-o*; *tua*, *tu-a*; *mihi*, *mi-hi*.

Short vowels followed by *one consonant* make short syllables: *erat*, *e-rat*; *vocat*, *vo-cat*; *legit*, *le-git*.

But short vowels followed by *x* or *z* or *two consonants* that are *separately uttered* make long syllables.

tentant	contendēbant	saxis	mittunt	illōs
ten-tant	con-ten-dē-bant	sac-sis	mit-tunt	il-los

Latin words are strung together in reading or speech.

Furit aestus harēnis.

Fu-ri-taes-tu-s'a-rē-nīs.

¹ The letter *x* is thus divided into *cs* in speech but not in writing or print.

One of the consonants may begin the next word. All the syllables except **-ci-bu-** are long in the following line.

Ad quem tum Iunō supplex hīs vocibus usa est.

Ad-quem-tum-Iū-nō-sup-plec-s'is-vō-ci-bu-sū-sa'st.

33. *A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by no consonant or a lone consonant (except **x** or **z**).*

34. *A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by **x** or **z** or any two consonants (the latter one of which is not **l** or **r**).*

If the last of two consonants with a short vowel is **l** or **r**, the syllable may be used *either* as long or short in verse. Such syllables are called *common*.

35. An occasional shortened form has the accent on the ultima or last syllable, or on a short penult.

e-duc' (for **e-du'-ce**) ; **cōn-si'-lī** (for **cōn-si'-lī-ī**)

36. *Words of two syllables are accented on the first.*

Words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult (next-to-last), if it is a long syllable; if not, on the antepenult (syllable before-the-penult).

vo'-cat, vo-cā'-tur, ma-gis'-ter, Iū'-li-us, dis-ci'-pu-lus,
vō'-cem, vo-cē'-mus, te'-ne-brae.

SUMMARY OF CASE ENDINGS

37. Nearly all pupils summarize facts in their own way and for the convenience of their own habits of study and remembering. The following general view of all the forms of nouns (and adjectives) is given here to prevent their

jumping at conclusions that are destined to be shattered as work proceeds, and the getting of impressions that it is so wearisome to root out and unlearn later.

It is not to be expected that all these important summaries and working principles will be learned at once, but rather that they will be read and re-read till a correct general idea of them has been gained and the pupil knows exactly where to find the help he needs. They are intended to serve as a guide in all future work and to be referred to again and again as the reading of Latin continues till they are finally mastered.

What Are Endings and What Are Not Endings

38. An **ending** is an element annexed to the end of a base or stem to show its relation to other words. What the endings of Latin nouns originally were does not particularly concern us here. They now appear as **-s**, **-m**, **-rum**, **-bus**, or a *vowel*; of which **-rum** is always *genitive plural* and **-bus** is always *dative, ablative, or locative plural*. But so many changes and contractions have taken place that it is now customary to speak of them as including at least one vowel.

39. A complete list of the endings of Latin nouns and adjectives is as follows:

- a, -ā, -e, -ē, -ae, -eī (eī-), -ī, -ia, -ō, -u, -ua ;
- am, -em, -im, -um, -arum, -ērum, -ium, -ōrum, -uum ;
- s, -ās, -es, -is, -īs, -ōs, -us, -us (-ius, -īus) ; ¹
- ābus, -ēbus, -ibus, -ōbus (-ubus).

¹ Endings in parentheses are found in but few words.

40. The following adjectives have **-us** (**-ius**) instead of **-i** and **-ae** in the Genitive singular and **-ī** (**-i**) instead of **-ō** and **-ae** in the Dative singular.

Some of them have **-d**, **-id**, **-od**, or **-ud** (for **-e** or **-um**) in the neuter singular and **-e** (for **-us**) in the masculine.

a.	NOM.	GEN.	DAT.	ENGLISH COGNATES
M. F. N.	M. F. N.	M. F. N.	M. F. N.	AND DERIVATIVES
ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one, only	ūnius	ūnī	unit, unique, unify
sōlus, sōla, sōlum	alone	sōlius	sōlī	sole, solitary
tōtus, tōta, tōtum	whole	tōtius	tōtī	total, totally
alter, -ra, -rum	the other	alterius	alterī	alternate, alter
alius, alia, aliud	other	alterius	aliī	alien, alibi, alias
uter? utra? utrum?	whether?	utrius	utrī	whether?
neuter, -tra, -trum	neither	neutrius	neutrī	neutral, neuter
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	any	ūllius	ūllī	nullify, null
nūllus, -lla, -llum	none	nūllius	nūllī	nullify, annul
quī, quae, quod	that	cuius	cui	who, what, whose
quis? quid? ¹	who? what?	cuius?	cui?	which? how? why?
aliquī, -qua, -quod	some	alicuius	alicui	
hic, haec, hoc	this	huius	huic	These four are used to mean <i>he, she, or it</i> according to the gender. § 119 c
iste, ista, istud	that	istius	isti	
ille, illa, illud	that	illius	illi	
is, ea, id	this, that	eius	ei	

b. Mention is here made of these few irregular words because aside from them and their compounds, no nouns or adjectives have any endings not found in the list in § 39. In all other native Latin nouns and adjectives, any form not having one of the endings of this list *has no case ending*.

¹ **Quis, quid** is not an adjective. It is the interrogative pronoun.



41. Forms with no case ending occur only in the singular, and in the nominative and vocative of masculines and feminines and in the nominative accusative and vocative of neuters. Such are the forms below. Figures are used to indicate the declension.

NOM. OR VOC. SING.	BASE	RELATED WORDS
2 <i>ager</i> <i>field, territory</i>	<i>agr-</i>	<i>agriculture, agrarian</i>
2 <i>liber</i> <i>scroll, book</i>	<i>libr-</i>	<i>librarian</i>
2 <i>puer</i> <i>boy, hand, slave</i>	<i>puer-</i> § 76	<i>puerile</i> (boyish)
3 <i>pater</i> <i>father</i> § 82	<i>patr-</i> § 78 a	<i>paternal, patrimony</i>
3 <i>māter</i> <i>mother</i>	<i>mātr-</i>	<i>maternal, matrimony</i>
3 <i>sōl</i> <i>sun</i>	<i>sōl-</i>	<i>solstice, solar</i>
3 <i>lūmen</i> ¹ <i>light</i> § 78 b	<i>lūmin-</i>	<i>luminous, illuminate</i>
3 <i>nōmen</i> ¹ <i>name</i>	<i>nōmin-</i>	<i>nominate, nominal</i>
3 <i>mel</i> ¹ <i>honey</i>	<i>mell-</i>	<i>mellifluous</i>
3 <i>vēr</i> ¹ <i>springtime</i>	<i>vēr-</i>	<i>vernal</i>
3 <i>aequor</i> ¹ <i>level expanse</i>	<i>aequor-</i>	<i>equal, equity, iniquity</i>

42. But the most deceiving of all and most puzzling to the uninitiated are those Third Declension Nouns that

¹ Nom., Acc., or Voc.

appear at first to have the case endings **-s**, **-us**, **-us**, **-ōs**, **-as**, **-ō**, etc., when they really have no case endings at all.

1. Because the final **s** of stems *remains where there is no ending* and becomes **-r** between two vowels wherever endings are annexed, as in **mos**, *habit*, **mores**,¹ *habits*, *character*.

2. Because the final **n** of stems is lost after **-ō-**, if there is no ending, as in **natiō**, *tribe*, **nationes**, *tribes*, *breeds*.

NOMINATIVE, GENDER AND MEANING	EARLIER STEM	PRESENT BASE	RELATED WORDS IN ENGLISH
genus n. <i>kin, kind</i> § 82 d	genes-	gener-	<i>gender, kin, general</i>
tempus n. <i>season, time</i>	tempes-	tempor-	<i>tempest, temporary</i>
vulnus n. <i>wound</i> § 78 b	vulnes-	vulner-	<i>invulnerable</i>
vetus m. f. n. <i>old</i> § 86	vetes-	veter-	<i>veteran, inveterate</i>
rūs n. <i>field, country</i>	rūs-	rūr-	<i>rustic, rural</i>
iūs n. <i>right, law</i> § 78 b	iūs-	iūr-	<i>just, injury, jury</i>
maius n. <i>larger</i>	maiōs-	maiōr-	<i>majority</i>

NOMINATIVE, GEN- DER AND MEANING	EARLIER STEM	PRESENT BASE	ENGLISH COGNATES AND DERIVATIVES
tellūs f. <i>earth, soil</i>	tellūs-	tellūr- § 82	<i>telluride</i>
pulvis m. <i>dust</i>	pulves-	pulver-	<i>pulverize</i>
mōs m. <i>custom, way</i>	mōs-	mōr-	<i>immoral, moralist</i>
flōs m. <i>blossom</i>	flōs-	flōr-	<i>florist, flourish</i>
ōrdō m. <i>order, rank</i>	*ōrdon-	ōrdin-	<i>ordinal, ordinary</i>
origō f. <i>beginning</i>	*orīgon-	origin-	<i>orient, original</i>
regiō f. <i>line, side</i>	regiōn-	regiōn-	<i>reach, regional</i>
ratiō f. <i>method, plan</i>	ratiōn-	ratiōn-	<i>reason, rational</i>
statiō f. <i>stop, post</i>	statiōn-	statiōn-	<i>stationary</i>
lātitudō f. <i>breadth</i>	*lātitudon-	lātitudin-	<i>latitudinal</i>

¹ Cf. *was* and *were*; *is*, *are*; *us*, *our* (once *oure*).

* Possible forms in very early Latin.

43. Almost equally annoying are those in which -t- or -d- have disappeared before the ending -s :

FORMATION	NOMINATIVE	BASE	FROM THE SAME ROOT
ped-s	pēs m. foot §§ 78, 82	ped-	<i>pedal, impede</i>
pedet-s	pedes m. foot-soldier	pedit-	<i>pedestrian</i>
equet-s	eques m. horseman	equit-	<i>equestrian</i>
lapid-s	lapis m. small stone	lapid-	<i>lapidary</i>
sanguin-s	sanguis m. blood	sanguin-	<i>sanguinary</i>
cūstōd-s	cūstōs m. keeper	cūstōd-	<i>custody</i>
aequitāt-s	aequitās f. fairness	aequitāt-	<i>equity, iniquity</i>
dignitāt-s	dignitās f. office	dignitāt-	<i>dignity, deign</i>
quiēt-s	quiēs f. rest, peace	quiēt-	<i>inquietude</i>
līt-s	līs f. dispute	līt-	<i>litigation</i>
palūd-s	palūs f. marsh	palūd-	<i>paludal</i>
salūt-s	salūs f. welfare	salūt-	<i>salutation</i>
servitūt-s	servitūs f. slavery	servitūt-	<i>service, servile</i>
virtūt-s	virtūs f. manly quality	virtūt-	<i>virtual, virtue</i>
fraud-s	fraus f. trick	fraud-	<i>fraudulent</i>

44. In the list below, eight nouns have the case ending -s, seven have no ending, and no two others have the same ending.

mas male	brevitās shortness	fīlias daughters
res thing	pes foot	Ceres Ceres
finis limit	pulvis powder	lapis stone
lis quarrel	mīles soldier	armīs with arms
tribus with three	statiō station	fīliō to a son
fraus deceit	senātus senate	genus class
puerōs boys	colōs tint, hue	custōs guard
tellus ground	iuventus youth-	tribus tribes

45. The following list shows how easy it is to know the endings by comparing two different forms of the same noun so as to get the *base*. Cf. §§ 42, 43.

mās	—	brevitās	-s	filiās	-ās
marēs	-ēs	brevitāte	-e	filiābus	-ābus
rēs	-ēs	pēs	-s	Cerēs	—
rē	-ē	pedibus	-ibus	Cererī	-ī
finis	-is	pulvis	—	lapis	-s
finium	-ium	pulverem	-em	lapidis	-is
lis	-s	mīles	-s	armis	-is
līte	-e	mīlitum	-um	armōrum	-ōrum
tribus	-ibus	statiō	—	filiō	-ō
tria	-ia	statiōnem	-em	filiis	-is
fraus	-s	senātus	-us	genus	—
fraudis	-is	senātūs	-ūs	genera	-a
puerōs	-ōs	colōs	—	cūstōs	-s
puer	—	colōre	-e	cūstōdum	-um
tellūs	—	iuventūs	-s	tribūs	-ūs
tellūre	-e	iuventūtī	-ī	tribuum	-uum



46. Just as *ag-*, *leg-*, and *reg-* become *ac-*, *lec-*, and *rec-* before *t* in

agent (one who acts) *legible* (readable) *regent* (ruling)
active (quick to act) *lecture* (a discourse read) *rector* (ruler)

So in Latin *g* becomes *c* before *s* or *t*.

Note that *cs* is always written *x*.

FORMATION	NOMINATIVE	BASE	HAVING THE SAME ROOT
<i>pāc-s</i>	<i>pāx</i> f. <i>agreement</i>	<i>pāc-</i>	<i>pay, pacify, peace</i>
<i>rēg-s</i>	<i>rēx</i> m. <i>ruler, king</i>	<i>rēg-</i>	<i>regal, royal, reign</i>
<i>iūdec-s</i>	<i>iūdex</i> m. <i>judge</i>	<i>iūdic-</i>	<i>judicious, judicial</i>
<i>duc-s</i>	<i>dux</i> m. <i>guide, leader</i>	<i>duc-</i>	<i>duke, induce</i>
<i>lēg-s</i>	<i>lēx</i> f. <i>agreement, law</i>	<i>lēg-</i>	<i>legal, legislator</i>
<i>nigui-s</i> ¹	<i>nix</i> f. <i>snow</i>	<i>niv-</i>	<i>niveous, Nevada</i>
<i>nocti-s</i> ¹	<i>nox</i> f. <i>night</i>	<i>noct-</i>	<i>nocturnal</i>

An Observing Reader's Habit of Thought

47. There are several things we must find out about a word, as we read, or we shall sooner or later have to *stop all progress* to look it up. Our first observations may not reveal what we most wish to know. But we shall soon meet the word again, if we but read on; and the comparing of the two forms will show more than the base and the two endings. Suppose, for example, we have for the first time met

in eandem partem, or *maximam fidem*, or *finem*.

Each noun appears to be an accusative singular. It is.

One reminds us of *part*, *partial*, *partly*, *partisan*, *depart*, *impart*, *compartment*, *counterpart*.

It likely means *part*,² *side*, *direction*, *share*, or *division*.

¹ Probable form in very early Latin.

² Cf. § 218, a, b.

Another resembles **fidelity**, *bona fide*, or the name **Fido**. It probably means *faith, fidelity, trust, confidence, loyalty*.

The third calls to mind **final**, **finish**, and **Finis** at the *end* of a book.

It must mean *end, limit, border, or boundary*.

Yet **partem**, **fidem**, and **finem** might all be either of the Third or of the Fifth Declension (see table § 55); **eandem**, however, is an adjective and there are no adjectives of the Fifth Declension. Suppose, now, we have read on and found

eiusdem, or fidē, or finīs latos

(1) **Fidem** and **fide** are *Fifth Declension* forms, as no Third Declension forms end in **-e**, except **famē**, *by hunger*. (See § 55 c, 3.) **Maximam** shows that **fidem** is *feminine*; besides, all Fifth Declension nouns are feminine, except **diēs**, *day* and **merīdies**, *midday, south*.

(2) **Eiusdem** immediately shows that **-em** is not the ending of **eandem**; **-dem** is only a particle annexed after the case ending **-am**, which is then written **-an** before **d** (cf. **compel** and **condemn**). The ending **-ius** shows **eiusdem** to be one of the irregular adjectives (§ 40), meaning *same, also* (**-dem** appearing as **-den-** in *identical*).

(3) **Finīs** must be a Third Declension form. There is no such ending as **-īs** in the Fifth, and accusative plurals in **-is** all belong to the class known as Masculine and Feminine **i-stems** (3 i M. and F. § 55 b). The adjective **lātōs** shows that **finīs** is Mas. Acc. Pl. § 54 b.

(4) Knowing the meaning of **partem** and that it is Fem. Acc. Sing., we can afford to wait about the rest till we meet it again.

48. This illustrates the advantage of "making haste slowly" — of watching, waiting, and comparing, of using our brains more than our thumbs — for a little careful observation trains us to see in ten minutes what it takes an hour to look up, and if we depend upon looking up everything, the task is endless.

How to Use the Tables Below

49. To get the *best results from comparing different forms* of a word and take advantage of every means of discovering the necessary facts about nouns as we meet them in reading, we must gradually master the tables below, which aim to show *how far each ending may be relied upon*.

- (1) To indicate the class to which a new noun belongs ;
- (2) To show its number and case at first sight, and
- (3) *What a given ending indicates regarding the other endings* of a noun (or adjective) seen for the first time.

50. Some endings tell the whole story at a glance ; as, **-ae** in the noun **naturae** (see Int. § 6 *e*), others tell a great deal, while some tell little or nothing.

51. The following observations do not apply to the irregular adjectives and pronouns in § 40 nor to nouns having mixed declensions nor to words borrowed from the Greek ; as, **aēr** (acc. sing. **aera** or **aerem**) and **aethēr** (acc. **aethera**), p. 18, etc., all of which fall an easy prey to one who has mastered these tables.

52. We must start aright. The first essential is to know whether the case ending is

-as -es -is -īs -ō -ōs -us -us as in

hōr-ās, r-ēs, fīn-is, arm-īs, radi-ō, vic-ōs, ann-us,
or **-s**, as in

aetā-s, pē-s, lapi-s, li-s, pāx, cūstō-s, frau-s,
or lacking altogether, as in

mās	Cerēs	mōs	genus	rus	statiō
puer	pulvis	vir	aequor	mel	lumen

Note the following also :

fili-a fili-us e-ī vacu-ī radi-um vacu-um vacu-a
omn-ia e-ius r-eī senāt-uī omn-ium pass-uum corn-ua

53. The endings of all classes of regular nouns and adjectives are given below (§ 55) in parallel columns. It will be seen that certain endings occur only in particular declensions or in particular cases.

The Gender of Nouns and Adjectives

54. a. **Annum** (Ac. masculine) resembles **oppidum** (N. Ac. V. neuter); **Victor** (N. V. masculine) resembles **aequor** (N. Ac. V. neuter).

Except in such instances (in the singular), neuter nouns differ from masculines and feminines in the *nominative, accusative, and vocative cases*. Masculine nouns, however, cannot always be distinguished from feminines by their endings, *e.g.*

annus (m.) **Cyprus** (f.) **hōrae** (f.) **incolae** (m.)

but in adjectives **-us** is *always masculine* and **-ae** *feminine*.

b. Thus many endings of adjectives never fail to *show the gender of the nouns they modify*. See § 55 f.

55. a.	2	1	2	3	3
	M. (F.)	F. (M.)	N.	M. or F.	N.
	S. Pl.	S. Pl.	S. Pl.	S. Pl.	S. Pl.
N.	(-us) -ī	-a -ae	-um -a	-s, — -ēs	— -a
G.	-ī -ōrum	-ae -ārum	-ī -ōrum	-is -um	-is -um
D.	-ō -īs ¹	-ae -īs ¹	-ō -īs ¹	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus
Ac.	-um -ōs	-am -ās	-um -a	-em -ēs	— -a
V.	(-e) -ī	-a -ae	-um -a	-s, — -ēs	— -a
Ab.	-ō -īs ¹	-ā -īs ¹	-ō -īs ¹	-e -ibus	-e -ibus
L.	-ī -is	-ae -is	-ī -is	-e -ibus	-e -ibus

¹ -ōbus, m. and n., and -ābus, f., are used instead of -is in *duōbus*, *duābus* two, *ambōbus*, *ambābus* both, and in *filīabus* and *deābus*.

c. Some endings always show the Declension. § 52

First	Second	Third	Fourth	Fifth
-a (sing.)	-um (N.), -ō	-um (G.), -s, -is, -ēs ¹	-ūs	-iēs ¹
-am, -ā	-ī (N. G.)	— (Ac.), -em, ¹ -im	-uī, -ū	-iēī, -eī
-ae, -ās	-ōrum, -ōs	-ī (D. Ab.), -is (Ac.)	-ua	-iem, ¹ -ē ²
-ārum	-e (V. m.)	-e (N. Ac. Ab.)	-uum	-ēbus

¹ -ēs and -em are preceded by -i- in all Fifth Declension forms except *rēs*, *rem*, *thing*, *spēs*, -em, *hope*, *fīdēs*, -em, *faith*, *plēbēs*, -em, *plebs*.

² Except in *famē*, *by hunger*, which is of the Third Declension.

1st or 2d	2d or 3d	2d or 4th	3d or 4th
-is (D.Ab.)	-a (pl.)	-um (Ac.); -us	-ibus

e. Gender in Nouns (§ 54)

f. Gender in Adjectives

M.(F.) -ī or -ūs (pl.); -us, -ōs	F.(M.) -a or -ēs (sing.); -ae	Always neuter.	-um (N.)	Always reliable §§ 42-3, 54
-am, -ā, -ārum, -ās	-eī, -iēī, -ē, -ēbus	-a (pl.)	— (Ac.)	M. F. N.
		-e (N. Ac.)	-ū (N. Ac.)	-us -a (sing.) -um (N.)
				-ī (pl.) -am, -ā -a (pl.)
				-ōs -ae, -ās — (Ac.)
				-e (2) -ārum -e (N. A.)
Never neuter.				
-is (N.); -is (Ac.); -s, -em, -ēs			§ 52	

b. 3 i		3 i		4		4		5	
M. or F.		N.		M. or F.		N.		M. or F.	
S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.
-is, -s	-ēs	-e ¹	-ia	-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
-is	-ium	-is	-ium	-ūs	-uum	-us	-uum	-ei ⁴	-erum
-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ui ²	-ibus ³	-ū	-ibus	-ei	-ēbus
-em ⁵	-īs	-e ¹	-ia	-um	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-em	-ēs
-is, -s	-ēs	-e ¹	-ia	-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
-ī, -e	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ū	-ibus ³	-ū	-ibus	-ē	-ēbus
-e, -ī	-ibus	-e, -ī	-ibus	No adjectives or locative case.					

¹ All Present Participles; as, *vacāns* being empty, *vidēns* seeing, and a few adjectives; as, *audāx* bold, *ingēns* huge, have -s.

² Rarely -u.

³ -ubus in *tribus* tribe, and rarely in a few others.

⁴ Rarely -ē, -ēī after a vowel.

⁵ -im in a few nouns.

d. Always Singular

Always Plural

-a (f.); -ā, -e, -ē, -ō, ¹ -ū	-a (n.); -ae (N.); -ī (N. V.)
-ae (G. D.); -ī (G. D. Ab.)	-ās; -ēs (Ac.); -īs, -ōs § 52
-ūs or -īus or -ius (G.) § 43	-ūs (N. Ac.); -um (G.); -ium
—, -s, -is, -us, -ēī, -eī	-ārum, -ērum, -ōrum, -uum
-um (N. Ac.); -am, -em, -im	-ābus, -ēbus, -ibus, -ōbus

¹ Plural in *ambō* both.

NOTE. — Do not try to apply this without first comparing two forms (§§ 42, 45).

g. Always Nom.

Always Dat.

Always Voc.

-us (Adj.) §§ 41-3

-ui

-e (2)

Always Gen.

Always Acc.

Always Abl.

-is (n.); -īus -ūs (sing.); -ius -ī (sing. 2) ¹ -ārum, -ōrum -um (3); -ium -uum, -ērum	-am, -em, -im	-ā, -ē, ¹ and if used w. prep. ² -e or -ū (m. f.) -is (1, 2); -ō -ābus, -ēbus -ibus, -ōbus
	-ās, -ōs, -īs (3) if used w. prep. ² —, -s, -um -ēs, -ūs §§ 42-3 -a, -ia, -ua	

¹ Rarely used for -ēī in poetry. See also § 81 b.

² §§ 57, 58.

³ Except nouns in -ius.

56.

ENDINGS AND THEIR VALUES¹

<i>Case</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Relations to Other Words</i> (see Int. § 5)
1. <i>N.</i>	(-us)	-ī ²	indicates the <i>subject of a finite verb</i> , the <i>predicate of a subject nominative</i> , etc. (§ 5 a, c.)
2. <i>G.</i>	-ī	-ōrum	<i>possessor</i> , —'s, —s'; <i>of</i> ; (son) <i>of</i> ; (more) <i>of</i> ; (fear) <i>of</i> ; (be estimated) <i>of</i> or <i>at</i> (value).
3. <i>D.</i>	-ō	-īs	<i>indirect obj.</i> ; <i>to</i> ; (give) <i>to</i> ; (belong) <i>to</i> ; (lacking) <i>to</i> ; <i>for</i> ; <i>for</i> (aid) <i>to</i> ; <i>as-far-as-concerns</i> .
4. <i>Ac.</i>	-um	-ōs	<i>direct obj.</i> ; <i>subj. of Inf.</i> ; <i>for</i> (days, years, miles); <i>for</i> (most part); see also § 57.
5. <i>V.</i>	(-e)	-ī	<i>direct address</i> ; <i>O</i> —! <i>thou</i> —! <i>ye</i> —! Never put the Vocative first in a sentence.
6. <i>Ab.</i>	-ō	-īs	<i>at, during</i> (night); (alarmed) <i>at, on-account-of</i> or <i>by</i> ; (rate, buy, or sell) <i>at</i> or <i>for</i> . <i>by</i> (boat), <i>by</i> (land), <i>by-means-of</i> ; <i>by, according-to</i> (plan); (older) <i>by</i> (a year), § 68 b. <i>for</i> ; <i>for</i> or <i>on-account-of</i> (courage); § 73 b. (free) <i>from</i> , (kept) <i>from</i> ; (suffer) <i>from</i> . <i>of</i> , (deprive) <i>of</i> ; (full) <i>of</i> ; (born) <i>of</i> ; (need) <i>of</i> ; (make use) <i>of</i> ; (man) <i>of</i> or <i>with</i> (good mind); (worthy) <i>of</i> ; (glad) <i>of</i> ; § 62 g. <i>in</i> ; <i>in, during, within</i> (a day); <i>in</i> (wisdom, width); (kept) <i>in</i> ; (defeat) <i>in</i> (war). <i>on</i> (a day); (feed or live) <i>on</i> ; (lean or rely) <i>on</i> ; (go, ride, be carried) <i>in</i> or <i>on</i> . <i>over</i> , (boast,) <i>over, about, on-account-of</i> . <i>with</i> ; (fill) <i>with</i> ; (mix) <i>with</i> ; (suffer) <i>with</i> . <i>than</i> ; <i>with</i> preps. § 58.
7. <i>L.</i>	-ī	-īs	<i>at, in, on</i> (see §§ 60, 61 c).

¹ This table is to be used as a general guide (see § 230).² And so on following the lines across pp. 128–9, § 55 a, b.

57. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

ad in the direction of, till, for, to (border of), toward, up to, to (the presence of, when travelling is done), against (enemy), at, close by, near, next to; **quantum ad** as for; **ad decem** about ten.
ante before, ahead of. **post** behind, after, since.
apud before the face of, in the eyes, sight, opinion, hands, or care of; **apud me** at my house; **apud oppidum** in sight of town.
circum around, in the vicinity of. **circiter** (cf. **circus**), about.
in 'clear' to, till, on, upon, into, or among (when distance has to be travelled); against, (feel) toward, (throw) at, (start) for;
quam in partem? in what direction? **in collem** up on a hill.
inter in the midst of, between, among (as compared with).
ob (obstructing the way) in face of; **ob eam rem** for this reason.
per through, along; **per vim** by force; **per Alpīs** over the Alps.
praeter except, but, beyond; **praeter castra** past the camp.
propter because of; **propter altitudinem** because of the height.
cis (citra) this side of. **trāns** across. **ultrā** beyond. **sub** under.

58. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

ā, ab, abs from the direction of, away from, from (the outside), by (a person); off; **a milibus passuum** thousands of paces away.
ab before vowels or *h*; **ā** or **ab** before *d, l, n, r, s*; otherwise **ā**.
cum (in company) with; **unā cum** along with. **sine** without.
de down from, from (interior or top); concerning, about; **pauci de nostris** a few of our men; **quā de causā** and for this reason.
ē, ex (before vowels or *h*) out of, off from, up from, out from, from (within the borders) or off (the top of), from among. § 66 c
in, in, on, upon, among (bodily if no distance is travelled).
prae (English *pre-* before) ahead of, in comparison with.
prō in front, behalf, or stead of, for, in proportion to; **eōs prō amicis habeo** I take them for friends. **sub** under, below.

59. NOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONAL FORCE

causā or *grātia* (placed after a Genitive) *for the sake, for; frumenti causā eunt they are going for grain; to get grain.*

These illustrations of the underlying idea of the prepositions above will be better understood with use and experience.

60. Note the use of prepositions in phrases denoting *places, persons, things, position, situation, or condition.*

<i>to which</i> (or <i>to whom</i>)	<i>in which</i> (<i>in whom</i>)	<i>from which</i> (<i>from whom</i>)
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--

<i>ad insulam</i>	<i>in insulam</i>	<i>in insulā</i>	<i>ex insulā</i>	<i>ab insulā</i>
<i>toward the</i> <i>island</i>	<i>to the is-</i> <i>land</i>	<i>on the is-</i> <i>land</i>	(<i>off</i>) <i>from</i> <i>the island</i>	<i>from near by</i> <i>the island</i>

<i>ad Cyprum</i>	<i>Cyprum</i>	<i>Cypri</i> § 76	<i>Cyprō</i>	<i>ā Cyprō</i>
<i>toward or</i> <i>to Cyprus</i>	<i>to Cyprus</i>	<i>in or on</i> <i>Cyprus</i>	<i>off from</i> <i>Cyprus</i>	<i>from near</i> <i>Cyprus</i>

<i>ad domum</i>	<i>in domum</i>	<i>in domō</i>	<i>ē domō</i>	<i>ā domō</i>
<i>toward the</i> <i>dwelling</i>	<i>to the house</i>	<i>in or at</i> <i>the house</i>	<i>from the</i> <i>house</i>	<i>away from</i> <i>the house</i>

<i>domum</i>	<i>domi</i> § 81	<i>domō</i>
(<i>go</i>) <i>home</i>	(<i>be</i>) <i>at home</i>	<i>from home</i>

<i>ad vicum</i>	<i>in vicum</i>	<i>in vicō</i>	<i>ē vicō</i>	<i>ā vicō</i>
<i>toward the</i> <i>village</i>	<i>to or into</i> <i>hamlet</i>	<i>in or at</i> <i>village</i>	<i>from the</i> <i>hamlet</i>	<i>away from</i> <i>the village</i>

<i>ad Athēnās</i>	<i>Athēnās</i>	<i>Athēnis</i> § 77	<i>Athēnis</i>	<i>ab Athēnis</i>
<i>to a point</i> <i>near Athens</i>	<i>to Athens</i>	<i>at Athens</i>	<i>from Athens</i>	<i>from near</i> <i>Athens</i>

ad arma <i>to arms</i>	in fugam <i>to flight</i>	in armis <i>in arms</i>	ex fugā <i>from flight</i>	ab armis <i>from arms</i>
ad Iūlium <i>to or up to Julius</i>	in Iūlium <i>against or at Julius</i>	in Iūliō <i>in Julius</i>	ex Iūliō <i>(idea) from Julius</i>	ā Iūliō <i>(book) from Julius</i>

61. In case of proper names of towns, small islands, and peninsulas, **domus** (*home*) and **rus** (*the country*), the following special rules must be observed.

- The accusative with ad denotes direction in which.*
- The accusative denotes place to which, or destination.*
- The locative denotes place in which.*
- The ablative denotes place from which.*
- The ablative with ā or ab denotes direction from which.*
- In and e or ex are never used with these nouns.*

62. The phrases, *with the boys*, *with the horses*, and *with the dog*, are said to denote *association* or *accompaniment*, because the boy, the horses, and the dog may be regarded as companions or associates.

The phrases, *with a sword*, *with books*, and *with water*, are said to denote *instrument* or *means* of action.

a. (Persons or animals)

Association

Cum pueris pugnāt.
He fights with the boys.

Cum equō missus est.
He was sent with the horse.

b. (Inanimate things)

Instrument or Means

§ 58 **Gladiō pugnāt.** § 56, 6
He fights with a sword.

Libris plenum est. § 56, 6
It is filled with books.

c. But persons and animals are often treated as things, and inanimate things are regarded as companions.

Ibi cum gladiō stetit.	Equis arant.	§ 56, 6
<i>Here he stood with a sword.</i>	<i>They plow with horses.</i>	
Cum librīs missus est.	Navis puerīs plena est.	
<i>He was sent with books.</i>	<i>The boat is full of boys.</i>	
Cum litteris venit.	Quid puero fiet?	§ 56, 6
<i>He came with a letter.</i>	<i>What will be done with the boy?</i>	

d. Active Agents

Instrument or Means

Ā Iuliō missus est.	Sagittā est vulneratus.
<i>He was sent by Julius.</i>	<i>He was wounded by an arrow.</i>
Ā cane morsus est.	Fulmine ictus est.
<i>He was bitten by a dog.</i>	<i>He was struck by lightning.</i>

e. But persons and animals may be treated as things.

Per exploratorem cognitum est.	Equis ductus est.
<i>Was learned through a scout.</i>	<i>It was drawn by horses.</i>

f. **Castris** se tenet keeps himself in camp (means of shelter).

Barbaros proeliō superant they defeat barbarians in battle.

Puerum pugnā superat defeats the boy in a fight or by fighting.

g. The Ablative is used to describe a person or thing.

Magnā est gratia.	§ 56, 6	Puer oculis caeruleis.
<i>He is a person of great favor.</i>		<i>A boy with blue eyes.</i>
Mons magna altitudine	a mountain of great height.	§ 56, 6

63. a. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Suos ā proelio continet he keeps his (men) from battle.

Suis finibus eos prohibent they keep them from their borders.

Murum barbaris nudant they clear the wall of barbarians.

b. The Ablative case is used to express separation from abstract things, the Ablative with **ā** or **ab** from concrete things (but this varies with the verb used).

Hoc eos **curā** liberat *this relieves (frees) them of (f om) anxiety.*

Hostis (pl.) **ab oppido** prohibe *keep the enemy from the town.*

64. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

tot (indecl.) *so-many totidem just as many, the same number*

quot (indecl.) *as-many, as sī quot if several quot? how many?*

quot equi sunt? *how many horses are there?* **multi sunt** *many*

tot . . . quot *as-many . . . as, so-many . . . as*

aliquot (indecl.) *some number, several.* See §§ 70, 91–2, 150

tam multi, **tam multorum**, m. *so many (men, persons, etc.)*

quam multi, **quam multorum**, m. *as many (persons)*¹ *as quota*

quam multi? **quam multorum?** m. *how many persons?*

quam multi equi sunt? *how many horses are there?*

multi, **multorum**, m. *many (men,*¹ *etc.)*

multiply

permulti, **permultorum**, m. *very-many*

multitude

plurimī, **plurimorum**, m. *very-many (persons), most (men)* *plural*

quam plurimōs **secum ducit** *takes as many as he can with him*
plerique, **plerorumque**, m. *most (men), the majority*

paucī, **paucorum**, m. *a few, some-few, few (men)*

paucity

perpaucī, **perpaucorum**, m. *very few*

nullī, **nullorum**, m. *no (men), none*

nullify, null

nōnnullī, **nonnullorum**, m. *not-a-few, some (persons)*

annul

bonī, **bonorum**, m. *the good, good (men)*

bonny, bounty

malī, **malorum**, m. *the bad, bad (men)*

malefactor

nostrī, **nostrorum**, m. *our (men), our (soldiers), ours*¹

sui, **suorum**, m. *his or her (own people), its (own), their (own)*¹

meī, **meorum**, m. *my (people, friends), my (family)*¹ 109 c, 118 b

¹ Not only *persons* or *men* but also *boys, horses, etc.*

65. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (Masculine)

alius <i>other, else; pl. others</i>	sōli (<i>they</i>) <i>alone, (we) alone</i>
alius <i>one . . . alius</i> <i>another</i>	totus <i>whole, (he) all</i> § 118 b
alii <i>some . . . alii</i> <i>others</i>	tōtus <i>in studiis est</i> he is all
alter <i>the one . . . alter</i> <i>the other</i>	taken-up with-studies
alteri <i>the ones; alteri</i> <i>the others</i>	ullus <i>any (one), any (body)</i>
nemō (<i>ne + homō</i>) <i>no man</i>	nullus <i>not one, no one</i>
quis (<i>any</i>) one , <i>one, (some) one</i>	unus <i>one, the only one</i>
-que <i>each, every</i> §§ 108 b, 111	unī <i>the only ones</i> §§ 40, 120
quisque <i>every one, each one</i>	uter? <i>which (one of the two)?</i>
quis? <i>what one? who?</i> § 114	uterque <i>either (one), both</i>
sōlus (<i>he</i>) <i>alone, (I) alone, etc.</i>	neuter <i>neither (one of the two)</i>

Some praise one, others (praise) another.

() **Alii alium** laudant.

One flees in one direction, another (flees) in another (direction)

() **Alius in aliam** partem fugit

66. a. CONNECTING WORDS

Between Parts of Sentences

ac or **atque** *and* **et** . . . **et**
-que or **et** *and both* . . . *and*
nec or **neque** *and not, nor*
vel, **aut**, or **sive** (**seu**) or
nec *neither . . . nec* *nor*
vel *either . . . vel* or
sōlum (**modo**) *only, just*
nōn sōlum (**modo**) *not only*
. . . **sed etiam** *but also*

Between Sentences

ita or **sic** *so, in such a manner*
item *in the same way, likewise*
itaque or **igitur** *therefore*
tum or **igitur** *then*
tum demum *then at last, finally*
denique *finally, in the end*
autem (*never stands first*) *how-*
ever, but, besides
nam, **enim**, **namque** *for (indeed)*

b. If the subject is plural, the verb must be plural; if the subject is singular, the verb must be singular.

Castra sunt apud Arpinum *the camp is near Arpinum* § 77 *b*

Uterque venit *both are coming.* **Pauci eunt** *few are going*

Aut Titus aut Galba venit *either Titus or Galba is coming* § 108 *b*

c. The preposition e or ex (sometimes de) is used when one or more are chosen from the number. See also § 58.)

unus e pueris or

una ex filiabus or

unum ex oppidis

unus puerorum

una filiarum

unum oppidorum

one of the boys

one of the daughters

one of the towns

67. Numeral adverbs and neuter singular nouns of time.

semel *once; semel atque iterum* *again and again*

simple

bis *twice; ter* *three times; quater* *four times* p. 29

biscuit

bīduum, bīduī *n. a period of two days, two days*

biweekly

biennium, (biennii) biennī *n. (period of) two years*

biennial

trīduum, trīduī *n. three days* Cf. p. 31, l. 26

triple, triangle

triennium, (triennii) triennī *n. three years*

triennial

quadrīduum, quadrīduī *n. four days*

quadruple

quadriennium, (quadriennii) quadriennī *n. four years*

spatium, (spatii) spatī *n. space, distance, period*

spacious

prīmum (*Acc.*) *for the first time, first; primō* (*Abl.*) *at first*



Circus Romanus.

68. a. The Accusative case is used to denote **Extent** or **Measure of Time, Space, Power, Action, etc.** § 74, 17

b. The Ablative is used to denote **Measure of Difference.**

c. The Ablative is used to denote **Time when, at which, in which, or during which.** § 74, 18

The following expressions must be carefully studied.

a. <i>How long?</i> <i>How far?</i> (§ 5 d)	b. <i>How much earlier</i> <i>or later?</i> etc (§ 5 j).	c. <i>When or Within</i> <i>what time?</i>
annum <i>a year,</i> <i>for a year</i>	annō ante § 74, 19 <i>a year before,</i> <i>one year before,</i> <i>a year previously,</i> <i>earlier by a year</i>	priore annō or superiore annō <i>the year before,</i> <i>the previous year,</i> <i>year before last</i>
biennium <i>(for) two years</i>	septem ante annis <i>seven years before</i>	sex annis Cf. p. 29 <i>in six years</i>
sex annōs <i>(for) six years</i>	sex post annis <i>six years later</i>	proximō annō <i>during</i> <i>the nearest year,</i>
nihil potest <i>is not able at all</i>	a milibus passuum <i>two miles away</i>	illō die <i>on that day</i>
duo milia passuum <i>(for) two miles</i>		

69. LIST OF COMMON ADVERBS

tam *so, so very*; **eum nōn tam amō quam timeō** *I do not love him as much as I fear him.*

quam *as, than*; **quam diu** *as long as*; **quam?** *how?* **quantity**

quam diu? *how long?* **quam optime potest** *as best he can*

ante, antea *previously, before, ago*

antique, ancient

prius *sooner*; **prius quam** *sooner than, before*

prior, priority

post, postea *afterward, later*; **postquam** *after*

postpone

ne (in commands or wishes) *not*; **ne ite** *don't go*

none, nor

nōn (in positive denials) *not*; **nōn it** *he is not going*

nonsense

quidem <i>indeed, to be sure; ne id quidem</i> not even this	
aliter <i>differently; aliter atque (ac)</i> otherwise than	alibi
bene <i>well, successfully; bene est</i> it is well	benefit
melius <i>better, more happily, rather well, too well</i>	ameliorate
optime <i>best, very well; quam optime</i> as best (one can)	optimist
male <i>ill, badly; Marcō male vult</i> wishes Mark ill	malice
peius <i>not so well, worse, too badly, less happily</i>	malign
pessime <i>worst; quam pessime</i> as badly as one can	pessimist
celeriter <i>speedily, soon, in haste, rapidly</i>	accelerate
celerius <i>more quickly, rather quickly, too quickly</i>	
celerrime <i>very quickly; quam celerrime</i> as quickly as possible	
diu <i>long, for a long time; diutius</i> longer, too long	
facile <i>easily; facilius</i> more easily, rather easily	facility
facillime <i>most easily; quam facillime</i> as easily as one can	
late <i>widely, extensively; longe lâteque</i> far and wide	latitude
latius <i>more widely, rather widely, too widely</i>	
latissime <i>very widely; quam lâtissime</i> as widely as possible	
longe <i>far; by far; longius</i> farther, too far	longitude
longissimē <i>farthest; quam longissime</i> as far as possible	
magis <i>more, rather; magis arduus</i> steeper, too steep	master
maxime <i>most, very, especially; maxime arduus</i> steepest	
minus <i>not so much, less, not; minus facile</i> not so easily	
minime <i>least, not at all; minime saepe</i> very seldom	minimize
saepe <i>more than once, often; minus saepe</i> less frequently	
saepius <i>over and over, again and again, oftener, too often</i>	
latinē <i>after the manner of the Latins, in Latin, in the Latin way</i>	
graece <i>after the manner of the Greeks, in the Greek way, in Greek</i>	

70. The following *neuter singulars* are mostly adjectives used as nouns denoting *amount* and *value*. Cf. §§ 91–2.

tantum, tanti n. *so much, so much value, so great an amount*;
quid tanti est, quanti lumen? what is of so much (value) as light? **tantum boni** *so much (of) good* (Gen., cf. § 72)

quantum, quanti n. *as much, as much value, as great an amount, as*;
tantum legit, quantum lego he reads as much as I read
legit quantum potest he reads as much as he can

magnum, magni n. *a great amount, great value* **magnify**

maximum, maximī n. *very great (amount or value)* **maxim**

magnō opere or **magnopere** *with great effect, greatly*

tanto opere or **tantopere** *with so great earnestness, so greatly*

quanto opere? or **quantopere?** *with how great effect? how greatly?*

quanto opere Marci interest? *how much is-it-the-interest of —?*

parvum, parvī n. *little, a small (amount), little (value)*

parum (Nom. and Acc.) n. *too little, little, not enough*

minimum, minimi n. *very little, very small amount, least value*

multum, multī n. *much, great deal, amount or value* **multiply**

permultum, permultī n. *very much, very great deal or value*

plurimum, plurimī n. *very much, most, largest value* **plural**

paulum, pauli n. *a little*; **paulum morae** *a little (of) delay*

perpaulum, -ī or **paululum, -ī** n. *a very little, just a bit* § 56, 4

plerumque (cf. § 76), Nom. *most*; Acc. (*for the*) *most (part)*

nihil (or **nihilum**), **nihilī** n. *nothing, no value*; **nihilō** minus *no*

less, less by nothing, none-the less; **nihil** commōtus *nothing*

daunted; **nihil** (Acc.) *to no extent, not at all* §§ 5 d, 74–17

satis (Nom., Acc.) n. *enough, sufficient*; **satis bene** *well enough*

plus, pluris n. *more, greater amount*; **plus boni** *more (of) good* § 150

minus, minōris n. *less, smaller value*; **minus boni** *less (of) good*

opus, operis n. *work, effort, effect*; *need* (w. Abl.) § 71 c, 78 b

bonum, boni n. *benefit, good*; **malum, mali** n. *an evil, bad*

71. a. NEUTER INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

aliud *other, another, else*; **quid aliud?** *what else* §§ 108–113
alterum *the other (of two)*; **alterum** *the one . . . alterum* *the other*
nullum *no, not-one, none*; **nullum ex oppidis** *not one of the towns*;
nullum oppidum *not-a town, no town* § 118 b
quid *anything* **sī quid cōsili est** *if there is any (of) plan*
quidque *everything*; **optimum quidque** *everything (that is) best*
omnia, omnium n. pl. (like **paria** § 83 b) *all (things) or everything*
quid? *what?* Acc. *to what extent?* **quid potest?** *how able is he?*
quod potest, me defendit *defends me (to) what (extent) he can*
utrum? *whether? which one (of the two)?* **utrum** *whether . . . an or*
utrumque *both things*; **in utrumque paratus est** *is ready for either*
neutrum *neither (one of the two), neither (thing)*

b. When indefinite **quis, quid** means *any one, anything*.
Quod quis novit dicere licet *what one knows, it is right to tell*.
Sī quis quid audit, dicat *if one hears anything, he may say so*.

c. **Opus** in the meaning *need* takes the Ablative.
Mihī opus est librīs *for me there is (I have) need of books*. § 56, 6

72. Words denoting indefinite quantity are followed by the *Genitive of the Whole Amount*.

Quid bonī ei est? *what (of) good is there to him?*
Non satis est causae *there is not enough (of) reason*.

73. a. The *Genitive* is used to denote *indefinite value*.
Parvī aestimatur *it is rated of little (value)*.
Nihilī est *he is of no worth (good for nothing)*. § 118 c
Equum parvī emit *he buys the horse for-some-small (amount)*.

b. The *Ablative* is used to denote *definite value or price*.
Eum parvō (pretio) emit *he bought it at-a-certain small price*.

74. No matter what the ending is, these rules never fail.

1. If a noun is the subject of a finite verb, it is *nominative*.

Catō vocat *Cato calls* **Flūmen** celere est *the river is swift*

2. If a noun is the subject of an infinitive, it is *accusative*.

Catōnem vocare audio *I hear Cato call*

Flumen celere esse sciō *I know the river is swift*

3. The predicate of a subject nominative is *nominative*.

The predicate of a subject accusative is *accusative*.

Is **Catō** est *it is Cato*

§ 42, 2

Eum **Catōnem** esse scio *I know it is Cato*

A predicate noun denotes the same person or thing as the subject. The direct object is a different person or thing, unless the subject is acting upon itself. § 116 c

4. If a noun is used as the direct object, it is *accusative*.

Catōnem vidit *he saw Cato* **Sē** ipse culpat *he blames himself*

Flumen videt *he sees the river* **Mē** accusat *he accuses me*

5. A predicate attached to the direct object is *accusative*.

Eum **Catōnem** dicunt *they call him Cato*

Eum **amicum** putant *they think him friendly*

6. If a noun is used as an indirect object, it is *dative*.

Catōnī librum dedit *gave Cato a book*

Sol **terrae** lumen dat *the sun gives the earth light*.

7. A noun used to call the attention of a person or address a person or thing is *vocative*.

Age, **Catō!** *come, Cato! act, Cato!*

8. Nouns in exclamations not addressed to any one are *accusative*.

Ō fortunatam **rem publicam!** *oh lucky state!*

Mē miserum! *poor me!*

9. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of **ad**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **post**, **propter**, **trans**, etc., is *accusative*. § 57

Per montis *over the mountains*

Trans flumen *across the river*

Propter vulnus *on account of a wound*

Apud eum *at his house, in his eyes or mind*

10. Proper names of towns, small islands, and **domum**, *home*, or **rus**, *to the country*, denoting place to which, are *accusative*. § 61

Athenas profectus *started for Athens* **Domum** *it goes home*

Bibracte ire vult *will go to Bibracte* **Rus i** *go to the country*

11. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of **a**, **ab**, **abs**, **cum**, **de**, **ē**, **ex**, **prō**, **sine**, etc., is *ablative*. § 58

Abs tē *by thee* **Mēcum** *with me* **Pro mē** *in my interest*

12. Nouns or pronouns denoting means or instrument are *ablative*.

Equō *it rides on a horse* **Gladiō** *pugnat fights with a sword*

13. Proper names of towns, etc., denoting place from which, are *ablative*.

Rōmā *profectus est started from Rome* §§ 62-3

14. Proper names of towns, denoting place in which, are *locative*.

Rōmae *est is at Rome* **Gadibus** *fuit was in Gades* §§ 76-9

Domī meae *in my home* **Domī suae** *in his own home* § 83 a

15. Nouns without prepositions denoting cause are *ablative*.

Pueros diligentīā *laudat praises the boys for their diligence*

Quā rē *me accusat? on account of what does he accuse me?*

16. A noun denoting in what respect one excels is *ablative*.

Reliquos **virtute** praecedunt *surpass the rest in valor*

17. A noun denoting length of time or extent of space, action, being, state, power, etc., is *accusative of measure*.

Annum afuit *was away a year*

Multum abest *is away a great deal*

Maximam partem frumento vivunt *live a very great deal on grain*.

18. Nouns denoting time in which or at which are *ablative*.

Annō *within a year* Illo ipso **diē** *on that very day* § 68

Hieme *in winter* **Nocte** *at night, during the night*

19. Nouns denoting how much one exceeds or precedes another or differs from another are *ablative*.

Anno ante *a year earlier*

Ā milibus passuum v. *5 miles away*

Quo plus, **eo** melius *the more, the better*

Multō melius *much better*

20. A noun followed by **causā** *for-the-sake, for* is *genitive*.

Frumentī causa moratur *is delaying for (the sake of) grain*

21. A noun or pronoun inserted by the side of another to explain it more fully stands in the *same case by apposition*.

Hoc legato **Cicerōnī** nuntiat *reports this to lieutenant Cicero*

The *ablative* or a phrase is used in apposition *with a locative*.

Athenis **urbe** Graeciae *in Athens a city of Greece* § 77

Rhodī **in insulā** magna *on Rhodes a large island* § 76

22. Nouns connected by **et**, **-que**, **nec**, etc., are usually in the same case, verbs thus connected are of the same mode.

Mārcō et **Galbae** *to Mark and Galba*

Nec **timet** neque **ōdit** *neither fears nor hates*

Note. — Cf. also §§ 5, 59–63, 71–3, 94–6, 105, 109, 157.

75. Nouns Having -i in the Genitive Singular

SINGULAR

- N. inimicus* a foe (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)
G. inimici a foe's; of a foe¹; an enemy's; of an enemy, etc.
D. inimicō a foe (indir. obj.); to a foe; for a foe, etc.
Ac. inimicum a foe (subj. of Inf.; dir. obj.); *ad inimicum* to a foe,
V. inimice foe! O foe! thou foe! [for a foe, against a foe²
Ab. inimicō than a foe; *ab inimicō*, by a foe, from an enemy;
cum inimicō with a foe; *de inimicō* about a foe

PLURAL

- N. inimici* foes (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)
G. inimicōrum foes'; of foes; enemies'; of enemies, etc.
D. inimicis foes (indir. obj.); to foes; for foes, etc.
Ac. inimicōs foes (dir. obj.; subj. of Inf.); *ad inimicōs*, to foes,
V. inimici foes! O foes! ye foes! [toward foes, etc.
Ab. inimicis than foes; *ab inimicis* from enemies, by foes; *cum*
inimicis with foes; *sine inimicis* without foes

76. When the base ends in -r-, the endings, -us and -e, are lost in many words. When the base ends in -i-, contracted forms occur in the singular; -iī and -ie become -i.

SINGULAR

- | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>N. Rhodus</i> ³ | <i>filius</i> son | <i>vesper</i> | <i>magister</i> |
| 2. <i>G. Rhodī</i> | <i>fili</i> (filiī) | <i>vesperī</i> | <i>magistri</i> |
| 3. <i>D. Rhodō</i> | <i>filiō</i> | <i>vesperō</i> | <i>magistrō</i> |
| 4. <i>Ac. Rhodum</i> | <i>filium</i> | <i>vesperum</i> | <i>magistrum</i> |
| 5. <i>V. Rhode</i> | <i>fili</i> | <i>vesper</i> | <i>magister</i> |
| 6. <i>Ab. Rhodō</i> | <i>filiō</i> | <i>vesperō</i> | <i>magistrō</i> |
| 7. <i>L. Rhodī in Rhodes</i> | | <i>vesperī</i> at evening | |

¹ Both case forms and roundabout phrases have to be used in English.

² See § 57. ³ Fem.; names of islands are feminine; §§ 54, 55 a, e, f.

PLURAL

1. <i>N.</i> Philippī	filiī	[plerique ¹ most	magistrī
2. <i>G.</i> Philippōrum	filiōrum	plerōrumque	magistrorum
3. <i>D.</i> Philippīs	filiīs	plerisque	magistrīs
4. <i>Ac.</i> Philippōs	filiōs	plērōsque	magistrōs
5. <i>V.</i> Philippī	filiī		magistrī
6. <i>Ab.</i> Philippīs	filiīs	plerisque	magistrīs
7. <i>L.</i> Philippīs at Philippi			

77. a. First Declension

b. Second Declension

Feminine (Masculine) ²*Neuter*

Genitive Singular -ae

Genitive Singular -i

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> Alexandrēa ³	provincia	consilium <i>plan</i>	Arpinum
<i>G.</i> Alexandriae	provinciae	consiliī, consilī	Arpinī
<i>D.</i> Alexandriae	provinciae	consiliō	Arpinō
<i>Ac.</i> Alexandream	prōvinciam	cōnsilium	Arpinum
<i>V.</i> Alexandria	provincia	consilium	Arpinum
<i>Ab.</i> Alexandrēā	provincia	consiliō	Arpinō
<i>L.</i> Alexandriae at Alexandria			Arpinī

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> Syracusae	provinciae	consilia <i>plans</i>	Leuctra
<i>G.</i> Syracūsārum	provinciārum	consiliōrum	Leuctrōrum
<i>D.</i> Syracusīs	provinciīs	consiliīs	Leuctrīs
<i>Ac.</i> Syracusās	provinciās	consilia	Leuctra
<i>V.</i> Syracusae	provinciae	consilia	Leuctra
<i>Ab.</i> Syracusīs	provinciīs	consiliīs	Leuctrīs
<i>L.</i> Syracusīs in Syracuse			Leuctrīs

¹ See § 119 b for the meaning of the suffix -que.² Feminine except when they denote male beings.³ Greek noun; cf. §§ 28 b, 51.

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> boreās ¹ m.	<i>filia daughter</i>	<i>oppidum town</i>	<i>vulgus crowd</i>
<i>G.</i> boreae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppidī</i>	<i>vulgī</i>
<i>D.</i> boreae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppidō</i>	<i>vulgō</i>
<i>Ac.</i> boream	<i>filiam</i>	<i>oppidum</i>	<i>vulgus</i>
<i>V.</i> boreā ¹	<i>filia</i>	<i>oppidum</i>	<i>vulgus</i>
<i>Ab.</i> boreā	<i>filia</i>	<i>oppidō</i>	<i>vulgō</i>

PLURAL

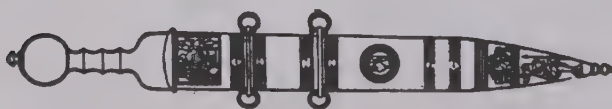
<i>N.</i> Athēnae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppida towns</i>	<i>castra camp</i>
<i>G.</i> Athēnārum	<i>filiarum</i>	<i>oppidōrum</i>	<i>castrōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> Athēnis	<i>filiabus</i> ²	<i>oppidis</i>	<i>castris</i>
<i>Ac.</i> Athēnās	<i>filiās</i>	<i>oppida</i>	<i>castra</i>
<i>V.</i> Athēnae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppida</i>	<i>castra</i>
<i>Ab.</i> Athēnis	<i>filiabus</i>	<i>oppidis</i>	<i>castris</i>
<i>L.</i> Athenis at Athens § 74, 10.			

78. The Third Declension — Consonant Stems

SINGULAR

*a. Masculine or Feminine**b. Neuter*

<i>N.</i> (iūdec s)	<i>iudex</i> ³ judge	<i>virgo maiden</i>	<i>os mouth</i>	<i>flumen</i>
<i>G.</i> (iūdic is)	<i>iudicis</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>oris</i>	<i>fluminis</i>
<i>D.</i> (iudic ī)	<i>iudicī</i>	<i>virginī</i>	<i>ōri</i>	<i>fluminī</i>
<i>Ac.</i> (iudic em)	<i>iudicem</i>	<i>virginem</i>	<i>os</i> § 42	<i>flumen</i>
<i>V.</i> (iūdec s)	<i>iūdex</i> § 46	<i>virgo</i> § 52	<i>os</i>	<i>flumen</i>
<i>Ab.</i> (iūdic e)	<i>iūdice</i>	<i>virgine</i>	<i>ōre</i>	<i>flūmine</i>

¹ Greek nom. § 51.² § 55 a.³ -cs is always written -x.

Gladius Rōmānus.

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>ōra</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>iūdicum</i>	<i>virginum</i>	<i>ōrum</i>	<i>flūminum</i>
<i>D. § 46</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>ōribus</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>ōra</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>ōra</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>ōribus</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>

SINGULAR

	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Base</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Base</i>		
<i>N.</i>	(<i>cūstōd s</i>)	<i>cūstōs</i> ¹	(<i>vulnes</i>)	<i>vulnus</i> ²	(<i>rūs</i>)	<i>rūs</i> ³
<i>G.</i>	(<i>cūstod is</i>)	<i>custōdis</i>	(<i>vulnes is</i>)	<i>vulneris</i> ²	(<i>rus is</i>)	<i>ruris</i> ³
<i>D.</i>	(<i>cūstōd i</i>)	<i>cūstōdī</i>	(<i>vulnes i</i>)	<i>vulnerī</i>	(<i>rūs i</i>)	<i>rūrī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	(<i>cūstōd em</i>)	<i>cūstōdem</i>	(<i>vulnes</i>)	<i>vulnus</i>	(<i>rūs</i>)	<i>rūs</i>
<i>V.</i>	(<i>cūstōd s</i>)	<i>cūstōs</i>	(<i>vulnes</i>)	<i>vulnus</i>	(<i>rūs</i>)	<i>rūs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	(<i>cūstōd e</i>)	<i>cūstōde</i>	(<i>vulnes e</i>)	<i>vulnere</i>	(<i>rūs e</i>)	<i>rūre</i>
<i>L.</i>					(<i>rūs i</i>)	<i>rūre</i>

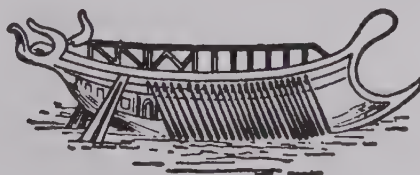
PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>cūstōdēs guards</i>	<i>vulnera wounds</i>	<i>rūra</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cūstōdum</i>	<i>vulnerum</i>	<i>rūrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>cūstōdibus § 42</i>	<i>vulneribus § 42</i>	<i>rūribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>cūstōdēs</i>	<i>vulnera</i>	<i>rūra</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>cūstōdēs</i>	<i>vulnera</i>	<i>rūra</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>cūstōdibus</i>	<i>vulneribus</i>	<i>rūribus</i>

¹ -ds and -ts become -s.

² Final -es becomes -us; -s- between vowels becomes -r-. Cf. *was* and *were*.

³ Cf. *rustic* and *rural*. See §§ 42; 74, 10.



Nāvis Antīqua.

79. Third Declension -i- Stems and Mixed Stems

SINGULAR

a. Masculine or Feminine

b. Neuter

	Base	Stem ¹	Base	Stem ¹	Base
N.	nāvis ship	(parti s)	pars part	(mari)	mare sea
G.	nāvis	(parti s)	partis	(mari s)	maris
D.	nāvi	(parti ī)	parti	(mari ī)	marī
Ac.	nāvim, nāvem	(parti m)	partem	(mari)	mare ²
V.	nāvis	(parti s)	pars § 46	(mari)	mare
Ab.	nāvi, nāve	(parti e)	parte	(mari e)	marī

PLURAL

N.	nāvēs	(parti ēs)	partēs	(mari a)	maria
G.	nāvium	(parti um)	partium	(mari um)	marium
D.	nāvibus	(parti bus)	partibus	(mari bus)	maribus
Ac.	nāvis ³	(parti ēs)	partis	(mari a)	maria
V.	nāvēs	(parti ēs)	partēs	(mari a)	maria
Ab.	nāvibus	(parti bus)	partibus	(mari bus)	maribus

SINGULAR

c. Masculine or Feminine

d. Neuter

N.	Arar	(nūbēs) ⁴	nūbēs cloud	Bibracte	vectigal tax
G.	Araris	(nūbi s)	nūbis	Bibractis	vectigālis
D.	Ararī	(nūbi ī)	nūbī	Bibractī	vectigālī
Ac.	Ararim	(nūbi m)	nūbem	Bibracte	vectigal
V.	Arar	(nūbēs s)	nūbēs	Bibracte	vectigal
Ab.	Ararī	(nūbi e)	nūbe	Bibracte	vectigālī
L.				Bibracte	

¹ Learn the base. Stems are given merely to show the formation.² -i- of the stem remains as -e in a few nouns and most adjectives.³ Printed -ēs in many editions of Latin authors.⁴ The stem nubē- is of the Fifth Declension; nūbi- of the Third.

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> Gādēs <i>Gades</i>	nūbēs	moenia <i>walls</i>	vectigālia
<i>G.</i> Gādium	nūbium	moenium	vectigālium
<i>D.</i> Gādibus	nūbibus	moenibus	vectigālibus
<i>Ac.</i> Gādīs	nūbīs	moenia	vectigālia
<i>V.</i> Gādēs	nūbēs	moenia	vectigālia
<i>Ab.</i> Gādibus	nūbibus	moenibus	vectigālibus
<i>L.</i> Gādibus			

80. Between vowels *u* becomes *v*:

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> (<i>vīs</i>)	vīs <i>force</i>	sus <i>pig</i>	(bou s)	bos <i>cow</i>	Iuppiter ¹
<i>G.</i>	—	suis	(bou is)	bovis	Iovis
<i>D.</i>	—	suī	(bou ī)	bovī	Iovī
<i>Ac.</i> (<i>vi m</i>)	vim	suem	(bou em)	bovem	Iovem
<i>V.</i> (<i>vīs</i>)	vīs	sūs	(bou s)	bos	Iuppiter
<i>Ab.</i> (<i>vi e</i>)	vī	sue	(bou e)	bove	Iove

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> (<i>vīs es</i>)	vīres	suēs	(bou es)	bovēs <i>kine, oxen</i>
<i>G.</i>	virum	suum	(bou um)	boum
<i>D.</i>	vīribus	suibus ¹	(bou bus)	bubus ²
<i>Ac.</i>	virīs -ēs	sues	(bou es)	boves
<i>V.</i>	vīres	suēs	(bou ēs)	boves
<i>Ab.</i>	vīribus	suibus	(bou bus)	bubus ²

¹ Also sūbus.

² Also bōbus.

³ Originally Iou + pater *Father Jove*.



Arcus.

81. a. Fourth Declension

b. Fifth Declension

SINGULAR

Mas. or Fem. Nouns		Neuter	Feminine (except diēs)		
Stem	Base	Base	Stem		
1. N. (domu s)	domus ¹	cornū	(diē s)	diēs	rēs
2. G. (domu is)	domus	cornūs	(diē ī)	diēī ²	reī ²
3. D. (domu ī)	domuī -u	cornu	(diē ī)	diēī	reī
4. Ac. (domu m)	domum	cornu	(diē m)	diem	rem
5. V. (domu s)	domus	cornū	(diē s)	diēs	rēs
6. Ab. (domu e)	domu ⁴	cornū	(diē e)	diē	rē

PLURAL

1. N. (domu es)	domus	cornua	diēs	rēs
2. G. (domu um)	domuum	cornuum	diērum	rērum
3. D. (domu bus)	domibus ³	cornibus	diēbus	rēbus
4. Ac. (domu ēs)	domus ⁴	cornua	diēs	rēs
5. V. (domu es)	domus	cornua	diēs	rēs
6. Ab. (domu bus)	domibus ³	cornibus	diēbus	rēbus

82. The Third Declension need give no trouble. Learn the **Nominative**, **Genitive**, and **Gender** of every noun.

a. If you wish to find the Vocative Singular of any Third Declension noun, it is like the Nominative Singular.

b. The *Accusative Singular* of any *Neuter* Third Declension noun is like the Nominative (given in the vocabulary).

c. The remaining forms of the Singular and all the Plural forms are perfectly regular. To write any one of them cor-

¹ **Domus** (f.) is a model for masculine and feminine nouns of this declension.

² The ending is **-ei** (when not preceded by **-i-**) in **spēs**, **spei** f. *hope*; **fidēs**, **fidei**, f. *faith* and **plēbēs**, **plēbei** f. *common people*. ³ **-ubus** is found in **tribus**, **tribūs** *tribe* and a few others. ⁴ See also § 60.

rectly simply get the *base* (by dropping **-is**, **-um**, or **-ium** from the *genitive* and annex the ending.

d. The preposition **in** governs either the *ablative* or the *accusative*. All nouns in the following phrases are *accusative* for not one of them has an *ablative* ending.

Puer in caput volvitur *the boy tumbles on his head.*

Hoc in aliud tempus confert *he puts this off till another time.*

Consilia in melius refert *she changes her plans for the better.*

In reliquum tempus *for the rest (of) the time ; from now on.*

In castra¹ revertuntur *they are returning to the camp.* Obs. p. 16.

Frumentum in oppida comportant *they gather grain into the towns.*

e. The only *Ablative* endings (§ 55 a, b) are :

-ā, -is, -abus, -e, -ebus, -e, -ī, -ibus, -ō, -obus, -u, -ubus

Any noun (except **nihil**) not ending in **-a, -e, -am, -em, -im, -um** or in **-ās, -es, -īs, -ōs, -us**, if *accusative*, is instantly known to be *neuter* and *singular* and *third* declension, as it can have no ending. § 55 b, e, f.

EXAMPLES

Flumen altum esse scītis *you know the river to be deep.*

Nihil patiuntur vīnī inferri *they allow no wine to be brought in.*

Iter facit *makes a journey.* **Flumen transītis** *you cross the river.*

Propter annī tempus *because-of the time of year.*

Ad mare² *toward the sea.* **Propter vulnus** *because of a wound.*

Thus **flumen, iter, tempus, vulnus, mare** are known to be *neuter singular* and *third* declension because they are *accusative*.

¹ See also page 18, note 1. ² **Mare** is Acc. Neut. **Ad** takes the Acc. Cf. § 79 b. *Accusatives* in **-e** or with no ending are *neuter, singular*, and *third* declension.

83. Adjectives have forms for each gender, and *agree* with the nouns they modify, in *gender, number, and case*.

a. First and Second Declension

b. Third Declension

meus, mea, meum *my, mine*

pār, pār, pār ; Gen. **paris** *equal*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	meus ¹	mea	meum	pār	pār	pār
G.	meī	meae	meī	paris	paris	paris
D.	meō	meae	meō	parī	parī	parī
Ac.	meum	meam	meum	parem	parem	pār ²
V.	mī ³	mea	meum	pār	pār	pār
Ab.	meō	meā	meō	parī	parī	parī
L.	(meī)	meae ⁴	(meī)			

PLURAL

N.	meī	meae	mea	parēs	parēs	paria
G.	meōrum	meārum	meōrum	parium	parium	parium
D.	meīs	meīs	meīs	paribus	paribus	paribus
Ac.	meōs	meās	mea	paris ⁵	paris ⁵	paria
V.	meī	meae	mea	parēs	parēs	paria
Ab.	meīs	meīs	meīs	paribus	paribus	paribus

¹ Cf. § 76.

Cf. § 78 b.

² Note that three forms in the neuter have no case ending.

³ A contract form (for **mee**). Cf. §§ 76, 90.

meae *at my home*.

⁴ Loc. **domī**

⁵ Printed **-ēs** in many editions.



Iūmenta carrōs dūcunt.

84. Present Participles and a few other Third Declension adjectives are declined like **potēns** *able, powerful*. §§ 97, 183 c.

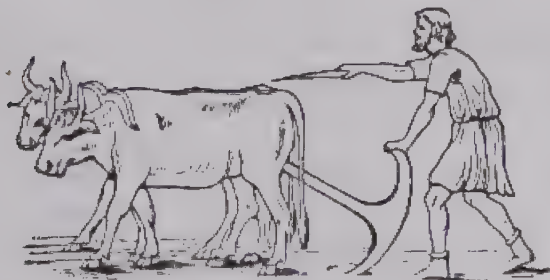
SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
N.	potēns ¹	potēns	potēns
G.	potentis	potentis	potentis
D.	potenti	potenti	potenti
Ac.	potentem	potentem	potēns
V.	potēns	potēns	potēns
Ab.	potenti (-e) ²	potenti (-e)	potenti (-e)

PLURAL			
N.	potentēs	potentēs	potentia
G.	potentium	potentium	potentium
D.	potentibus	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	potentis ³	potentis ³	potentia
V.	potentēs	potentēs	potentia
Ab.	potentibus	potentibus	potentibus

¹ See § 55 b, note 1.

² -e in all participial uses; -i in adjective uses.

³ Written -ēs in many editions of the classics.



Agricola bōbus arat.

85. **audāx, audāx, audāx**; Gen. **audācis**, *bold, venturesome*

SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
N.	audāx ¹ § 46	audāx	audāx
G.	audācis	audācis	audācis
D.	audācī	audācī	audācī
Ac.	audācem	audācem	audāx
V.	audāx	audāx	audāx
Ab.	audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)

PLURAL			
N.	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
G.	audācium	audācium	audācium
D.	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
Ac.	audācis	audācis	audācia
V.	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
Ab.	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

86. The majority of adjectives of the Third Declension are *i*-stems; **vetus, vetus, vetus**, Gen. **veteris** *old*, and a few others are not *i*-stems.

SINGULAR			
N.	vetus ² § 42, 1	vetus	vetus
G.	veteris	veteris	veteris
D.	veterī	veterī	veterī
Ac.	veterem	veterem	vetus
V.	vetus	vetus	vetus
Ab.	vetere	vetere	vetere

¹ Note that *cs* is always written *x*. ² *-s* becomes *-r-* between vowels.



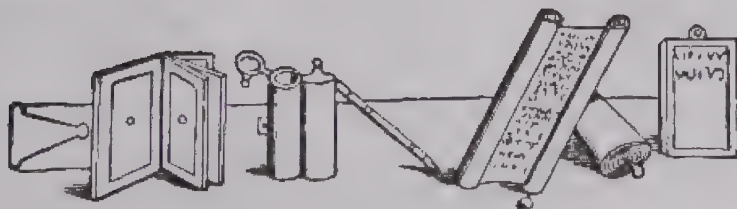
Pilum Rōmānum.

PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.
N.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
G.	veterum	veterum	veterum
D.	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
V.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
Ab.	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus

87. Octōber, Octōbris, Octōbre of *October*.

SINGULAR			
N.	Octōber	Octōbris	Octōbre
G.	Octōbris	Octōbris	Octōbris
D.	Octōbrī	Octōbrī	Octōbrī
Ac.	Octōbrem	Octōbrem	Octōbre
V.	Octōber	Octōbris	Octōbre
Ab.	Octōbrī	Octōbrī	Octōbrī

PLURAL			
N.	Octōbrēs	Octōbrēs	Octōbria
G.	Octōbrium	Octōbrium	Octōbrium
D.	Octōbribus	Octōbribus	Octōbribus
Ac.	Octōbris	Octōbris	Octōbria
V.	Octōbrēs	Octōbrēs	Octōbria
Ab.	Octōbribus	Octōbribus	Octōbribus



Tabulae, Calamus, Liber.

88.

Positive Degree ¹**brevis, brevis, breve, short, brief**

SINGULAR

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	brevis	brevis	breve
<i>G.</i>	brevis	brevis	brevis
<i>D.</i>	brevī	brevī	brevī
<i>Ac.</i>	brevem	brevem	breve
<i>V.</i>	brevis	brevis	breve
<i>Ab.</i>	brevī	brevī	brevī

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	brevēs	brevēs	brevia
<i>G.</i>	brevium	brevium	brevium
<i>D.</i>	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus
<i>Ac.</i>	brevīs	brevīs	brevia
<i>V.</i>	brevēs	brevēs	brevia
<i>Ab.</i>	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus

Observe that the comparatives are not i-stems.

89.

Comparative Degree ²**brevior, brevior, brevius shorter, rather short, too short**

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	brevior	brevior	brevius
<i>G.</i>	breviōris	breviōris	breviōris
<i>D.</i>	breviōrī	breviōrī	breviōrī
<i>Ac.</i>	breviōrem	breviōrem	brevius
<i>V.</i>	brevior	brevior	brevius
<i>Ab.</i>	breviōre	breviōre	breviōre

¹ All adjectives thus far have been of the positive degree.

² The comparative of **brevis, brevis, breve**, is a model for all comparatives except **plūs**.

	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
G.	breviōrum	breviōrum	breviōrum
D.	breviōribus	breviōribus	breviōribus
Ac.	breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
V.	breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra.
Ab.	breviōribus	breviōribus	breviōribus

90.

Superlative Degree

brevissimus, brevissima, brevissimum *shortest, very short*
quam brevissimus as short as possible

	SINGULAR		
N.	brevissimus	brevissima	brevissimum
G.	brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissimī
D.	brevissimō	brevissimae	brevissimō
Ac.	brevissimum	brevissimam	brevissimum
V.	brevissime	brevissima	brevissimum
Ab.	brevissimō	brevissimā	brevissimō

	PLURAL		
N.	brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissima
G.	brevissimōrum	brevissimārum	brevissimōrum
D.	brevissimīs	brevissimīs	brevissimīs
Ac.	brevissimōs	brevissimās	brevissima
V.	brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissima
Ab.	brevissimīs	brevissimīs	brevissimīs

All superlatives, perfect and future participles, and gerundives as well as many adjectives of the positive degree are declined thus. Compare §§ 75-7, 83 a.

91. talis, talis, *tale such, of such a sort*; tālis *such* — quālis *as quālis, quālis, quāle as, such as, and of this sort, of what sort?*

quālis *ascensus est?* *what kind of climb is it?* facilis *easy*

quālis *equus!* *what a horse!* tālis, quālis *Titī such as Titus'*

amicus, amīca, amīcum *friendly* 3 amīcitia -ae f. *friendship*

amīcior, amīcior, amīcius *more friendly, rather kind, too kind*

praesidium *quam amīcissimum as friendly a guard as possible*
fortis, fortis, forte *brave, strong* fortiter *bravely* Cf. § 69

fortissimus, fortissima, fortissimum *very brave, bravest*

audāx, audāx, audāx ; Gen. audācis *bold, daring* audacter *boldly*

audacior, audacior, audacius *bolder, rather bold, too bold*

idōneus, idōneus, idoneum *fit, suitable, adapted* 3 or ad 4

magis idōneus, magis idonea, magis idoneum *more suitable*

potens, potens, potens ; Gen. potentis (cf. § 84) *able, powerful*

potentior -ior -ius *more powerful* potentissimus -a -um *ablest*

prudens, prūdens, prudens *wise, far-sighted* prudenter *wisely*

nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile *famous, prominent, noble*

nōtus -a -um *known, well-known* notior -ior -ius *better known*

nōtissimus -a -um *very well known* notitia -ae f. *knowledge*

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum *beautiful* pulchrē *beautifully*

pulchrior -ior -ius *handsomer* pulcherrimus -a -um *very beautiful*

līber, libera, liberum *free* liberior -ior -ius *freer* Cf. § 69

liberrimus -a -um *freest* libere *freely* liberrime *very freely*

bonus -a -um *good, excellent* melior -ior -ius *better* Cf. § 69

bonitas -tatis f. *goodness* optimus -a -um *best, most excellent*

malus -a -um *bad, evil, ill* peior -ior -ius *worse, poorer*

pessimus -a -um *worst* maleficium -ī n. *mischievous, wrong doing*

similis -is -e *like* 2 or 3 similiter *in a similar way*

similior -ior -ius *more like* simillimus -a -um *very like*

māturus -a -um *early* mature *early* maturius *earlier* Cf. § 69

maturāre *hasten, make haste* Inf. o. maturitās -tātis *ripeness*

maturrimus -a -um *earliest, very early* maturrime *very early*

92. **tantus** -a -um *so great; tantus as large — quantus as quantus, quanta, quantum as, as great as, how great? how large?*
tantus fuit *he was as great — quantus Cicero as Cicero*
latus -a -um *wide late widely latitudō, latitudinis f. width*
latur -ior -ius *wider, too wide latius more widely, too widely*
latissimus -a -um *very wide, widest latissime most widely* § 69
angustus -a -um *narrow angustiae -ārum narrows, defile, straits*
longus -a -um *long longe far longitudō, longitudinis f. length*
longior -ior -ius *longer, more distant longissimus -a -um longest*
brevis -is -e *short breviter briefly brevitās -tatis f. shortness*
altus -a -um *high, deep alte highly altitudō -tūdinis f. height*
altior -ior -ius *higher, deeper altius more highly, more deeply*
humilis -is -e *low, humble humilitās, humilitatis f. lowness*
humilior -ior -ius *lower humillimus -a -um lowest*
facilis -is -e *easy facultas -tatis f. opportunity, privilege (ease)*
facilior -ior -ius *easier facile easily facilius more easily*
facillimus -a -um *easiest facillime most easily, very easily*
difficilis -is -e *hard, difficult difficulter with difficulty*
ingens, ingens, ingens ; Gen. **ingentis** *huge, enormous, great*
magnus -a -um *large, great maior, maior, maius larger*
maximus -a -um *largest magis more maxime especially, most*
parvus -a -um *small, little minor, minor, minus smaller*
minimus -a -um *smallest minus less, not minime not at all*
inferī (those) *below inferior -ior -ius lower* Cf. § 64
īnifimus -a -um or **īmus** -a -um *lowest, bottom-of*
superī (those) *above superior -ior -ius upper, higher, former* ;
superiōra loca *the higher places or heights* § 68 c
supremus -a -um *highest, last; summus -a -um highest, greatest, very prominent, top-of summa -ae f. total, management*
prae w. abl. *before prior, prior, prius former, previous* Cf. § 69
priore nocte *night before last; prius — (quam) sooner, before*
primus -a -um *foremost; prima venit she was the first to come*

Amīcō Marco (dic) (*tell*) *our friend Mark* Cf. § 5 a, b', c.

94. The ever-present case forms allow Latin to express much in few words. In order to render Latin appositives accurately in English, it is often necessary to supply *who*, *which*, *that*, *as* *he*, *since* *it*, *because* *she*, *while* *we*, *when* *he*, *if* *they*, *even if* *I*, *though* *it*, etc., together with some form of the verb *be*. The words supplied vary with the idea conveyed.

- a. Mărcō amicō (dic) (tell) *Mark — a friend;*
 (tell) *Mark who-is-a friend;*
 (tell) *Mark as-he-is-a friend;*
 (tell) *Mark since-he-is-a friend;*
 (tell) *Mark because-he-is-a friend;*
 (tell) *Mark while-he-is-friendlly;*
 (tell) *Mark if-he-is friendlly;*

- b. **Titō inimicō (dīc)** (tell) *Titus even-if-he-is unfriendly*

(is) **Absens** me hostem reddidit (*he*) *made me an enemy (to them)*
though-he-never-saw-me

(eius) Absentis crudelitatem horrent *they shudder-at his cruelty, although-he-is-absent; dread his cruelty when-he-is-absent*

(ei) **Absentī** auxilium mittit *sends him aid while-he-is-away*

(eum) **Absentem** accusarunt *they accused him while-he-was-absent; accused him when-he-was-absent*

Eō invitō, ire nōn audent *they do not dare go because-he-is-unwilling; they do not dare go while he-is-unwilling*

95. Words denoting time or circumstances may be

- a.* A part of the principal assertion (any case) *b.* Entirely aside from the principal assertion (Abl.)

1. (Attached to the subject) 1. Favoring circumstance

Me rogat cōsul

(he) invites me (while or because he is) consul

Eō cōsule, rogor

I am invited (while or because) he (is) consul

2. (Attached to a modifier) 2. Time at which (Abl.)

Mihi cōsulī designatō accidit
it befell me (when I was) consul elect

Me cōsule designātō, accidit
it happened (when or while) I (was) consul elect

3. (Attached to the object) 3. Adverse circumstance (Abl.)

Titum inimicum rogō

I invite Titus (even if he is) unfriendly

Titō inimicō, rogor

I am invited (although or even if) Titus (is my) enemy

96. *a.* The Ablative of time or circumstances may be

A single word denoting a simple fact

nocte *during the night*; **vesperī** (Loc.) *at evening* or

A whole phrase defining a time or complex circumstance

Quod facere imperiō nostrō nōn possunt

and they cannot do this (when) the control (is) ours

Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus accidit

it happened (when) Messala and Piso (were) consuls

b. The Ablative of Manner (often with **cum** or **sine**)

Iure *rightly* **iniuriā** *wrongly* **cum curā** *carefully*

c. The Ablative of Accordance (sometimes with **ex**)

Suō mōre or **(ex) cōsuētūdine suā** *according to his custom*

Formation: *Present Stem* + **ns** + **-ns** + **-ns** Sign **-n-**
-ntis **-ntis** **-ntis** **-nt-**

Not used as predicate adjectives with verb force. § 84

Irr. dans, dans, dans; Gen. dantis *giving*, (who is) *giving*, (as he was) *giving*, (while) *giving*, (when) *giving*, (upon) *giving*; dantes (*those* who are) *giving*, (*they* when they are) *giving*

amantissimus, amantissima, amantissimum *fondet*

portans, carrying, bringing expectans awaiting, looking-for

-e- agens, agents, agents; Gen. agentis *doing*, (while) *driving*
cedens *giving away* legens *reading* petens *asking*
discedens *departing* loquens *speaking* sequens *following*

-i- *capiens, capiens, capiens taking, (while) taking* § 170 **-i-**
fugiens fleeing egrediens going out rapiens snatching
patiens -ens -ens suffering impatiens not patient § 220, 7
patientior -ior -ius more patient patienter patiently § 69
patientissimus most patient patientia -ae f. endurance

-i- *veniens, veniens, veniens*; Gen. *venientis* (while) *coming*
muniens fortifying *oriens raising-self, rising*

-se absens *absent* praesens *present* potens *able, powerful* § 84
iens, iens, iens; Gen. euntis *going, (as he was) going* § 213, 2

98. Perfect Participles (Passive Voice)

Formation: *Participial Stem* + *us -a -um*. Sign *-t-* or *-s-*.
Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90
Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.

M.	F.	N.	SUBJECT ACTED UPON
Irr.	dat ^{us} , dat ^a , dat ^{um}	(<i>having been</i>) given, (<i>being</i>) given	§ 94
-ā-	imperāt ^{us} -a -um	(<i>having been</i>) commanded or demanded	3 p
	parāt ^{us} , parāt ^a , parāt ^{um}	(<i>having been</i>) prepared, made ready	
	paratior, paratior, paratius	<i>better</i> prepared, <i>readier</i>	§ 89
	paratissimus, paratissima, paratissimum	<i>best</i> prepared	§ 90
-ē-	content ^{us} -a -um	<i>contented</i>	
	retent ^{us} -a -um	<i>kept back</i>	
	territ ^{us} terrified	perterrit ^{us} <i>thoroughly</i> frightened	
	mōt ^{us} moved	vis ^{us} <i>seen</i>	
	commot ^{us} , permot ^{us}	<i>roused</i>	
-e-	act ^{us} -a -um	<i>driven, done, set in motion, discussed, spent</i>	
	coact ^{us} -a -um	<i>driven together, gathered, compelled, forced</i>	
-i-	capt ^{us} taken	accept ^{us} <i>received</i>	
	recept ^{us} recovered		
	fact ^{us} done	cōfect ^{us} <i>finished up</i>	
	perfect ^{us} completed		
-i-	audīt ^{us} -a -um	<i>heard</i>	
	exaudīt ^{us} -a -um	<i>overheard</i>	
	munit ^{us} -a -um	<i>fortified</i>	
	munitiō -tiōnis	<i>f. fortification</i>	
	impedit ^{us} (<i>when</i>) hindered	impediment ^{um} -i <i>n. hindrance</i>	
	expedit ^{us} <i>unimpeded</i>	legiō expedita <i>legion without baggage</i>	
	expeditior -ior -ius	<i>more unimpeded, less impeded, easier</i>	
	itum est, ventum est	<i>going was done, they came or went.</i>	
	init ^{us} (<i>being</i>) entered upon	praeterit ^{us} <i>gone by, past, bygone</i>	

99. Active

Perf. Inf.

Passive

(iuss + isse)	(See § 163 b)	iussus	esse (§ 168, n. 3)
iussisse			
(to be having ordered)	(to be	having been ordered)	
(to) have ordered	(to) have	been ordered	

100. Perfect Participles (Deponent)

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90
Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force. §§ 180-2.

SUBJECT ACTING

- ā- cōnātus -a -um *having exerted self or tried or attempted, (after) having tried* cōnata (n. pl.) *things attempted* p. 16, obs. c.
 mirātus -a -um *having wondered, because he wondered* § 94
 morātus -a -um *having detained self, (after) having delayed*
- ē- ausus -a -um *having ventured or having dared*
 veritus -a -um *having feared, because he feared (with reason)*
- e- locūtus -a -um *having spoken, (after or when he had) spoken*
 secutus *having kept self near, (after) having followed*
 cōnsecutus (who had) *followed up* insecutus *having chased*
 usus -a -um *having used* 6 usus -us m. *practice, experience*
- i- gressus -a -um *having walked* egressus *having gone out*
 ingressus *having gone in* prōgressus *having gone forth*
 mortuus *having died, being dead* mors, mortis f. *death*
 passus *having suffered, (after) having endured, allowed, let*
- i- ortus -a -um *having raised self, risen, arisen, started*
 expertus -a -um *having experienced or tried*

101. a. Active

(Deponent verbs have
 no perfect stem, no per-
 fect active.)

	Perf. Ind.	Passive
(ea)	locuta	est
	(she) <i>is</i>	<i>having spoken</i>
	(she) <i>has</i>	<i>spoken</i>
	(she) <i>spoke</i>	

b. Audimus	eam	locūtā (esse)	Cf. § 99.
<i>We hear-about</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>having been speaking</i>	
<i>We hear</i>	<i>that-she</i>	<i>has been speaking</i>	
<i>or</i>	<i>that-she</i>	<i>has spoken or spoke</i>	

102. Future Participles (Active and Deponent)

Participial Stem + urus -ura -ūrum. Sign -ur-.

Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90

Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.

Irr. *datūrus, datura, daturum about to give, going to give, (as he was) going to give, (when he was) going to give* § 94

-ā- *conatūrus, conatura, cōnatūrum intending to try or attempt portaturus -a -um going to carry, intending to take or bring paraturus going to get ready temperaturus going to refrain*

-ē- *habiturus going to regard prohibiturus going to stop persuasurus going to persuade 3 obtenturus going to hold*

-e- *acturus going to drive, do, set in motion, discuss, spend redditūrus going to give back concessurus going to grant neglectūrus going to overlook secutūrus going to follow*

-i- *capturus going to take facturus going to do, make egressurus going to go out cōfecturus going to finish*

-ī- *auditūrus going to hear venturus going to come iturus going to go oritūrus going to rise*

-se *futurus going to be or stay afutūrus going to be away*

103. Future Participles represent an action as going to occur after the time of the main verb.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. <i>Hoc ūnum petō</i>
<i>I ask this one (thing)</i> | <i>Veni nihil aliud petitūrus</i>
<i>I came intending to ask nothing else</i> |
| b. <i>Venturus est (§§ 74, 3)</i>
<i>he is going to come</i> | <i>Itura esse dicitur (§§ 74-3)</i>
<i>she is said to be going to go</i> |
| c. <i>Coactūri erant</i>
<i>they were going to compel</i> | <i>Ituram esse dicitur (§§ 74-3)</i>
<i>it is said that she will go</i> |
| d. <i>Sēsē coacturōs (esse) putavere</i>
<i>thought that they would compel</i> | <i>Sē daturum esse dicit</i>
<i>says that he will give</i> |

104. Future Participles (Passive and Deponent) — Gerundive

Formation: *Present Stem* + **ndus -nda -ndum**. Sign **-nd-**.
 Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90
Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force. § 28 b.

SUBJECT ACTED UPON

Compare the English words:

errands (*things*) *to be wandered or gone after*
 dividend *to be divided* minuend *to be lessened*
 memorandum (*matter that*) *has to be called to mind*
 memoranda (*matters that*) *ought to be called to mind*
 reverend *to be regarded with awe or revered or feared*

Irr. dandus, danda, dandum *to be given, (deserving) to be given*
 (that *ought*) *to be given, (that have) to be given, (that*
must) be given, (that are) to be (or should be) given

-ā- expectandus -a -um *to be awaited, to be waited for; ex-*
spectandum est waiting ought to be done; one must wait
 transportandus -a -um *to be carried, brought, or taken over*

-e- habendus *to be had or held* retinendus *to be kept back*
 verendus *to be feared* providendus *to be looked out for*

-e- concedendus *to be granted* ferendus *to be endured*
 dividendus *to be divided* conferendus *to be compared*
 agendus *to be done, driven* tremendus *to be trembled at*

-i- capiendus *to be taken* recipiendus *to be taken back*
 faciendus *to be done* progrediendum *to be gone forth*

-i- audiendus *to be heard* muniendus *to be fortified*
 veniendum *to be come* partiendus *to be separated*
 eundum est travelling *is to be done, one must go*

105. The Dative is used to assert ownership. § 5 e.

Mihi studium est there is a pursuit for me; I have an occupation;

Cf. colloquial English "Where is the cover to the box?"

a. Liber legendus est	<i>the book is to be read</i> <i>the book must be read</i>
b. Liber mihi est (there is a book for me) (a book belongs to me) <i>I have a book</i>	Liber mihi legendus est <i>I have a book (that is) to be read</i> <i>I have a book to read</i> <i>I have to read a book</i> <i>a book ought to be read by me</i>
c. Legitur <i>it is read,</i> <i>reading is done</i>	Lectum est <i>it was read,</i> <i>reading was done</i>
d. Mihi legendum est	Legendum est <i>it must be read,</i> <i>reading is to be done</i>
<i>I have reading that is to be done</i> <i>I have reading to do</i> <i>I have to read I ought to read</i>	
Mihi legendum (esse) putō	<i>I think I have to read</i>
Non exspectandum sibi statuit	<i>decided he ought not to wait</i>
e. Obsides dandī sunt	<i>there are hostages to be given</i>
Obsides dandōs curō	<i>I see to giving the hostages</i>

(a) **Helvetiōrum** iniurias (b) **populī Rōmānī** novī
(I know *the Helvetians* injuries of the Roman people)

c. Also with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* and nouns and adjectives denoting *desire*, *endurance*, etc.

contumeliae obliviscitur *becomes forgetful of the outrage* § 223 b
amans patriae *fond of country* impatiens morae *tired of delay*
patientia sitis *endurance of thirst* studium bellandi *desire to war*

108. *a. uter utra utrum; G. utrius, D. utri which (of two)*

SINGULAR

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>
<i>L.</i>	—	—	<i>utrobi</i> § 119 <i>e</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utrae</i>	<i>utra</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>utrōrum</i>	<i>utrārum</i>	<i>utrōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>utris</i>	<i>utris</i>	<i>utris</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>utrōs</i>	<i>utrās</i>	<i>utra</i>
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>utris</i>	<i>utris</i>	<i>utris</i>

b. uter- -one (of two) -que each, every-; uterque either, both

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>uterque</i>	<i>utraque</i>	<i>utrumque</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>utriusque</i>	<i>utriusque</i>	<i>utriusque</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>utrique</i>	<i>utrique</i>	<i>utrique</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>utrumque</i>	<i>utramque</i>	<i>utrumque</i>
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>utrōque</i>	<i>utrāque</i>	<i>utrōque</i>
<i>L.</i>	—	—	<i>utrobique</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>utrique</i>	<i>utraeque</i>	<i>utraque</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>utrōrumque</i>	<i>utrārumque</i>	<i>utrōrumque</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>utrisque</i>	<i>utrisque</i>	<i>utrisque</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>utrōsque, etc.</i>	<i>utrāsque, etc.</i>	<i>utraque, etc.</i>

109. a.

SINGULAR

N.	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	alteri	alteri	alteri
Ac.	alterum	alteram	alterum
V.	—	—	—
Ab.	alterō	alterā	alterō

PLURAL

N.	alteri	alterae	altera
G.	alterōrum, etc.	alterārum, etc.	alterōrum, etc.

alter, **altera**, **alterum** *the other* (of the two) *the one . . . the other*
uter, **utra**, **utrum** *which* (one of the two) **utrum** *whether . . . an or*
uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque** *either* (of the two), *each* (of two) *both*
neuter, **neutra**, **neutrum** *neither* (of two) Cf. §§ 65, 71

b. Genitives used to denote possession, etc.

Caesaris <i>Caesar's, of Caesar</i>	patris <i>father's</i>	patrum <i>fathers'</i>
huius <i>(this person's etc.) his, her, its</i>		hōrum <i>their</i>
istius <i>(of that man by you) his, her, its</i>		istōrum <i>their</i>
illius <i>(yonder man's) his, her, its</i>		illōrum <i>their</i>
cuius <i>and-his, and-her, and-its, whose</i>		quōrum <i>and-their, whose</i>
eius <i>(this or that man's) his, her, its</i>		eōrum <i>their</i>
eiusdem <i>his also, her also, its also</i>		eōrundem <i>their also</i>

c. Adjectives possessive in meaning (agreeing with nouns).

Caesarianus , Caesariana , Caesarianum <i>Caesar's, of Caesar</i>	
paternus -a -um <i>father's</i>	maternus -a -um <i>mother's</i>
Romanus , Rōmana , Rōmanum <i>Rome's, of Rome, Roman</i>	
suus , sua , suum <i>his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)</i>	
alienus , aliena , alienum <i>another's, of another, of others</i>	
meus -a -um <i>my (of me)</i>	noster , nostra , nostrum <i>our (of us)</i>
tuus -a -um <i>thy (of thee)</i>	vester , vestra , vestrum <i>your (of you)</i>

110.

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> qui, quis (§§ 113–114)	quae (qua § 113)	quod, quid (§ 113)
<i>G.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui
<i>Ac.</i> quem	quam	quod, quid (§ 113)
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quō (qui §§ 113–115)	quā (qui)	quō (qui § 114)
<i>L.</i> —	—	ubi (cubi § 113)

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> qui	quae	quae (qua § 113)
<i>G.</i> quōrum	quarum	quōrum
<i>D.</i> quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i> quōs	quās	quae (qua § 113)
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quibus	quibus	quibus

111.

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> quisque	quaeque	quodque, quidque ¹
<i>G.</i> cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
<i>D.</i> cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Ac.</i> quemque	quamque	quodque, quidque
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quōque	quāque	quōque
<i>L.</i> —	—	ubique

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> qui	quaeque	quaeque
<i>G.</i> quōrumque	quarumque	quōrumque
<i>D.</i> quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
<i>Ac.</i> quōsque	quāsque	quaeque
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

¹ The form *quidque* is used as a pronoun; *quodque*, as an adjective.

112. *a. is this or that (anywhere), such, he, etc.* § 115

SINGULAR

<i>N. is he, it, this, that</i>	<i>ea this, she, it</i>	<i>id this, that, it</i>
<i>G. eius his, its, of it</i>	<i>eius her, of her, its</i>	<i>eius its, of that</i>
<i>D. ei (to) him, it, that</i>	<i>eī (to) her, it, that</i>	<i>eī it, (to) that</i>
<i>Ac. eum him, it, this</i>	<i>eam her, it, this</i>	<i>id it, this, that</i>
<i>V. ———</i>	<i>———</i>	<i>———</i>
<i>Ab. eō him, by it, this</i>	<i>ea her, by it, that</i>	<i>eō by it, that</i>
<i>L. ———</i>	<i>———</i>	<i>ibi in it, there</i> § 28

PLURAL

<i>N. ei, ii¹ they, those</i>	<i>eaē they, these</i>	<i>ea they, these</i> (§ 115)
<i>G. eōrum their, of these</i>	<i>eārum their, etc.</i>	<i>eōrum their, of those</i>
<i>D. eis (to) them, those</i>	<i>eīs (to) them, etc.</i>	<i>eīs (to) them, those</i>
<i>Ac. eōs them, these</i>	<i>eās them, those</i>	<i>ea them, those things</i>
<i>V. ———</i>	<i>———</i>	<i>———</i>
<i>Ab. eis (by) them, etc.</i>	<i>eīs (by) them, etc.</i>	<i>eīs with them, etc.</i>

b. idem (is + dem) this too, that also, he also, same

SINGULAR

<i>N. idem he also, same</i>	<i>eadem she too, same</i>	<i>idem it also</i>
<i>G. eiusdem his also</i>	<i>eiusdem her also, its</i>	<i>eiusdem its also</i>
<i>D. eidem him also, it</i>	<i>eidem her also, it</i>	<i>eidem it also</i>
<i>Ac. eundem him also, it</i>	<i>eandem her also, it</i>	<i>idem it also</i>
<i>V. ———</i>	<i>———</i>	<i>———</i>
<i>Ab. eōdem him also, it</i>	<i>eādem her also, it</i>	<i>eōdem by it also</i>
<i>L. ———</i>	<i>———</i>	<i>ibidem in it also</i>

PLURAL

<i>N. eidem² they also</i>	<i>eaedem they also</i>	<i>eadem they also</i>
<i>G. eōrundem their</i>	<i>eārundem their</i>	<i>eōrundem their</i>
<i>D. eīsdem³ them also</i>	<i>eīsdem them also</i>	<i>eīsdem them also</i>

¹ Also *i* and *D.* and *Ab.* *Pl.* *iīs.* ² Also *īdem, idem.* ³ Also *iīsdem.*

113.

Indefinite

Quī is indefinite after **quī** *who*, **quod** *what*, **ubi** *when*, **ut** *when*, *as, that*; **nō** *that . . . not*, **sī** *if*, **nisi** *unless*, etc.

quī, qua, quod (adj.) *any (some)*; **sī qua res** (Nom.) *if any thing*
quis (indef. pron.) *one, anyone*; **quid** *anything*, (Acc.) *any, at all*
quod auxilium *some sort of help*; **quid auxili** *some (of) help*
quō *to any place* **cubi** *in any place* **cunde** *from any side*

114.

Interrogatives

quī? **quae?** **quod?** (adj.) *what? what-sort-of? what kind of?*
quis? (pron.) *what one? who?* **quid?** *what?* (Acc.) *to what extent?*
quid audet? *to what extent does he dare? how bold is he?*
quī puer? *what sort of boy?* **quis puer?** (§ 94) *who when-a-boy?*
quae puella? *what sort of girl?* **quid cōsili?** *what (of) plan?*
quō? *to what place?* **ubi?** *in what place?* **unde?** *from whence?*
quā re? (or **quī?** Ab.) *on account of what? why?* **quīn** *why not?*



Militēs Galliī armātī.

115. a.

Relatives

quī, quae, quod (adj.) *which, and-this, that-this, since-this;*

pl. *and-these*; **quae res** *and-this thing, and-this fact*

quae castra *and-this camp*; **quī locus** *and-this place*

quī pron. (one) *who, and-he, that, that-he, as, since-he, though-he*

is quī he who, such that-he; **ei quī** *they who, those who*

quae pron. *who, and-she, that, that-she, as, since-she, though-she*

ea quae *she who, such that-she*; **eae quae** *they who, those who*

quod pron. *which, and-it, what, that, that-it, as, since-it, though-it*

id quod *that which*; **ea quae** *those (things) which*

quod (Ac.) *to what extent*; **quod potest** *as-far-as he can*

quīn pron. *who . . . not; that . . . not; but, which . . . not*

b. **quod** *that, because* **quod sī** *but if* **quod nisi** *but unless*

quō (adv.) *whither, to which (place), and-to it, and-to them* § 119 c, d

ubi *in which, at which, where, and-in it*; w. Ind. *when* § 119 c, f

unde (adv.) *whence, from which, and-from it, and-from them*

cum (quom or um-) w. Ind. *when, as* **tum cum** *at the time when*

w. Sub. *when, as, just-as (of time), while, since, although*

ut, utī w. Ind. *as, when*; w. Sub. (in order) *that, (so) that; how?*

ita utī *just as (of manner)* **quī** (Ab.) *how, why* **quīn** *why not*

c. **cum primum, ubi primum, ut primum** *when first, as soon as*

quī cum *and when he* **quod ubi audit** *and when he hears it*

quī sī *and if he*; **quō plus, eō melius** *the more the better* (§ 74, 19)

quā rē or **quām ob rem** *why, and on account of this, and-therefore*



Carrus bōbus ductus.

116. a.

Personal Pronouns

FIRST PERSON

SECOND PERSON

THIRD PERSON

SINGULAR

N. ego I § 28	tū thou	§§ 112, 115, 118 b
G. meī of me ¹	tui of thee (of you) ¹	
D. mihi me, to me	tibi thee, to thee	
Ac. mē me	tē thee (you)	wanting
V. —	tū thou (you)	
Ab. mē me	tē thee	
mēcum with me	tēcum with thee	
dē mē about me	abs tē by thee, from thee	

b.

PLURAL

N. nōs we	vōs you, ye	§§ 112, 115, 118 b
G. nostrum, nostrī of us	vestrum, ² vestrī ¹ of you	
D. nobis us, to us	vobis you, to you	
Ac. nōs us	vos you	
V. —	vōs you, ye	wanting
Ab. nobis us	vobis you	
nōbiscum with us	vōbiscum with you	
in nobis among us	ā vōbis by you, from you	

c.

Reflexive Pronouns

SINGULAR

N. —	—	—
G. meī ¹ of myself	tui ¹ of thyself	sui of himself ³
D. mihi myself, me	tibi thyself, thee	sibi himself, him
Ac. me myself, me	te thyself, thee	se, sese himself, him
V. —	—	—
Ab. me myself, me	te thyself, thee	se, sese himself, him

¹ Never means *my* or *your*; § 107 b. ² §§ 66 c, 72. ³ Also of *herself* or of *itself*.

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
PLURAL		
N. — § 74, 3	—	—
G. <i>nostrī of ourselves</i>	<i>vestrī of yourselves</i>	<i>sui of themselves</i>
D. <i>nōbīs ourselves, us</i>	<i>vōbīs yourselves</i>	<i>sibi themselves, them</i>
Ac. <i>nōs ourselves, us</i>	<i>vōs yourselves, you</i>	<i>sē, sēsē themselves</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>nōbīs ourselves, us</i>	<i>vōbīs yourselves, you</i>	<i>sē, sēsē themselves</i>

117. a.

SINGULAR

M.	F.	N.
N. <i>alius</i> § 65	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i> § 71
G. —	—	— ¹
D. <i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>
Ac. <i>aliū</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliud</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>
L. —	—	<i>alibi elsewhere</i>

PLURAL

N. <i>aliī</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
G. <i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>
D. <i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>
Ac. <i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>

¹ The genitive of *alius* has almost fallen into disuse on account of the prominence of the possessive adjective *aliēnus* -a -um *another's, others'*; *alterius* is sometimes used for the older *alius* (found in *alius modi*).



Tuba.

b.

SINGULAR

M.	F.	N.
N. <i>hic this, he, it</i>	<i>haec this, she, it</i>	<i>hoc this, it</i>
G. <i>huius of this, his</i>	<i>huius of this, her</i>	<i>huius of this, its</i>
D. <i>huic (to) him, it</i>	<i>huic (to) her, it</i>	<i>huic (to) this, it</i>
Ac. <i>hunc this, him, it</i>	<i>hanc this, her, it</i>	<i>hoc this, it</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>hōc him, by it</i>	<i>hāc her, by this</i>	<i>hōc by this or it</i>
L. —	—	<i>hic in this, here</i>

PLURAL

N. <i>hi these, they</i>	<i>hae these, they</i>	<i>haec these, they</i>
G. <i>hōrum their</i>	<i>hārum of these, their</i>	<i>hōrum their, of them</i>
D. <i>his these, them</i>	<i>his these, them</i>	<i>his these, them</i>
Ac. <i>hōs these, them</i>	<i>hās these, them</i>	<i>haec these, them</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>his them, by these</i>	<i>his them, by these</i>	<i>his them, by these</i>

118. a. The Intensive Adjective, *ipse self, very*, adds emphasis but does not reflect action upon the subject. Cf. § 116 c.

SINGULAR

N. <i>ipse</i> ¹	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
G. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>
D. <i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>
Ac. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsō</i>

The plural is like the plural of *alius*, § 117 a.

Note the -e (for -us).

b. Irregular Adjectives. (Model *ūnus*, § 120. Cf. § 108.)

unus -a -um <i>one, only (one)</i>	ullus -a -um <i>any, any (one)</i>
sōlus -a -um <i>alone</i>	nullus -a -um <i>not-any, no, none</i>
tōtus -a -um <i>whole, total, all (of single things; cf. <i>omnis</i> all (of a quantity), every, all (many)</i>	nonnullus -a -um <i>some; pl. several, not-a-few</i> §§ 64-65
alius -a -ud ¹ <i>else, one, another; alii some . . . alii others</i>	ipse -a -um (§ 116 c) <i>self, very</i> § 65

1. **hic**,² **haec**, **hoc** *this* (by me or of mine); *he, she, it, latter*
2. **iste**,¹ **ista**, **istud**¹ *that* (by you, you mentioned); *he, she, it*
3. **ille**, **illa**, **illud** *that* (of his or yonder); *he, she, it, former*

c. Nemo (for *nē + homō*) and **nihil** (for *nihilum*)

N. nemō <i>no-one</i>	nihil, nīl	nihil reliquī <i>no remainder</i> § 72
G. (nullus)	nihilī	nihilī est <i>is of no value</i> § 73
D. nēmīnī	—	Ac. nihil ³ commotus <i>nothing</i>
Ac. nēmīnem	nihil, nīl	<i>daunted, not alarmed at all</i>
V. —	—	nōnnihil ³ commōtus <i>somewhat</i>
Ab. (nullō § 65)	nihilō	<i>alarmed, alarmed to-some-extent</i>
		nihilō minus <i>less by-nothing</i>

¹ Note the **-e** (for **-us**) and **-ud** (for **-um**). ² For **hi-ce**, **hae-ce**, **hod-ce**.

³ The accusative is used to denote *extent of time, space, action, etc.*, § 74, 17.



Alii castellum custodiunt alii quiete utuntur.

119. a. The best way to master compound pronouns and adverbs is to make a careful study of the elements from which they are built up.

The original meaning of **quis** was evidently *one* (*some-one* or *anyone*) but when it was spoken in the manner of a question it meant *which-one?* The original meaning of **quī** was probably *one*, but when it was used to introduce a descriptive clause it took on the meaning *who*, just as the English *once* (meaning *one time*) often assumes the character of a relative adverb and means *when-once*, as in :

“Trees grow rapidly, *once* they have become rooted.”

Closely allied with **quī** *and-he, who, quis one and quis? which one? what one? who?* are the adverbs below :

quō <i>whither, to</i>	ubi (¹ quobi) <i>cubi,</i>	unde (¹ quonde) <i>cunde,</i>
<i>which place, to</i>	<i>in which place,</i>	<i>from which place,</i>
<i>whom, and to it</i>	<i>where, among whom</i>	<i>whence, from whom</i>

cum (quom or um-)	quando <i>when, at a</i>	us- <i>where, in a</i>
<i>when, at a time</i>	<i>time; when?</i>	<i>place, at a point</i>
quam <i>in a degree,</i>	ut, utī <i>in a way,</i>	qua (via or parte) <i>by</i>
<i>as, how? than</i>	<i>how? as, that</i>	<i>a way, on a side</i>

c. Pronouns (Adjectives) ²

d. Place to which or persons to whom

hic <i>he, it</i>	haec <i>she, it</i>	hoc <i>it</i>	huc <i>to this place, to it,</i>
<i>this (by me or that I mention)</i>			<i>to them, hither</i> § 61 b
iste <i>he, it</i>	ista <i>she, it</i>	istud <i>it</i>	isto, istūc <i>to that place</i>
<i>that (by you), that (you mention)</i>			<i>(where you are), to it</i>
ille <i>he, it</i>	illa <i>she, it</i>	illud <i>it</i>	illō, illuc <i>to that place</i>
<i>that (of his, of theirs), that yonder</i>			<i>(yonder or by them), to it</i>

¹ Not used ; **qu-** dropped, cf. **ubi**, **umquam**. ² Continued on p. 182.

119. b. SIMPLE ELEMENTS

alic-, aliqu- <i>some, any</i>	quam diū <i>as long as</i>
-dam <i>a certain</i>	quī <i>one</i>
-dem <i>also, same</i> <i>(identical)</i>	quom ¹ <i>at a time</i>
-libet ² <i>pleases</i>	is <i>he, that</i>
-nam? <i>for? pray?</i>	ita <i>so, thus</i>
-piam <i>some</i>	quī <i>who</i>
-quam (with a neg- ative) <i>any-</i>	ubi? <i>where?</i>
-que <i>each, § 65</i> <i>every,</i> <i>universally</i>	quis <i>one</i>
	qua <i>in a way</i>
	um- ¹ <i>at a time</i>
	quis <i>one § 113</i>
	cum <i>at a time</i>
	nam <i>for</i>
-vis ² <i>you wish</i> <i>§ 186</i> <i>(doubling) -ever</i>	quam paucī <i>how few</i>
-cumque <i>-soever</i>	quis <i>who</i>
-versus <i>-ward</i>	quī <i>who</i>
-rsus (-rsum) <i>-ward re- back</i>	ad <i>to</i>

COMPOUNDS

aliquamdiu <i>for some length of time, for a while</i>
quidam <i>a certain (one)</i>
quondam <i>at a certain time</i>
idem <i>he also, the same</i>
itidem, item, <i>likewise</i>
quilibet <i>who you please</i>
ubinam <i>where in the world?</i>
quispiam <i>some one</i>
nequaquam <i>by no means</i>
umquam <i>at any time, ever</i>
quisque <i>each, every (one)</i>
-cumque <i>-ever, -soever</i>
plerique <i>most of § 76</i>
namque <i>for, at any rate</i>
quamvis paucī <i>how few you like, however few</i>
quisquis <i>whoever</i>
quicumque <i>whosoever</i>
adversus <i>to-ward Cf. 217 c</i>
rursus <i>backwards, again</i>

e. *Place in which or
persons among whom*³f. *Place from which or
persons from whom*g. *Way by which or
side on which*hīc *in this place, in
it, among them*hinc *from this place,
from it, hence*hac *by this way,
on this side, here*istīc *in that place
there (by you)*istinc *thence, from
there (by you)*istāc *by that way,
there (by you)*illīc *in that place,
among them*illinc *thence, from
there (by them)*illa, illac *on that
side (yonder)*¹ Another form of **cum** *at a time, when.*² Verb.³ Continued on p. 183.

119. c. Adjective Pronouns

is *he, it, this, that; ea she; id it;*
 (pl.) *these, those, they*
idem *he also, the same*

qui *who, that, as, and-he, and-it*

quis? *who? which?* **quid?** *what?*

quis *one, anyone* **quid** *anything*
quispiam *someone* **quippiam** *-thing*
quisquam *any-one* **quicquam** *anything*

aliquis *someone* **aliquid** *something*
quisquis } *who-* **quicquid** } *what-*
quicumque } *ever* **quodcumque** } *ever*

alius *other, another, else*

uter? *whether? which (one of the two)?*

neuter *neither (one of the two)*

uterque *each (one of the two)*

quisque *every, each (one)* **quidque** *everything*

quidam *a, a certain (one), certain*

quinam? *(for) who? who-in-the-world?*
who pray? pray tell who?

quilibet } *who-it-pleases, who you please,*
quivis } *anyone you please*

d. Place to which or persons to whom

eō *to this place, to it, thither, on them*

eōdem *to this place also, to it also*

quō *to which place, and to this place*

quō? *to what place? in which direction?*

quō *to any place*

quōpiam *to some place*

quōquam *to any place, in any direction*

aliquō *to some place*

quōquō } *to what-*
quōcumque } *ever place*

aliō *to another place*

utrō? *to which place? in which direction?*

neutrō *to neither place, in neither direction*

utrōque *to both places, in both directions*

quōque-versum *in every direction Cf. 61 b*

quōnam? *to what place in the world?*

quōlibet } *to what place*
quōvis } *you please*

<i>e. Place in which or persons among whom</i>	<i>f. Place from which or persons from whom</i>	<i>g. Way by which or side on which</i>
<i>ibi in this place, in it, here</i>	<i>inde from this place, from it, hence</i>	<i>eā by this way, on this side, here</i>
<i>ibidem in it also, in the same place</i>	<i>indidem from the same place, from it also</i>	<i>eādem by the same route, there also</i>
<i>ubi in which place, and in it, where</i>	<i>unde from which place, and from it, whence</i>	<i>quā and on this side, where</i>
<i>ubi? in what place? where? in whom?</i>	<i>unde? from what place? whence? where from?</i>	<i>quā? by which way? on which side?</i>
<i>cubi in any place uspiam any-where usquam any-where umquam ever</i>	<i>cunde from any place undecumque</i>	<i>quā in any way nequiquam in no nequāquam way, by no means</i>
<i>alicubi any-where ubiubi wher- ubicumque ever</i>	<i>alicunde from any side undeunde undecumque</i>	<i>aliquā in any way quāquā quācumque</i>
<i>alibi elsewhere</i>	<i>aliunde from other sides</i>	<i>aliās elsewhere</i>
<i>utrobi? in which place (of two)?</i>	<i>utrinde? from which side (of two)?</i>	<i>utrā? on which side (of two)?</i>
<i>neutrobi in neither place (of two)</i>		<i>neutrā on neither side, neither way</i>
<i>utrobi-que in both places, in both</i>	<i>utrimque from either side or direction</i>	<i>utrāque on either side, both ways</i>
<i>ubique everywhere usque all the way</i>	<i>undique from every side, on all sides</i>	<i>quāque on every side, every way</i>
<i>quondam one time</i>		
<i>ubinam? where in the world?</i>		<i>quānam? by what way in the world?</i>
<i>ubilibet where you ubivis like</i>	<i>undelibet from where undevīs you please</i>	<i>quālibet by what way you please</i>

120. a.

SINGULAR

N. <i>ūnus one</i>	<i>ūna one</i>	<i>ūnum one</i>
G. <i>ūnīus of one</i>	<i>ūnīus of one</i>	<i>ūnīus of one</i>
D. <i>ūnī one</i>	<i>ūnī one</i>	<i>ūnī one</i>
Ac. <i>ūnum one</i>	<i>ūnam one</i>	<i>ūnum one</i>
Ab. <i>ūnō one</i>	<i>ūnā one</i>	<i>ūnō by one, etc.</i>

PLURAL

N. <i>ūnī only (ones)</i>	<i>ūnae only (ones)</i>	<i>ūna only (ones)</i>
G. <i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>
D. <i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>
Ac. <i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās</i>	<i>ūna</i>
Ab. <i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>

b.

PLURAL

N. <i>duo two</i>	<i>duae two</i>	<i>duo two</i>
G. <i>duōrum of two</i>	<i>duārum of two</i>	<i>duōrum of two</i>
D. <i>duōbus two</i>	<i>duābus two</i>	<i>duōbus two</i>
Ac. <i>duōs (duo) two</i>	<i>duās two</i>	<i>duo two</i>
Ab. <i>duōbus two</i>	<i>duābus two</i>	<i>duōbus by two</i>

c.

PLURAL

N. <i>trēs three</i>	<i>trēs three</i>	<i>tria three</i>
G. <i>trium of three</i>	<i>trium of three</i>	<i>trium of three</i>
D. <i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus three</i>
Ac. <i>trīs three</i>	<i>trīs three</i>	<i>tria three</i>
Ab. <i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus by three</i>

d. The next cardinal numeral declined is **ducentī -ae -a** *two hundred*. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **unus**. **Mille** *thousand* is indeclinable.

e. **Mīlia** *thousands* is a neuter noun declined like **tria** *three* and is followed by the Genitive Case. (See § 72.)

Mille librī *1000 books*

Duo mīlia librōrum *2000 books*

quot? <i>how many?</i>	quotus? <i>what one?</i>	quotenī? <i>how many each?</i>
unus una unum	prīmus <i>first</i>	singuli <i>one each</i>
duo duae duo	alter <i>second</i>	bīnī <i>two each</i>
trēs trēs tria	tertius <i>third</i>	ternī <i>three each</i> p. 28
quattuor iv.	quartus <i>fourth</i>	etc.
quinque v.	quīntus <i>fifth</i>	f. (Cf. p. 29 and § 78 a)
sex vi.	sextus <i>sixth</i>	simplex <i>simple</i>
septem	septimus	duplex <i>double, twofold</i>
octō	octāvus	triplex <i>triple,</i>
novem ix.	nōnus	etc.
decem x.	decimus	quotiens? <i>how many</i>
ūndecim xi.	ūndecimus	<i>times?</i> p. 29 and § 67
duodecim	duodecimus	semel <i>once</i>
tredecim	tertius decimus	bis <i>twice</i>
quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	ter <i>thrice, 3-times</i>
quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quater <i>4-times</i>
sēdecim	sextus decimus	etc.
septendecim	septimus decimus	g. Elements
duodēvigintī	duodēvicēnsimus	-decim <i>-teen -us -tus -th</i>
ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēnsimus	vī- <i>twain, twen-</i>
vigintī	vicēnsimus	-gintī or -gintā <i>-ty</i>
vigintī ūnus	vicēnsimus prīmus	-de- <i>from -iens -times</i>
duodētrigintā	duodētricēnsimus	-cent- or -gent- <i>hundred</i>
ūndētrigintā	ūndētricēnsimus	-plex -plicis -ple <i>-fold</i>
trigintā	tricēnsimus	compare audāx § 85
quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	prīmum <i>first (thing)</i>
quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	deinde <i>then, next</i>
sexāgintā	sexagēnsimus	tertium <i>third (thing)</i>
septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	prīmum <i>for the 1st time</i>
octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	iterum <i>again, 2nd time</i>
nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	tertium <i>for the 3rd time</i>
centum	cēntēnsimus	quārtum <i>for the 4th time</i>

121. The plain Infinitive is the simplest form of the verb and cannot be satisfactorily defined ¹ except by telling where it occurs. Infinitives are found as objects :

a. after <i>may</i>	It <i>may be</i>	Esse potest
	He <i>might wish</i>	Velle posset
after <i>can</i>	She <i>can read</i>	Legere potest
after <i>will</i>	He <i>would not go</i>	Irē nolebat § 186
after <i>do</i> , etc.	<i>Don't speak</i> so	Noli ita loqui
b. after <i>to</i>	He <i>ought to read</i> it	Id legere debet
	<i>Ready to read</i>	Ad legendum paratus
	Is <i>is compelled to give</i>	Dare cogitur § 155
	I know it <i>to be</i> Mark	Eum Marcum esse scio
c. and as subject of a verb or predicate noun.		
subj.	Call is speak	Vocāre loqui est
pred.	Call is <i>speak</i>	Vocare loqui est

122. Infinitives with subject Accusative are used in object clauses :

after <i>let</i>	He lets <i>them go</i> (allows <i>them to go</i>)	Eōs ire patitur § 142
after <i>bid</i>	He bids <i>us try</i> (orders <i>us to try</i>)	Nōs cōnārī iubet Cf. § 153
after <i>see</i>	They saw <i>me go</i> (observed <i>that I went</i>)	Mē ire vidērunt
after <i>hear</i>	I heard <i>her speak</i> (heard <i>that she spoke</i>)	Eam loqui audīvī § 142

¹ We find about half the infinitives in ordinary English are introduced by the preposition *to*. English infinitives not introduced by *to* are nearly always translated by Latin infinitives, whereas a large part of those introduced by *to* are not translated by infinitives in Latin (see §§ 148-9).

123. Infinitives in **-ing** (Gerunds) may be used as subject, as a predicate noun, or as object of a verb or preposition.

a. subj.	Seeing is believing	Vidēre crēdere est
b. pred.	Calling is speaking	Vocāre loquī est
c. obj.	I began calling him	Eum vocāre coepī
d. w. prep.	Finds upon inquiring	Reperit in quaerendō
	He prevents me from going	Mē ire prohibet
	I am prevented from going	Īre prohibeor

124.

ACTIVE
(subject acting)

PASSIVE
(subject acted upon)
(Deponent § 182)

Infinitive

present

-re (-se or -le)

-rī, -ī

Indicative or

Subjunctive

(subject)

1st Pers. sing. **-ō, -m**

-ī¹

-or, -r

(*I*)

2nd Pers. sing. **-s**

-istī

-ris, -re

(*thou*)

3rd Pers. sing. **-t**

-it

-tur

(*he, she, it*)

1st Pers. plur. **-mus**

-imus

-mur

(*we*)

2nd Pers. plur. **-tis**

-istis

-minī

(*you*)

3rd Pers. plur. **-nt**

-ērunt or

-ntur

(*they*)

-ēre

Imperative Pres.

2nd Pers. sing.

—

-re

(*thou*)

2nd Pers. plur.

-te

-minī

(*ye, you*)

125. The **ending** of an Infinitive shows merely whether its subject is *acting* or *acted upon* (in deponent verbs *acting upon itself* or in some way *concerning itself*).

The **ending** of a Finite Verb shows (a) whether the subject it refers to is *I* or *we*, *thou* or *you*, or some *other person* or

¹ Used in the Perfect Indicative Active only. See § 168, note.

persons; (b) whether it is *acting* or *being acted upon* (in deponent verbs *acting on for self*. §§ 180-2).

126. The **Present Stem** of a Latin verb is found by dropping **-re**, **-rī** or **-ī** from the *present infinitive*. Cf. § 163.

In **-e-** verbs restore **-e-** where it disappears before **-ī**.

In **-i-** verbs restore **-i-** where it becomes **-e-** before **r** or has disappeared before **-ī**.

	1	2	3	3	3 i	3 i	4
	-ā-	-e-	-e-	-e-	-i-	-i-	-ī-
Pres.)	vocāre	iubēre	legere	—	capere	—	audire
Inf. {	vocarī	iuberī	legī	ūtī	capī	pati	audirī
Pres.)	vocā-	iube-	lege-	ūte-	capi-	pati-	audi-
Stem)	<i>call</i>	<i>order</i>	<i>pick</i>	<i>use</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>let</i>	<i>hear</i>

127. Present Infinitives. Nouns and Verbs at Once

-a-	vocāre (to) <i>call</i> , (be) <i>calling</i> , (do) <i>calling</i> § 190 <i>e</i>	<i>vocation</i>
	vocarī (to) <i>be called</i> , (being) <i>called</i> , <i>calling</i> (be) <i>done</i>	<i>revoke</i>
	cōnārī (to) <i>exert-self</i> , <i>try</i> , (be) <i>trying</i> , <i>make effort</i>	<i>conative</i>
-e-	iubēre (to) <i>order</i> , <i>bid</i> , (be) <i>ordering</i> , <i>give orders</i>	<i>jussive</i>
	iuberī (to) <i>be ordered</i> , (being) <i>ordered</i> , <i>order</i> (be) <i>given</i>	
	licere (to) <i>be allowed</i> , <i>be lawful</i> , <i>be right</i>	<i>license</i>
-e-	legere (to) <i>pick</i> , <i>read</i> , (be) <i>reading</i> , (do) <i>reading</i>	<i>legible</i>
	legī (to) <i>be read</i> , (being) <i>read</i> , <i>reading</i> (be) <i>done</i>	<i>eligible</i>
	loquī (to) <i>speak</i> , <i>talk</i> , (be) <i>talking</i> , (do) <i>talking</i>	<i>eloquent</i>
-i-	capere (to) <i>take</i> , <i>contain</i> , (be) <i>taking</i> , (do) <i>taking</i>	<i>capacity</i>
	capī (to) <i>be taken</i> , <i>captured</i> , (being) <i>taken</i>	<i>captive</i>
	pati (to) <i>suffer</i> , <i>allow</i> , <i>let</i> , (be) <i>letting</i>	<i>patient, passive</i>
-ī-	audire (to) <i>hear</i> , <i>heed</i> , (be) <i>hearing</i> § 207 <i>e</i>	<i>obedient</i>
	audirī (to) <i>be heard</i> , (being) <i>heard</i> , <i>heed</i> (be) <i>given</i>	<i>audible</i>
	largirī (to) <i>give in self interest</i> , <i>give bribe</i>	<i>largess</i>

128. Infinitives of Irregular Verbs: § 184

-a-	dare (to) put, give, send, (be) giving, (do) giving	<i>dative</i>
	dārī (to) be put, given, (being) given, giving (be) done	<i>render</i>
-ī-	īre (to) go, travel, (be) going, (do) traveling	<i>transient</i>
	īrī be gone, traveling be done	
-se	esse (to) be, exist, belong (last, remain)	<i>essential</i>
	posse (to) be able, be powerful; can, may	<i>possible, power</i>
-le	velle (to) wish, will, be willing § 186	<i>will, voluntary</i>
	nōlle (to) wish not, will not, be unwilling	<i>willy-nilly</i>
	malle (to) wish rather, prefer, will rather	<i>magistrate</i>

129. As *nouns*, infinitives are declined in the singular and called Gerunds. The accusative in **-um** is used only with the preposition **ad** or in apposition with another noun.

	1	2	3	3 i	4
	-ā-	-ē-	-e-	-i-	-ī-
N.	cōnārī	vidēre	agere	fugere	audire
G.	cōnandī	videndī	agendī	fugiendī	audiendī
D.	cōnandō	videndō	agendō	fugiendō	audiendō
Ac.	cōnandum ¹	videndum	agendum	fugendum	audiendum
V.	—	—	—	—	—
Ab.	conandō	videndo	agendo	fugiendō	audiendo

130. As *nouns*, infinitives stand as the direct object of verbs meaning *may, can, ought, will, try, dare, begin*, etc. (§ 121)

Legere (conatur)	Legere (potest)	Legī (potest)
(he tries) to read,	(she can) read,	(it can) be read,
(tries) to do reading	(may) be reading	reading (may) be done

¹ When used as the subject of another infinitive (see § 142) the accusative has the same form as the nominative.

131. As *nouns*, infinitives stand as *subject* of verbs meaning *be, be allowed, etc.*, and as *predicate nouns*.

Velle posse (est)	Vocārī (licet) § 121 c
to be willing (is) <i>to be able</i> ,	<i>being called</i> (is permitted),
will (is) <i>be able</i> ,	(it is permitted) <i>to be called</i> ,
to will (is) <i>to be able</i> ,	(one may) <i>be called</i> ,
willing (is) <i>being able</i>	<i>calling</i> (may) <i>be done</i>

132. As *nouns*, infinitives stand in *various case relations*.

Pati (cogor) § 155 a	īre (vetor) § 123 d	īre (prohibeor)
(I am forced) <i>to let</i>	(am forbidden) <i>to go</i>	(am kept) <i>from going</i>

133. As *verbs*, infinitives *take objects, predicates, etc.*

Puerōs vocāre (placet)	Amīcus esse (incipit) § 5 a
<i>calling the boys</i> (is decided on)	(he begins) <i>to be friendly</i>
(it is decided) <i>to call the boys</i>	(is beginning) <i>to be a friend</i>

134. a. The *subject* of an infinitive is *Accusative*. (p. 4)

Puerōs vocare (audio)	Darī (vidī)
(I hear) <i>boys call or calling</i>	(I saw) <i>it (being) given</i>

b.

The Historical Infinitive

Where its meaning is unmistakable, the Infinitive is occasionally put for the Indicative, referring to the past.

Ille nihil respondere = ille nihil respondebat (respondit) or ille nihil respondet (historical present) *he did not reply at all.*

135.

Uses of the Gerund

Fugiendī quae causa est? *what is the cause of (his) fleeing?*

Videndī causa eunt *they go for the sake of seeing; they go to see*

Dies oppugnando est dictus *a day is set (named) for attacking*

Ad conandum paratus est *he is prepared to try; ready for trying*

Hoc reperit in quaerendo *he finds out this upon inquiring*

136. Present Indicative. Used to represent a thing as an actual occurrence or fact, whether it is true or untrue. .

-ā-	vocat (<i>he, she, or it</i>) <i>calls, is calling, does call</i>	<i>in vocation</i>
	vocant (<i>they</i>) <i>call, summon, are calling, do call</i>	<i>advocate</i>
	vocātur (<i>he</i>) <i>is (being) called, calling is done</i>	<i>in voke</i>
	vocantur (<i>they</i>) <i>are (being) called, summoned</i> § 187	<i>pro voke</i>
	cōnatur (<i>he</i>) <i>exerts-himself, tries, is trying, etc.</i>	<i>conative</i>
	cōnantur (<i>they</i>) <i>exert-themselves, try, are trying</i>	§ 191
-e-	iubet (<i>he</i>) <i>orders, bids, is ordering, does order</i>	<i>jussive</i>
	iubent (<i>they</i>) <i>order, bid, are ordering, give orders</i>	
	iubetur (<i>he</i>) <i>is (being) ordered or bidden, order is given</i>	§ 192
	iubentur (<i>they</i>) <i>are ordered, are being ordered</i>	
	licet <i>it is lawful, permission is given, one may</i>	<i>leisure</i>
-e-	legit (<i>he</i>) <i>reads, picks, is reading, does reading</i>	<i>legend</i>
	legunt (<i>they</i>) <i>read, choose, are reading, do read</i>	<i>elect</i>
	legitur (<i>it</i>) <i>is read, picked, reading is done</i> § 197	<i>lesson</i>
	leguntur (<i>they</i>) <i>are read, chosen, are being read</i> § 218	<i>lecture</i>
	loquitur (<i>he</i>) <i>speaks, is speaking, does speak</i>	<i>colloquy</i>
	loquuntur (<i>they</i>) <i>speak, are speaking, do speak</i>	<i>colloquial</i>
-i-	capit (<i>he</i>) <i>takes, is taking, does take or contain</i>	<i>capable</i>
	capiunt (<i>they</i>) <i>take, capture, are taking, do take</i>	<i>catch</i>
	capitur (<i>it</i>) <i>is taken, capture is made</i> § 202	<i>receive</i>
	capiuntur (<i>they</i>) <i>are taken, are being caught</i>	<i>receipt</i>
	patitur (<i>he</i>) <i>suffers, lets, is letting, does let</i>	<i>perpetual</i>
	patiuntur (<i>they</i>) <i>suffer, allow, are letting</i> § 206	<i>compassion</i>
-i-	audit (<i>he</i>) <i>hears, heeds, is hearing, does hear</i>	<i>obedient</i>
	audiunt (<i>they</i>) <i>hear, heed, are hearing, do hear</i>	<i>auditor</i>
	auditur (<i>it</i>) <i>is heard, attention is paid</i> § 207	<i>auditorium</i>
	audiuntur (<i>they</i>) <i>are heard, are being heard</i>	<i>inaudible</i>
	largitur (<i>he</i>) <i>gives lavishly, gives bribe</i>	<i>largess</i>
	largiuntur (<i>they</i>) <i>give-in-self-interest, give bribes</i>	<i>large</i>

137. a. Irregular Indicative Forms. §§ 183-6

-a-	dat (he) puts, sends, gives, is giving, does give	<i>date</i>
	dant (they) put, send, give, are giving, do give	<i>data</i>
	datur (it) is put, given, gift is made, giving is done	<i>add</i>
	dantur (they) are put, given, are being given	<i>edit</i>
-i-	it (he) goes, travels, is going, does go § 212	<i>preterit</i>
	eunt (they) go, come, travel, are going, do go	<i>transit</i>
	itur traveling is done, they're going, one goes	<i>circuit</i>
-se	est (he, she, it) is, (there) is, (it) belongs § 183	<i>absent</i>
	sunt (they) are, (there) are, (they) belong	<i>present</i>
	potest (he) is able, can, may, is powerful	<i>potent</i>
	possunt (they) are able, can, may, are powerful	<i>power</i>
-le	vult (he) wishes, is determined, will, is willing	<i>volunteer</i>
	volunt (they) wish, will, are determined, willing	<i>volition</i>
	non vult (he) does not wish, will not, is unwilling	<i>ME. nill</i>
	nōlunt (they) do not wish, will not, are unwilling	<i>ME. nolde</i>
	māvult (he) wishes rather, will rather, prefers	<i>majesty</i>
	mālunt (they) wish rather, will sooner, prefer	<i>magistrate</i>

b. Rule for changing the Present Indicative to the Present Subjunctive.

In the -ā- verbs,	change the -ā- to -e-	§ 170
In -le and -se verbs,	the sign is -i-	§ 140
In all others,	insert the sign -a-	§ 136-9



Servus sum Scholasticī. Tene me ne fugiam domo.

c. The Indicative must be changed to the Subjunctive in many situations. See §§ 139, 140-3.

<i>Direct Statement (or Discourse)</i>	<i>Indirect Statement. § 143</i>
Eae parvae videntur, quod tantum spatium absunt ... seem small, because they are so great a distance away	Scio eas parvas videri, quod tantum spatium absint
Is agrum Sequanum, quī erat optimus, occupāvit (I read that)-he seized the Sequanian land which was the best	Lego eum agrum Sequanum, quī esset optimus, occupāvisse
Ubi tu fuisti? § 183 c where were you?	Scimus ubi fueris we know where you were

<i>d. The Truth</i>	<i>The Opposite of the Truth</i>
Is non vocaverat § 187 Ego non audiveram § 207 If he had called me, I should have heard (him)	Sī me vocavisset, ego audivissem § 156

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

138. a. The Subjunctive Mode is a form of the verb used to represent an action not as actually occurring but as wished for, as uncertain or unlikely, but possible.

We may say either :

IND.

(1) I insist that the boy **starts** early; or

SUB.

(2) I insist that the boy **start** early

according to which we mean. The first gives the impression that I know the boy *starts* early, and therefore insist that it is true. The second shows that the boy *does not* start early now, but that I intend that he *shall* hereafter.

b. We use the Subjunctive when we *suppose true* what we *know to be false or unlikely*, simply in order to discuss what might happen under such circumstances, as :

(3) *I wish I **were** rich. I **would** travel.*

(Giving the impression that I *am not* and *will not*.)

(4) *If I **had** a million, I **would** travel.*

(I *have not* and therefore *will not*.)

(5) *He **would** lift it, if he **could**.*

(He *probably will not*; *likely cannot*.)

(6) *If he **were** behind that screen, he **would** hear what I say.*

(Likely *is not* and *will not*.)

The Present Subjunctive, *start* (2) points to the *future*. The Past Subjunctives, *were*, *would*, *had*, and *could* (3, 4, 5, 6), refer to the same time as the Present Indicatives, *am*, *will*, *have*, *can*, and *is*.

c. It is a mistake to imagine that the words *that* and *if* are used more with the Subjunctive than with the Indicative.

(7) *If he **is** behind that screen, he **hears** what I say.*

(8) *If he **was** behind that screen, he **heard** what I said.*

(9) *If he **has** been behind it, he **has** heard what I said.*

(10) *If he **gets** behind that screen, he **will** hear what I say.*

Is, *hears*, *was*, *heard*, *has*, *gets*, and *will* are all Indicative to show that I do not wish to imply that I care anything about *his presence* behind the screen. *Gets* and *say* (Pres. Ind.) in (10) refer to the future.

d. The Subjunctive lurks (usually unnoticed) in many corners of books, lectures, speeches, legal documents, and newspapers and is sometimes heard in the spontaneous utterances of many who make no pretense of fine distinctions.

INDICATIVE FORMS

*Thy kingdom comes.**Thy will is done.**He pays his debts.**It is known that, . . .**He went home at eight.**He could not read it.**He would not answer.**I had often seen it there.**He was here yesterday.**We sit down. We go home.*

SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

*"Thy kingdom come."**"Thy will be done."**They insist that he pay it now.**Be it known that, . . .**It is time he went home.**It is time he could.**He would, if he could.**Had I only seen it in time, etc.**(I) Would that he were here now!**"Sit we down." "Go we home."*

e.

Substitutes and Periphrases

In many expressions the Subjunctive is unnecessary and we substitute the Indicative; or we get at the same meaning in a roundabout way by using *may, can, shall, will*, etc., with the Infinitive. §§ 121-3

MODERN PERIPHRASES

*I hope he starts early.**I hope he may start early.**I hope he can start early.**I hope he will start early.**I hope he is to start early.*

EARLIER SUBJUNCTIVES

*I desire that he start early.**Let it be known, etc.**Let his will be done.**Let us sit down. Let us go.**Be it known, etc.**His will be done.**Sit we down. Go we.*

f. The Latin Subjunctive is more used than ours.

1. It is often translated by the English Indicative.

2. The Latin Subjunctive must often be rendered in a roundabout way by using *may, can, is to, shall*, and *must*, followed by infinitives.

139. Present Subjunctive. Used to represent something (not as actually occurring but) *as looked forward to, desired, conceived of as possible, or supposed.* §§ 137 c, 188, 198, 203

-ā-	vocet (he, she, or it) call, be calling, do call	provocation
	vocent (they) call, summon, be calling, do call	vocative
	vocetur (he) be called, calling be done § 156 b	invoking
	vocentur (they) be called, (shall) be summoned	revoke
	conetur (he) exert-himself, try, be trying, etc.	conative
-e-	conentur (they) exert-themselves, try, be trying	§ 191
	iubeat (he) order, bid, be ordering, do order	jussive
	iubeant (they) order, bid, be ordering, give orders	
	iubeātur (he) be ordered or bidden, order be given	§ 193
	iubeantur (they) be ordered, (should) be ordered	
-e-	liceat it be lawful, permission be given, one may	license
	legat (he) read, pick, be reading, do reading	illegible
	legant (they) read, choose, be reading, do read	elective
	legātur (it) be read, picked, reading be done § 218	collection
	legantur (they) be read, chosen, (may) be read	diligent
-i-	loquātur (he) speak, be speaking, do speak	eloquence
	loquantur (they) speak, be speaking, do speak	grandiloquent
	capiat (he) take, be taking, do take, or contain	recipient
	capiant (they) take, capture, be taking, do take	reception
	capiātur (it) be taken, capture be made	captivate
-i-	capiantur (they) be taken, captured, caught	capsule
	patiat (he) suffer, let, be letting, do let	perpetuate
	patiantur (they) suffer, allow, be letting	impatient
	audiat (he) hear, heed, be hearing, do hear	audit
	audiant (they) hear, heed, be hearing, do hear	obedience
-i-	audiatur (it) be heard, attention be paid	disobey
	audiantur (they) be heard, would be heard	§ 208
	largiatur (he) give lavishly, give bribe, bribe	largesses

140. The Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. § 185

-a-	det (he) put, send, give, be giving, do give	addition
	dent (they) put, send, give, be giving, do give	editor
	detur (it) be put, given, gift be made, giving be done	dative
	dentur (they) be put, given, should be given	editorial
-i-	eat (he) go, travel, be going, do go § 213	transition
	eant (they) go, come, travel, be going, do go	
	eatur traveling be done, they be going, one go	
-se	sit (he, she, it) be, (there) be, (it) belong	
	sint (they) be, (there) be, (they) belong	§ 183
	possit (he) be able, (can), be powerful, may	potential
	possint (they) be able, (can), be powerful, may	impossible
-le	velit (he) wish, be determined, will, be willing	volitive
	velint (they) wish, will, be determined, willing	
	nolit (he) do not wish, will not, be unwilling	
	nōlint (they) do not wish, will not, be unwilling	§ 186
	malit (he) wish rather, will rather, prefer	
	malint (they) wish rather, would sooner, prefer	



Villa Romana ad mare.

141. In independent clauses the *Latin Subjunctive* has to be rendered in a roundabout way in *English* — usually by the subjunctive or imperative or by *will, shall, may, can, do, let, etc.*, followed by the infinitive. §§ 121-3

a.

Negative *ne*

Exhortation	Expectemus (<i>wait we !</i>), <i>let us wait</i>	§ 188
(1st person)	Ne expectemus (<i>wait we not !</i>), <i>let us not wait</i>	
Prohibition	Ne expectes <i>wait thou not ! don't wait !</i> (less used	
(2d person)	than nōlī expectāre or ne expectā! <i>don't wait !</i>)	
Command	Expectet (<i>wait he !</i>), <i>he shall wait, let him wait !</i>	
(3d person)	Ne expectet (<i>wait he not !</i>), <i>let him not wait !</i>	
Concession	Expectet, me vidēre non potest <i>should-he-wait or granted-that-he-wait, he cannot see me</i>	
Wish, Hope	Ō sī expectet! Utinam expectet! <i>oh that he may wait ! (I) would that he may wait !</i>	
	Utinam ne expectet! <i>oh that he may not wait !</i>	

b.

Negative *non*

Deliberation	Marcus expectet? <i>Mark wait ? shall Mark wait ?</i>	
	Cur non expectet? <i>why will (would) he not wait ?</i>	
Possibility	Expectem, sī rogetur <i>I would wait, if it should be</i>	
Cf. § 156 b	<i>asked; I could or might wait if a request be made</i>	
	Nōn expectem, nisi rogetur <i>I'll not wait, unless it be asked or unless a request be made</i>	

142. When a former thought (statement, question, command) is mentioned in the course of a new statement or question,

- (a) its form is changed ; See p. 4, notes
- (b) its asserting, asking, or commanding power is lost, and
- (c) it becomes the *subject* or *object* of a verb, or is used as a *predicate noun* or an *appositive*. §§ 152-5

In a Direct Statement or Declaration the main verb is changed to the Infinitive with the Subject Accusative.

Direct: Pueri eunt	Liber fertur	§ 212
a. <i>the boys go, are going</i>	<i>the book is (being) brought</i>	
Indirect: Puerōs ire ¹ patitur	Librum ferri ¹ patitur	
<i>he lets the boys go</i>	<i>allows the book to be brought</i>	
Puerōs ire ¹ videt	Librum ferri ¹ videt	
<i>he sees the boys go</i>	<i>he sees the book (be)</i> ¹ brought	
<i>sees the boys (be) going</i>	<i>the book (being)</i> ¹ brought	
<i>notices (that) the boys go</i>	<i>(that) the book is brought</i>	
Nuntiatur pueros ire	Librum ferri oportet	
<i>that the boys go is re-</i>	<i>that the book be brought is</i>	
<i>ported; word is brought</i>	<i>necessary; it is necessary</i>	
<i>that the boys are going</i>	<i>that the book be brought</i>	
Direct: Quis it? <i>who is going?</i>	Quid fertur? <i>what is brought?</i>	
Indirect: Quem ² ire dicit?	Quid ferri videt?	
b. <i>whom does he declare to</i>	<i>what does he see brought?</i>	
<i>be going? is going?</i>	<i>what does he see is brought?</i>	

143. In Indirect Questions and Commands the main verb, if Indicative or Imperative, is changed to the Subjunctive.

Direct. **Quis it?** *who is going?* **Īte, pueri go, boys!**

Indirect. **Quaerit quis**³ eat *asks who is going* § 138 d, e

Indirect Commands may stand in any person

Dicit eamus⁴ *says we may*⁵ go or *we must*⁶ go § 141

Dicit eatis *says you shall*⁷ go or *you may* go § 213

Dicit eant *says they shall* go or *let them* go

¹ **Ire** and **ferri** no longer assert; the only assertions are **patitur** and **videt**.

² The interrogative, **quem**, still asks. ³ **Quis** no longer asks. ⁴ **eāmus**, **eātis**, and **eant** mention a former command without commanding (§ 142 b).

⁵ Some commands merely give permission, ⁶ others urge, ⁷ others order.

144. An interrogative word may be used in a sentence to ask for any element that is represented as unknown.

145. The whole sentence may be turned into a question by using the Latin *Question Marks* **-ne?** **ec-?** and **Num?**

Galba Titō amicus est *Galba is friendly to Titus*

Galbam aliquid movet *it moves or influences Galba somewhat*

(a) *Questions seeking information.*

The question marks **-ne** or **ec-** are attached to the first word in Latin. The English sentence does not contain the word **not** or **no**.

Galbane Tito amicus est? *is Galba a friend to Titus?*

Ecquid Galbam movet? *does it affect Galba at all?*

(b) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer “yes.”

The Latin sentence begins with **Nōn** or **Nihil**, etc., and **-ne** is attached to the first word. The English contains the word **not** or **not-at-all** or **nothing**. The parenthesis is negative.

Nōnne Galba Tito amicus est? *is Galba not friendly to Titus?*

Galba is friendly to Titus (isn't he)?

Nihilne Galbam movet? *doesn't it affect Galba at-all?*

(c) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer “no.”

With the sign **Num?** but does not contain **-ne?** nor **ec-?** nor the words **nōn** nor **nihil**. A virtual exclamation, or may contain the word **not** and a positive parenthesis.

Num Galba Tito amicus est? *Galba is a friend to Titus!*

Galba isn't friendly to Titus (is he)?

Num quid Galbam movet? *does it affect Galba at all?*

it doesn't affect Galba at all (does it)?

146. In English many noun clauses are introduced by *that*. There are three ways of expressing such clauses in Latin :

- (1) *that* (not expressed) Infinitive with subject Accusative ;
- (2) *that* = *ut* (*utī*), *quo* or (*timere*) *ne* with the Subjunctive ;
that—*not* = *ne*, *quo minus* or *quīn*, (*timere*) *ut* or (*vereri*)
ne nōn with the Subjunctive.
- (3) *that* = *quod* with the Indicative.

The nature and meaning of the governing word must be taken into consideration in order to determine whether such a clause is represented

- (a) as an *actual occurrence or fact* ;

Dominum abesse dicit *he says (that) the master is away*

or as *something sure to be executed*, if commanded or willed ;

Dominum vocari iubet *he orders that the master be called*, or

Dominum vocari vult *he wishes the master to be called* (§ 127)

or as an Indirect Question or Command ;

Quid consilii sit ostendit *he shows what the plan is.*

Dicit puerōs vocent *he says they shall call the boys.* § 143

- (b) as something (not yet occurring) looked forward to ;

Postulant ut vocetur *they request that he be called*

or as something *likely to result from* the nature of the case ;

Consuetudo est, ut eos iuvet *his custom is that he aid them.*

Non dubito quīn eat *I don't doubt but he is going, I have no hesitation about why he shall not go.*

- (c) a *cause* mentioned by way of explanation, etc.

Causa mittendi est, quod eos vocari vult *the cause of sending (him) is, that he wishes them (to be) called.*

- **147.** *a.* An *ut*-clause often stands for the *direct object*.

Id eis persuadet **Eis** persuadet **ut exeant**
(that them persuades-he) (them persuades-he that out-go-they)
he persuades them (that) so persuades them that they shall leave

- b. The indicative is used with **ut, utī** as or *when*.

Puerī, ut audiō, ire nolunt *the boys, as I hear, will not go.*

- c. Use the Subjunctive with *ut*, *utī* *that* and *quī* *that-he*.

Hortor, ut roget Mittuntur, qui id a Tito postulent
I urge that he ask (men) are sent, ***that-they*** (may) ask it
of Titus

(persons) are dispatched to ask it of Titus.

- d. With the indicative **dum** means *while*.

Dum haec geruntur, eō pervēnit,

while these (things) were going on, he arrived there.

With the Subjunctive **dum** may be translated *till*.

Exspectavit **dum** milites ex provincia convenirent

he waited **till** soldiers **came** together from the province or
till soldiers **could** (§ 141) assemble from the province.

- e. The following verbs frequently take clauses introduced by **ut** as *direct object* instead of a noun or pronoun. § 153

imperare 1. *demand* 3 p 4 t; 3 p and ut with the Subjunctive
suadere 2. *advise, recommend* **persuadere** 3 p 4 t; 3 p, ut w. Sub.

hortari 1. *urge* 4 or *ut w.* Sub. **cohortari** *encourage, urge on* 4

petere 3. *seek, ask, go after* **ab 6 p, 4 t** or **ut** with the Subjunctive

postulăre 1. *request, demand* 4t a, ab p; a, ab, p, ut w. Sub. § 230

impetrare 1. *get by asking, obtain, ask and get* 4 t, a, ab p

rogāre 1. *ask* and **flagitāre** *ask insistently* 4p 4t; (ut w. Sub.)

quaerere 3. *inquire*, 4t, e, ex or a, ab p **exquirere** *seek out*

f. Primary or Principal Sequence of Tenses.

<i>Pres.</i> Hoc facit <i>he is doing this</i>	} Cf. § 148 ut nōs terreat <i>that he may</i> <i>frighten us; to frighten</i> <i>us.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Hoc fecit <i>he has done this</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> Hoc faciet <i>he will do it</i>	
<i>Futp.</i> Hoc fecerit <i>will have done it</i>	

Hostium tanta est ut ad arma capienda
celeritas *the enemy's* tempus desit *that there is*
quickness *is so great,* no time to take up arms

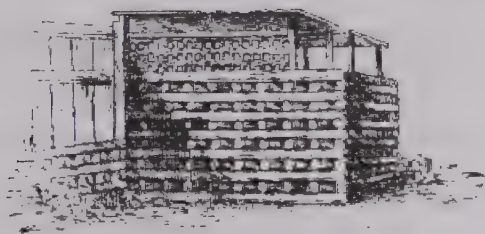
Ita celeriter prō- ut spatium pīla coniciendī
currunt *they run* non detur *that time to hurl*
forward so quickly, javelins *is not given*

g. Secondary or Historical Succession of Tenses.

<i>Imp.</i> Id faciebat <i>was doing it</i>	} Cf. § 148 ut nos terreret <i>that he might</i> <i>frighten us; to frighten us.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Id fecit <i>did do or did it</i>	
<i>Plup.</i> Id fecerat <i>had done it</i>	

Hostium tanta fuit ut ad galeas induendas tem-
celeritas *so great was* pus defuerit *that there was no*
the enemy's quickness, time to put on helmets § 181 b

Ita celeriter prōcu- ut spatium arma capiendī
currere *they came* non daretur *that time to seize*
on so quickly, weapons *was not given*



Agger.

148.

Purpose Clauses

(in order) *that*, (in order) *to* = *ut*, *utī*, *quō*, *quo plus*, *quī*, etc., with the Subjunctive. §§ 139-40

(in order) *that* . . . *not*, (in order) *not to* = *ne*, *quo minus* with the Subjunctive.

- a. Hoc faciunt, *ut* servos terreant *they do this (in order) that they may terrify the servants* or (in order) *to terrify the servants*
- b. Hoc facit, *quō* inimicos prohibeat *he does this (in order) that (by it) he may keep enemies away* or (in order) *to keep*, etc.
- c. Hoc facit, *ne* inimicī servos terreant *he does this that enemies may not frighten the slaves*
- d. Hoc facit, *quo minus* servos terreant — *that (-on-account-of-it) they may not frighten the slaves so much* or *that they may frighten the servants less* or *may not frighten*, etc.
- e. Hoc facit, *quō plus* pabulī habeat *he does it (in-order-) that (by-this-means) he may have more fodder* or *to have more*
- f. Hoc facit, *quo facilius* hostis prohibeat . . . (in-order-) *that (-by-this-means) he may keep the enemy away more easily* or (in-order-by-this-means-) *to keep the enemy away more easily*
- g. Marcum mittit, *quī* hostis prohibeat *sends Mark (in-order) that-he may stop the enemy* or *sends Mark to stop the enemy*
- h. Nihil habet, *quo* pabulum vehat *he has nothing on-which he may carry fodder* or *has nothing to carry fodder on* § 115 a
- i. Non habent, *quo* fugiant *they have no (place) to-which they may flee* or *they have no (place) to flee to* § 119 d
- j. Non habet, *ubi* pabulum pōnat *he has not where he may put fodder* § 119 e
- k. Non habet, *unde* pabulum comparet *he has no (source) from which he may get fodder* or *to get fodder from* § 119 f

Result Clauses

149. Result Clauses are usually foreshadowed by some word meaning *so* or *such*; as the Latin **sic**, **ita** *so*, *in such a manner*, **tam** *so*, **tantum** *so much*, etc.

so . . . that = **sic** . . **ut**, **ita** . . **ut**i or **tam** . . **qu**i } with
so that not = **ut n**on; (*such*) *that not* = **qu**i **n**on the Sub-
not so . . that not, not so . . but = **n**on **tam** . . **qu**in } junctive

- a. **Tam** multi sunt, **ut** servos terreant *there are so many that they frighten the slaves or so many as to frighten the slaves*
- b. **Tam** pauci sunt, **ut**i inimicos **n**on terreant *they are so few that they do not terrify their enemies; so few as not to terrify, etc.*
- c. **Ita** dicit, **quo** servos terreat *he is speaking in-such-a-manner that- (by-it) he is terrifying the slaves; so as to terrify, etc.*
- d. **Nemo tam** audax est, **qu**i id facere conetur *no one is so bold that-he would try to do it or so bold as to try to do it* § 139
- e. **Nemo tam** fortis est, **qu**in interdum terreatur *no one is so brave but that he is terrified at times; so brave as not to, etc.*
- f. **Tantum** est, **quod** carro vehatur *there is so little that-it, etc.*
- g. **N**on **tantum** est, **qu**in carro vehatur *there is not so much but-it can be carried on a cart.* § 115 a

150.

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	—	—	plūs § 72	minor	minor	minus § 72
G.	—	—	plūris § 73	minōris	minōris	minōris
D.	—	—	—	minōrī	minōrī	minōrī
Ac.	—	—	plus § 68 a	minorem	minorem	minus § 68
V.	—	—	—	minor	minor	minus
Ab.	—	—	plure	minore	minore	minōre

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra	minōrēs	minōrēs	minōra
G.	plūrium	plūrium	plūrium	minōrum	minōrum	minōrum
D.	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus	minōribus	minōribus	minōribus
Ac.	pluris	pluris	plūra	minōres	minores	minōra
V.	plures	plures	plura	minōres	minōres	minōra
Ab.	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus	minōribus	minōribus	minōribus

plus *more, more (value) too much* minus *less, less (value) too little,*
 plurēs *more (persons), several* not so much, not (§ 148 d)
 pluribus praesentibus *when too* minores *younger (persons),*
many were present § 96 a, quid minors, descendants
 plura? *why more (things)?* maiōres *older (men), elders*

Descriptive and Characteristic Clauses

151. a. A *Descriptive Clause* seeks to describe or identify a person or thing that is already in mind. (Verb Indicative.)

Hic est, quī Marcum laudat *this is (the one) who praises* Mark
 Multī sunt, quī id volunt *there are many, who wish that*
 (Flumen) quod in Rhodanum influit *that flows into the Rhone*

b. A *Characteristic Relative Clause* seeks persons or things to fit a particular description that it contains.

(Verb Subjunctive.)

Non is est, quī Titum laudet *he is not one, that praises* Titus
 Multī sunt, quī id velint *there are many who (would) wish this*
 Quis est, quī eum laudet? *who is there that would praise him?*
who is there (such) that he praises him? § 115 a
 Nemō est, quī eum laudet *there is no-one but will praise him*
there is no-one who would not praise him

152. a. Noun Clauses are used as Subject or Predicate.

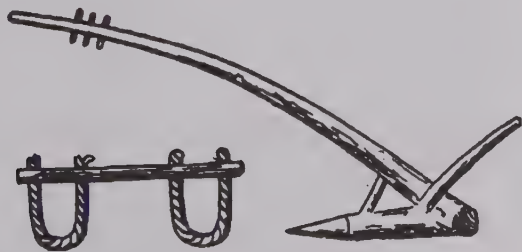
Eōs vocārī oportet *that they be called is necessary*, etc. § 131
Fit ut veniat *that he come happens; it happens that he comes*
Conceditur uti eant *that they go is granted; permission is given . . .*

b. Noun Clauses are used as Predicate Nouns.

Suspicio est id dōlō fierī *the suspicion is that it is done slyly*
Condiō est ut nunc eat *the condition is that he go now*
Causa est quod insidias veretur *the reason is that he fears ambush*

153. Noun Clauses are used as Direct Object.

Eōs ingredi prohibet *he keeps them from entering* §§ 123, 132
Eos nōn deterret, quān ingradientur *he does not prevent them from entering; does not stop them so that they may not enter*
Id eis facile persuadet *he persuades them this easily* § 74, 4, 6
Eis persuadet Mārcum abesse *he persuades them (that) Mark is away* Cf. § 146 a, e
Eis persuadet uti exeat *he persuades them that they should leave*
Non dubito eōs vocārī *I (believe) don't doubt their being called*
Nōn dubito quān vocentur *I don't doubt but they are called*
Timeo ne veniat *(I doubt his not coming) I fear that he will come*
Timeo ut veniat *(I doubt his coming) I fear that he will not come*
Nōn timeō ne nōn veniat *I don't fear that he will not come*



Iugum et Arātrum.

154. Noun Clauses are used in Apposition with certain words; as, *id it, this; illud that (this) or the following; hōc or eō (Abl.) on account of this, for the reason.*

ea ratiōne, ea de causā for this reason, etc. § 74, 15

<i>hōc</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	} <i>for the reason, that . . . ,</i> <i>on account of this, that . . . ,</i>
<i>eō</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	
<i>propterea . . .</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	
<i>eā de causā . .</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	

eō cōsiliō . . . ut with the intention that; cf. § 96 a

Id nuntiatur, eōs morārī it is reported that they are delaying

Id contendunt, ne enuntietur they seek this, that it be not told

Venit eō consiliō, ut me videat comes with the idea of seeing me

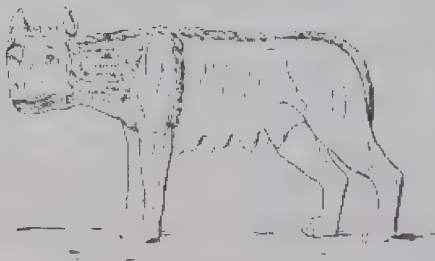
Id eō magis faciunt, quod abest they are doing this all-the more because he is away

Hōc facilius eīs persuadet, quod continentur he persuades them the more easily because they are hemmed in

Eo propterea minus utī potest, quod abit he cannot use it so well for the reason that he is going away § 182 b

Id eā de causa facit, quod abire vult he is doing this for the reason that he wishes to go away

Satis est causae, qua re domum revertatur there is enough (of) reason (§ 72) why he should go back home



Lupa.

Nihil est causae quā eat *there is no reason why he should not go*
Multa hortantur, qua re eat *many (things) on account of which*
fact he should go are pressing-upon him; there are many reasons
why he should go § 115 c

Recusat ne moretur *he gives back reason that he may not delay*
Recusat quo minus moretur *(he gives reason on-account-of-*
which he should delay not-so-much); he refuses to delay
 (§§ 68 a, 150) [-cusa- = causa]

Nōn recusat quo minus eat *(he makes no refusal whereby he shall*
go any less); he does not refuse to go § 219, 1

Nōn recusat quā eat *he gives no reason why he should not go;*
he does not refuse to go

155. a. Object Clauses are retained with passive verbs.

Me nomen rogat *he asks me my name* (Direct Object retained

Ego nomen rogor *I am asked my name* with the passive.)

Certior fit eos ire *(he is made aware that they are going) he is*
informed that they are going § 230

b. Noun Clauses are used in various case relations.

A maleficio non temperant *they do not refrain from mischief*

Pueri sibi non temperant, quā iniurias inferant *the boys do not*
put restraint upon themselves on-account-of-which they will
not inflict injuries; do not refrain from inflicting § 115 b

Servos deterrent ne frumentum conferant *they dissuade slaves so*
that they will not bring grain; keep slaves from bringing grain
Non deterrentur, quā frumentum ferant *they are not dissuaded*
from bringing grain

Retinentur, quo minus nobis iniurias inferant *they are kept from*
inflicting injuries upon us § 74, 4, 6

Nōn retinentur, quā nobis iniurias inferant *they are not kept*
from inflicting injuries upon us § 230

156. a. Simple Conditions

Nothing implied. See § 138 c.

Indicative (or Imperative).

Si eum rogō, }
Quem sī rogō, venit
Me rogante, }
if I ask him, he comes.

Si consentietis itūra sum
if you (will) agree, I shall go;

si recusabitis, ire nōlō
but-if you refuse, I will not.

Et sī vōs vidit, tamen nōn dixit
even-if he yet he did not
did see you, say so

Nisi rogātus erit, nōn ibō
unless he's asked I'll not go.

b. Contingent Conditions

Fulfillment regarded possible.

Present or Perfect Subjunctive.

Si rogetur, veniat or
si rogātus sit vēnerit
if he should he would
be asked, come § 141 b

c. Contrary to Fact or Unreal

Conditions. See § 138 b.

Imp. or Plup. Subjunctive.

Si rogarētur, veniret § 137 d
were he asked, he would come.

Nisi rogātus esset, non venisset
had he not he wouldn't
been asked, have come.

157. a. Both Third and Fourth Declension nouns are formed on the *participial stems* of verbs. See § 163 c.

Supines are Fourth Declension noun forms. (Cf. § 129.)

Vocātus audiō **C**ōnātus tuos compressi **C**onātu desistit
I hear calls I foiled thy attempts desists from-trying

b. The *Accusative Singular* of Supines is used (chiefly after **mittere**, **venire**, and **ire**) to denote *Purpose*. §§ 195 d, 196 d

Venit auxilium rogātum (Cf. **D**omum it **R**ōmam venit
comes to-ask aid § 61 b goes home came to-Rome)

c. The *Ablative* often denotes in what respect, etc. § 190 d

Facile est rogātu (§ 74-16). (Cf. **V**irtute praestans
is easy (in the asking) to-ask excelling in-bravery)

- d. In petendo or In pāce petenda versatur or
in petitiōne in petitione pācis versatur § 107 b, c
in or upon seeking is busied or active in seeking peace
- e. Facile factu easy to do Miserabile vīsu pitiable to see
Eius rogātu at his request Cōnārī desistunt cease to-try
(Erat) difficilī trānsitu flumen a river of difficult passage

158. A Gerundive and its noun are treated as a single noun and declined together.

- a. Pons (faciendus) est there is a-bridge (-to-be-built)
- b. Ratiō pontis (faciendī) the plan of (-building-) the-bridge
- c. Dies pontī faciundo dictus day set for the-bridge-to-be-built
a day set for-building-the-bridge
- d. Ad (pontem) faciendum tempus deest time to-build (-the-bridge) is lacking; there-is-no-time for building-a-bridge
- e. Pontem (faciendum) curat he sees to (the-building-of-) a-bridge
- f. De ponte (faciendō) desperat despairs of (-building-) a-bridge

159. Purpose is expressed in many ways.

- | | | |
|--|---------|-------------------------------------|
| a. Legatōs mittit pācem petitum | § 157 b | } envoys
to seek a
settlement |
| b. Legatōs ad pācem petendam mittit | § 158 d | |
| c. Legatōs pācis petendae causā mittit cf. § 129 | | |
| d. Legatōs, quī pācem petant, mittit | § 148 g | |
| e. Legatōs, utī pācem petant, mittit | § 148 a | |
| f. Legatōs de pāce (petenda) mittit | § 58 | |
| g. Equites eis auxiliō misit sent cavalry for aid to them § 73 e | | |

THE VERB

160. Every one who learns Latin thoroughly, sooner or later comes to summarize the essential facts about verbs in the way most convenient for himself and reduce them to the smallest possible compass, somewhat as follows :

Essential Facts

161. A Latin verb is built up of three kinds of elements :

1. *Stems* (containing the root of the word). § 163
2. *Mode and Tense Signs*. §§ 164-7
3. *Endings* (showing the person and number of the subject). § 168

The *Principal Parts* of verbs are necessary in order

- (a) to know to which class the verb belongs, § 169
- (b) to be able to get the stems, and thus
- (c) build up any other form we wish to use.

A great deal of confusion is avoided by learning the list of *-iō* verbs given below, since they are the only verbs whose present stem cannot be obtained from the present infinitive active by dropping *-re*. § 126

162. Stems in *-i-* or *-iō-* verbs (Third Conjugation).

<i>capiō, capere</i> ; ¹ <i>-cipio, -cipere</i> take, catch	captive, recipient
<i>cupiō, cupere</i> wish, desire	cupidity, Cupid
<i>faciō, facere</i> ; <i>-ficiō, -ficere</i> make, do, cause	facility, proficient
<i>fodiō, fodere</i> dig (p.p. <i>fossus dug</i>)	foss, fossil
<i>fugiō fugere</i> flee	fugitive, refuge
<i>iacio, iacere</i> ; <i>-icio, -icere</i> throw, hurl	abject, reject
<i>-licio, -licere</i> lure, entice	elicit
<i>pario, parere</i> bring forth, bear	parent, apparition
<i>quatiō, quatere</i> ; <i>-cutiō, -cutere</i> shake	quash, concussion
<i>rapiō, rapere</i> ; <i>-ripio, -ripere</i> snatch, seize	rapid, rapine
<i>sapiō, sapere</i> ; <i>-sipio, -sipere</i> know (by taste)	sapid, insipid
<i>gradior</i> , ² <i>gradī</i> ; <i>-gredior, -gredi</i> walk, go	grade, ingredient
<i>morior, mori</i> die, perish	mortal, immortal
<i>patior, pati</i> ; <i>-petior, -peti</i> suffer, let, allow	patient, perpetual

¹ *-i-* becomes *-e-* before *r*. ² *-i-* disappears before *-i*.

163.

The Three Essential Parts

- a. To find the *Present Stem*, drop -re, -rī, or -ī from the Present Infinitive. § 126
 b. To find the *Perfect Stem*, drop -ī from the Perf. Ind. Act. 1st person, sing.
 c. To find the *Supine*¹ Stem, drop -us, -a, -um from the Perf. Part. or -um from Ac. Supine. § 157 b

vocō,	vocāre	vocāvī	vocātus -a -um
1	vocā-	vocāv- § 99	vocāt-
	call § 136	having called	having been called
§ 169	be calling	have called	being called § 99
cōnor	cōnārī § 127	—	cōnātus -a -um
1	cōnā- try	— ^b	cōnāt- having tried
videō	vidēre	vīdī saw	vīsus -a -um § 98
2	vidē- see	vīd- have seen	vīs- having been seen
vereor	verērī	—	veritus -a -um § 101
2	verē- fear	— ^b	verit- having feared
agō	agere	ēgī did Cf. § 101	āctus -a -um
3	age- do	ēg- have done	āct- (having been) done
ūtor	ūtī ²	—	ūsus -a -um § 182 b
3	ūte- use	— ^b	ūs- having used
capiō	capere ³	cēpī took § 192	captus -a -um
3 i	capi- take	cēp- have taken	capt- (having been) taken
patior	patī ⁴	—	passus -a -um
3 i	pati- let	— ^b	pass- having let
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus -a -um
4	audī-	audīv-	audīt-
	hear	have heard	having been heard
potior	potīrī	—	potītus -a -um § 211
4	potī- get	— ^b	potīt- having gotten

¹ Also called the *Participial Stem*.

² Restore -e-.

³ Restore -i- from -e-.

⁴ Restore -i-; see § 162, note.

^b Deponents (§ 182) have no Perf. stem.

164.

Indicative

I AND II CONJ.		III AND IV CONJ.	LEADING VERBS IN ENGLISH PERIPHRASES
<i>Pres.</i>	—	—	<i>am —, are —, is —, do —</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	-bā-	-bā-	<i>was —, were —, did —, -ed, etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	-bi-	{ -ā- -ē-	{ (1st sing.) (others) } <i>shall —, will —</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	— ¹	— ¹	<i>(am having —) have —, did —, -ed</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	-erā-	-erā-	<i>(was having —) had —</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	-eri-	-eri-	<i>(shall be having —) shall have —</i>

165.

Subjunctive

I CONJ.		ALL OTHERS	
<i>Pres.</i>	-ē-	-ā-	³ <i>may —, shall —, will —, etc.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	-rē- ²	-rē- ²	³ <i>might —, should —, would —</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	-erī- ⁵	-erī- ⁵	³ <i>should —, would —</i> § 156 b, c
<i>Plup.</i>	-issē- ⁶	-issē- ⁶	<i>(were having —) had —, etc.</i>

166.

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	—	—	<i>be —, do —, do be —</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	-tō-	-tō-	<i>shall —</i>

167. a.

Participles (Adjectives)

	ACTIVE			PASSIVE			MEANING
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Pres.</i>	-ns,	-ns,	-ns			§ 97	-ing
	-ntis,	-ntis,	-ntis				
<i>Perf.</i>		§ 98		-tus,	-ta,	-tum	-d, -ed, -t ⁴
				or -sus,	-sa,	-sum	-n, -ne, -en
<i>Fut.</i>	-ūrus	-ura,	-ūrum	-ndus,	-nda,	-ndum	going to —

¹ Perfect stem.² -se- and -le- in -se and -le verbs.³ Sometimes.⁴ As in heard, burnt, seen, done, written.⁵ si-.⁶ esse-.

168. Endings — Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative

	<i>Subject Acting</i>	<i>Subject Acted upon, or Acting on or for self</i>	<i>Meaning of the Endings</i>
Indicative	-ō	-or	<i>I</i>
Present,	-s	-ris, -re	<i>thou, (you)</i>
Future	-t	-tur	<i>he, she, it, there</i>
Perfect,	-mus	-mur	<i>we</i>
and	-tis	-mini	<i>you</i>
Future. ¹	-nt	-ntur	<i>they, there</i>
Subjunctive	-m	-r	<i>I</i>
(all tenses) ;	-s	-re, -ris	<i>thou, (you)</i>
Indicative	-t	-tur	<i>he, she, it, there</i>
Imperfect,	-mus	-mur	<i>we</i>
Pluperfect,	-tis	-mini	<i>you</i>
and	-nt	-ntur	<i>they, there</i>
Future. ²	-I ³	(sum) ⁴	<i>I</i>
Perfect	-isti	(es)	<i>thou, (you)</i>
Indicative	-it	(est)	<i>he, she, it, there</i>
only.	-imus	(sumus)	<i>we</i>
	-istis	(estis)	<i>you</i>
	-ērunt, -ēre	(sunt)	<i>they, there</i>
Present	—	-re	<i>thou</i> § 173
Imperative.	-te, etc.	-mini, etc.	<i>you, ye</i>

169.

Stem Vowels

In the *First Conjugation* the present stem ends in -ā-.

In the *Second Conjugation* the present stem ends in -ē-.

In the *Third Conjugation* the present stem ends in -e- or -i-.

In the *Fourth Conjugation* the present stem ends in -ī-.

¹ First and Second Conjugations. ² Third and Fourth Conjugations.

³ A modified form of *sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt*.

⁴ Separate words. §§ 99, 101

170. In combining the stems, mode and tense signs, and endings, the vowel changes must be carefully learned.

The signs **-bi** and **-eri-** (§ 164)

-bi- and **-eri-** become **-b-** and **-er-** before *another vowel*;

-bi- becomes **-be-** before **-re** and **-ris**;

-bi- becomes **-bu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**.

The stem vowels **-a-** and **-e-**; **-a-** and **-e-** in tense signs

-a- becomes **-a-** before **nd**, **nt**, and final **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.

-ā- disappears before *another vowel*.

-ē- becomes **-e-** before **nd**, **nt**, or *another vowel*.

§ 28 b

-e- becomes **-e-** before final **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.

The stem vowels **-e-**, **-i-**, and **-ī-**

-e- disappears before *another vowel*; ¹

-e- remains unchanged before **r** and **nd**;

-e- becomes **-i-** before **m**, **s**, or **t**;

-e- becomes **-u-** before **-nt** and **-ntur** (sometimes before **-nd-**);

-e- becomes **-e-** before **-bā-**;

-e- becomes **-e-** before **-ns** and **-e-** before **-ntis**, etc. § 28 a

-i- disappears before **-ī** in the *Present Infinitive*;

-i- becomes **-e-** before **-r-** and *when final*; ¹

-i- becomes **-iu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**; **-ie-** before **-ba-**;

-i- becomes **-ie-** (sometimes **-iu-** before **-nd-**);

-i- becomes **-ie-** before **-ns** and **-ie-** before **-ntis**, etc.

-ī- becomes **-i-** before *another vowel* (cf. also § 183 a, c);

-ī- (not **-erī-** § 165) becomes **-iu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**;

-ī- becomes **-ie-** before **-ba-**; **-erī-** > **-erī-m**, **-t**, **-nt**.

-ī- becomes **-ie-** (sometimes **-iu-**) before **-nd-**;

-ī- becomes **-ie-** before **-ns** and **-ie-** before **-ntis**, etc.

¹ In *ferre* the stem vowel **-e-** is lost before **r**, **s**, **t**, or a vowel. Final **-e** is also lost in the imperative forms, *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*. §§ 212-4; B. § 116, 3.

171.

Indicative

ACTIVE

PASSIVE, DEPONENT

<i>Pres.</i>	Pres. Stem + δ , etc. § 168	Pres. Stem + <i>or</i> , etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	Pres. Stem + <i>ba</i> + m^1	Pres. Stem + <i>ba</i> + r^1

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

<i>Fut.</i>	Pres. Stem + <i>bi</i> + δ	Pres. Stem + <i>bi</i> + <i>or</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

	Pres. Stem + $\bar{a}$ + m	Pres. Stem + $\bar{a}$ + r
	+ e^2 + <i>s</i> , etc.	+ e^2 + <i>re</i> or <i>ris</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Perf. Stem + $\bar{i}$, etc.	P. P. and Pres. Ind. of <i>esse</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	Perf. Stem + <i>erā</i> + m	P. P. and Imp. Ind. of <i>esse</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	Perf. Stem + <i>eri</i> + δ	P. P. and Fut. Ind. of <i>esse</i>

172.

Subjunctive

FIRST CONJUGATION

§ 137 *b*

<i>Pres.</i>	Pres. Stem + <i>e</i> + m , etc.	Pres. Stem + <i>e</i> + r , etc.
--------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

ALL OTHER CONJUGATIONS

	Pres. Stem + $\bar{a}$ + m	Pres. Stem + $\bar{a}$ + r
<i>Imp.</i>	Pres. Stem + $r\bar{e}^3$ + m	Pres. Stem + $r\bar{e}^3$ + r
<i>Perf.</i>	Perf. Stem + $e\bar{r}\bar{i}$ + m	P. P. and Pres. Sub. of <i>esse</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	Perf. Stem + <i>isse</i> + m	P. P. and Imp. Sub. of <i>esse</i>

173.

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	Pres. Stem	Pres. Stem + <i>re</i>
	Pres. Stem + <i>te</i>	Pres. Stem + <i>mini</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Pres. Stem + $t\bar{o}$ § 183 <i>c</i>	Pres. Stem + <i>tor</i> § 191 <i>b</i>
	Pres. Stem + $t\bar{o}$	Pres. Stem + <i>tor</i>
	Pres. Stem + $t\bar{o}te$	—
	Pres. Stem + $nt\bar{o}$	Pres. Stem + <i>ntor</i>

¹ § 168. ² - $\bar{e}$ - throughout except the first person singular.³ - $\bar{a}\bar{e}$ - in *esse* and its compounds; - $\bar{l}\bar{e}$ - in *velle*, *nolle*, *malle*.

174. Participles (Adjectives) § 97-104

ACTIVE, DEPONENT				PASSIVE, DEPONENT		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	{ +ns -ns -ns		— — —		
	<i>Stem</i>	{ +ntis -ntis -ntis				
<i>Perf.</i>		— — —		<i>Part.</i>	{ +us -a -um	
				<i>Stem</i>	{ +ī -ae -ī	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Part.</i>	{ +urus -ura -urum		<i>Pres.</i>	{ +ndus -nda -ndum	
	<i>Stem</i>	{ +urī -urae -urī		<i>Stem</i>	{ +ndī -ndae -ndī	

175. Gerund (Noun) *Pres. Stem* + ndī, etc. § 129176. Supine (Noun) *Part. or Sup. Stem* + us, -ūs, etc. § 81 a

177. Infinitives (Nouns)

ACTIVE		PASSIVE, DEPONENT	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Pres. Stem</i> + re	{ <i>Pres. Stem</i> + rī (I, II, IV) <i>Pres. Stem</i> + ī (III Con.)	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Perf. Stem</i> + isse	<i>P. P.</i> and esse	
ACTIVE, DEPONENT		PASSIVE	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i> and esse	<i>P. P.</i> and fore § 183 e	
	<i>Ac. Supine</i> and ire	<i>Ac. Supine</i> and irī § 215 g	

178. Contractions

-v-, -ve-, -vē-, and -vi- are often omitted; § 217 c.

179. The Active Voice represents the *subject* as *acting*.*Act. Puer librum domum fert the boy is-taking the book home.*180. a. The Passive Voice represents the *subject* as *acted upon*. The passive developed from the Middle Voice (which represents the *subject* as *acting upon itself*) as follows:b. The reflexive pronoun *se self* was annexed to active verbs, as *fert is-carrying*, making * *fertise is-carrying-him-*

self, which became (* *fertere*, then * *ferter*, then) *fertur*; -s- between vowels becoming -r-; cf. “was” and “were,” “us” and “our” (formerly “ure,” then “oure”).

c. *Fertur* had to mean not only *he-carries-himself* or *rushes*, but also *he-is carried* (by something or somebody), e.g.

Mid. Puer in domum fertur *the boy takes-himself to the house.*

Pass. Liber ā puero fertur *a book is-being-brought by the boy.*

181. a. But *sē* reappears elsewhere in the sentence, as in
Puer se domum confert *the boy is-betaking-himself to his home.*
Se paratum arbitratur (*for-himself*) *he considers himself ready.*

b. Middle forms still replace *sē* in some verbs.

Domos revertuntur

(*turn-themselves-back home*),
they return to their homes.

In flumine lavatur

(*he washes-self in the river*),
he bathes in the river.

Galeam induitur

he puts a helmet on-self,
he puts his helmet on.

Gladium cingitur

he girds a sword on-himself,
he girds his sword on.

182. a. Deponent verbs have lost the active forms.

Inimicōs verētur

he dreads the enemies down-in-his-heart or *he fears his enemies.*

Librīs ūtitur

he avails-himself of books,
he enjoys-himself with books,
makes-use of or uses books.

Graditur

he is-moving-himself gradually,
is-taking-steps, comes, goes.

Gladiō potitur

makes-himself-able with a sword,
he takes possession of a sword,
he gets hold of or gets a sword.

b. The verbs, *utī help-self* and *potirī make-self-able*, and a few others take the Ablative Case. See Int. 5, i; also § 56, 6.

183. *sum, esse, fui, — possum, posse, potui, —*
am be was been am able be able was able

PRESENT

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>b.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>
<i>sum</i> *	<i>am</i>	<i>sim I be, may be</i>	<i>possum</i>	<i>I can</i>	<i>possim be able,</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>art</i>	<i>sis thou be</i>	<i>potes</i>	<i>thou canst</i>	<i>possis may</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>sit he be § 137 c</i>	<i>potest</i>	<i>he can</i>	<i>possit</i>
<i>sumus</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>sīmus we be</i>	<i>possumus</i>	<i>we can</i>	<i>possimus</i>
<i>estis</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>sītis you be</i>	<i>potestis</i>	<i>you can</i>	<i>possitis</i>
<i>sunt</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>sint they be § 28 b</i>	<i>possunt</i>	<i>they can</i>	<i>possint</i>

IMPERFECT (continuing in the past)

<i>eram</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>essem were</i> ¹	<i>poteram</i>	<i>could or</i>	<i>possem might,</i>
<i>eras</i>	<i>wast</i>	<i>esses were</i>	<i>poteras</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>posses could or</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>esset were</i>	<i>poterat</i>	<i>able</i>	<i>posset were</i> ²
<i>erāmus</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>essēmus were</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>		<i>possemus able</i>
<i>erātis</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>essetis were</i>	<i>poterātis</i>		<i>possētis</i>
<i>erant</i> ³	<i>were</i>	<i>essent</i> ³ <i>were</i>	<i>poterant</i> ⁴		<i>possent</i> ⁴

FUTURE

<i>ero</i>	<i>I shall be cf. § 170 -bi-</i>	<i>poterō</i>	<i>shall be able</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>thou wilt be</i>	<i>poteris</i>	<i>wilt be able</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>he will be § 156 a</i>	<i>poterit</i>	<i>will be able § 156 a</i>
<i>erimus</i>	<i>we will be</i>	<i>poterimus</i>	<i>shall be able</i>
<i>eritis</i>	<i>you will be</i>	<i>poteritis</i>	<i>will be able</i>
<i>erunt</i>	<i>they will be</i>	<i>poterunt</i>	<i>will be able</i>

¹ Sometimes *might be, should be, or would be*; ² *might be able, should be able, would be able*. ³ Note that *-s-* of the stem *es-* becomes *-r-* between vowels; cf. the English *is* and *are, was* and *were*. ⁴ Note that the element *pot-* *able* becomes *pos-* before *-s-*; *ts* becomes *ss* or *s* in Latin.

* Forms underlined are the *Principal Parts* (§ 161). Note that, both in meaning and use, they correspond to the *Principal Parts* of English verbs, but that the meaning of the Latin forms is broader. See §§ 98-9; 101, 121-3; 127-135.

c. PERFECT (finished in the past) d.

<u>fuī</u> <i>I was</i> ¹	<u>fuerim</u> <i>were</i> ¹	<u>potuī</u> <i>I could</i> ²	<u>potuerim</u> <i>could</i> ²
<u>fuisti</u> <i>wast</i>	<u>fueris</u> <i>were</i>	<u>potuisti</u> <i>couldst</i>	<u>potueris</u>
<u>fuit</u> <i>was</i>	<u>fuerit</u> <i>were</i> § 28 b	<u>potuit</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potuerit</u> § 156 b
<u>fuimus</u> <i>were</i>	<u>fuerimus</u> <i>were</i>	<u>potuimus</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potuerimus</u>
<u>fuistis</u> <i>were</i>	<u>fueritis</u> <i>were</i>	<u>potuistis</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potueritis</u>
<u>fuerunt</u> or <u>fuere</u> <i>were</i>	<u>fuerint</u> <i>were</i>	<u>potuerunt</u> or <u>potuere</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potuerint</u>

PLUPERFECT § 156 c

<u>fueram</u> <i>had</i>	<u>fuissem</u> <i>had been</i>	<u>potueram</u> <i>had</i>	<u>potuissem</u> <i>had</i>
<u>fueras</u> <i>been</i>	<u>fuissem</u>	<u>potueras</u> <i>been</i>	<u>potuisses</u> <i>been</i>
<u>fuerat</u>	<u>fuisset</u>	<u>potuerat</u> <i>able</i>	<u>potuisset</u> <i>able</i>
<u>fuerāmus</u>	<u>fuissemus</u>	<u>potuerāmus</u>	<u>potuissemus</u>
<u>fuerātis</u>	<u>fuissetis</u>	<u>potuerātis</u>	<u>potuissetis</u>
<u>fuerant</u>	<u>fuissem</u>	<u>potuerant</u>	<u>potuissent</u>

FUTURE PERFECT

<u>fuero</u> <i>I shall have been</i>	<u>potuerō</u> <i>I shall have been able</i>
<u>fueris</u>	<u>potueris</u>
<u>fuerit</u> § 156 a	<u>potuerit</u> § 156 a
<u>fuerimus</u>	<u>potuerimus</u>
<u>fueritis</u>	<u>potueritis</u>
<u>fuerint</u>	<u>potuerint</u>

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<u>es</u> <i>be (thou)</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<u>estō</u> ⁴	<u>estōte</u> ⁴
	<u>este</u> <i>be (ye)</i>		<u>estō</u> ⁵	<u>suntō</u> ⁵ § 173

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives)

<i>Pres.</i>	— — <u>ens</u> <i>a being</i> ³	<u>potens</u> -ns -ns <i>(being) able</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<u>futurus</u> -a -um	§§ 84, 102, -se

¹ or have been; ² or have been able.⁴ Thou shalt be, ye shall be.³ In Eng. entity.⁵ He shall be, they shall be.

e.

INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>esse</i> (to) <i>be, being</i>	<i>posse</i> (to) <i>be able, being able</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>fuisse</i> (to) <i>have been</i>	<i>potuisse</i> (to) <i>have been able</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>futurus esse</i> or fore ¹	—

184. do, dare, dedī, datus, 98, 121 b, 128

give gave given

INDICATIVE

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives)

<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>dāns</i> § 97	<i>datus</i> § 98
<i>dat</i>	<i>datur</i>	<i>datūrus</i> § 102	<i>dandus</i> § 104
<i>dabat</i>	<i>dabātur</i> ²		
<i>dabit</i>	<i>dabitur</i>	GERUND (Noun)	GERUNDIVE (Adj.)
<i>dedīt</i>	<i>datus est</i>	<i>dare giving</i>	—
<i>dederat</i>	<i>datus erat</i>	<i>dandī</i> § 129	<i>dandī -ae -ī</i>
<i>dederit</i>	<i>datus erit</i>		

SUPINE (Noun)

<i>Ac. datum</i>	<i>datum</i> <i>ibat was</i>
<i>Ab. datū</i> § 157 b, c	<i>going to give</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>det</i>	<i>dētur</i>
<i>daret</i>	<i>darētur</i>
<i>dederit</i>	<i>datus sit</i>
<i>dedisset</i>	<i>datus esset</i>

INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres. dare</i> (to) <i>give</i>	<i>dari</i> (to) <i>be put</i>
<i>Perf. dedisse</i>	<i>datus esse</i>
<i>Fut. daturus esse</i>	<i>datus fore</i> or <i>datum ire</i>
	<i>datum iri</i>

IMPERATIVE

dā,³ *date, etc., cf. § 189*

Cf. §§ 103 d, 215 g

¹ *to be going to be* (the only Fut. Inf. having a single word form), cf. § 130 b.² The only short vowel in Latin before -bā- or -bi-; the only short a in Latin verbs before -mus -tis or before -tur -mur -mini occur in the forms of *dare* and its compound *circumdare*.³ Only the forms *dās givest* and *dā give (thou)* have -ā- in the stem.

185. a. **desum, deesse ; absum, abesse, etc.** (see § 183).

am lacking 3 *am away* ab 6 § 221 b

fail § 56, 3 *am absent or wanting*

PRESENT

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>b.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>
dēsum <i>fail</i> ¹		desim <i>fail</i>	absum <i>am away</i>		absim <i>be away</i>
dees <i>failest</i>		desis <i>fail</i>	abes <i>art away</i>		absis <i>be away</i>
deest <i>fails</i>		dēsīt <i>fail</i>	abest <i>is away</i>		absit <i>be away</i>
desumus <i>fail</i>		desīmus <i>fail</i>	absumus <i>are away</i>		absīmus §147a
deestis <i>fail</i>		desītis <i>fail</i>	abestis <i>are away</i>		absītis
desunt <i>fail</i>		desint <i>fail</i>	absunt <i>are away</i>		absint

p. 10, l. 18

IMPERFECT (continuing in the past)

deeram <i>failed</i>	deessem <i>failed</i> ²	aberam <i>was</i>	abessem <i>were</i> ³
deerās	deessēs	aberas <i>away</i>	abesses <i>away</i>
deerat § 156 a	deesset § 156 c	aberat § 147 b	abesset § 147 a
deerāmus	deessēmus	aberāmus	abessēmus
deerātis	deessētis	aberātis	abessētis
deerant	deessent	aberant § 221	abessent

FUTURE

deerō <i>shall fail</i>	aberō <i>shall be away</i>
deeris <i>wilt fail</i>	aberis <i>wilt be away</i>
deerit <i>will fail</i> § 156 a	aberit <i>will be away</i> § 156 a
deerimus <i>shall fail</i>	aberimus <i>shall be away</i>
deeritis <i>will fail</i>	aberitis <i>will be away</i>
deerunt <i>will fail</i>	aberunt <i>will be away</i>

¹ Note that to form the compounds of **esse** it is necessary merely to prefix the prepositions **a, ab, dē, in, inter**, etc., to its various forms. **dē-** becomes **de-** and **prō-** becomes **prōd-**, before **e-**. ² *might fail, should be lacking, would be lacking (to), etc.* ³ *might be away, should be wanting, would be absent, were to be away, etc.* § 138 a, f

c.	PERFECT (finished in the past)		d.
defui <i>failed</i> ¹	defuerim <i>failed</i> ¹	āfui <i>was away</i> ²	āfuerim
defuisti	dēfueris § 147 <i>g</i>	āfuisti	āfueris
defuit	defuerit § 156 <i>b</i>	āfuit	āfuerit
dēfuimus	defuerimus § 149	āfuimus	āfuerimus
dēfuistis	dēfueritis	āfuistis	āfueritis
defuerunt or defuerint § 28 <i>b</i>		āfuerunt or	āfuerint
dēfuēre		āfuēre	

PLUPERFECT

defueram	dēfuissem <i>had</i>	āfueram	āfuissem
defueras	dēfuisses <i>failed</i>	āfueras	āfuissēs
dēfuerat	defuisset § 156 <i>c</i>	āfuerat	āfuisset § 156 <i>c</i>
dēfuerāmus	dēfuissēmus	āfuerāmus	āfuissēmus
dēfuerātis	dēfuissētis	āfuerātis	āfuissētis
dēfuerant	dēfuissent	āfuerant	āfuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

defuero <i>shall have failed</i>	afuero <i>shall have been away</i>
defueris , etc.	afueris , etc.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	dees <i>be (thou) lacking</i>	abes <i>be (thou) away</i>
	deeste <i>fail (ye)</i> , etc.	abeste <i>be (ye) away</i> , etc.

PARTICIPLES (Adjective)

<i>Pres.</i>	—	absens § 97
<i>Fut.</i>	defuturus -a -um	afuturus § 102, -se

INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres.</i>	deesse <i>(to) be lacking</i>	abesse <i>(to) be away</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	defuisse	āfuisse § 99
<i>Fut.</i>	dēfuturus esse , defore ³	āfuturus esse , āfore ³

¹ *have failed, did fail.*² *have been away.*³ § 183 *e*

- 186.** volo, velle, voluī, — *will, (to) wish, be willing* § 130
 nōlō, nolle, nolūī, — *will not, not wish, be unwilling*
 malō, malle, maluī, — *will rather, prefer*

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> volō <i>I will</i>	<u>nōlo</u> <i>I will not</i>	<u>malo</u> <i>I will rather</i>
<i>vīs</i> <i>thou wilt</i>	<u>nōn vīs</u> <i>wilt not</i>	<u>mavis</u> <i>preferest</i>
<i>vult</i> <i>he will</i>	<u>nōn vult</u> <i>will not</i>	<u>mavult</u> <i>prefers</i>
<i>volumus</i> <i>we will</i>	<u>nōlumus</u> etc.	<u>malumus</u> etc.
<i>vultis</i> <i>you will</i>	<u>nōn vultis</u>	<u>māvultis</u>
<i>volunt</i> <i>you will</i>	<u>nōlunt</u> cf. § 170, -e-	<u>malunt</u> § 137
<i>Imp.</i> volebam <i>I would</i>	<u>nolebam</u> <i>wouldn't</i>	<u>malebam</u> <i>preferred</i>
<i>Fut.</i> volam <i>shall wish</i>	<u>nolam</u> § 164	<u>mālam</u>
<i>Perf.</i> voluī ¹ <i>I would</i>	<u>nōluī</u> <i>would not</i>	<u>maluī</u> <i>preferred</i>
<i>Plup.</i> volueram	<u>nōlueram</u> ¹	<u>mālueram</u>
<i>Futp.</i> voluerō	<u>nōluerō</u>	<u>māluerō</u> ¹

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i> velim <i>be willing</i>	<u>nolim</u> §§ 140-1	<u>malim</u> <i>prefer</i>
<i>Imp.</i> vellem <i>wished</i>	<u>nōllem</u> § 156 b, c	<u>mallem</u> <i>preferred</i>
<i>Perf.</i> voluerim ¹	<u>nōluerim</u>	<u>māluerim</u>
<i>Plup.</i> voluissem	<u>nōluissem</u> ¹	<u>māluissem</u>

INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres.</i> velle (to) will	<u>nōlle</u> <i>wish not</i>	<u>mālle</u> (to) prefer
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse	<u>nōluisse</u> § 121 a	<u>māluisse</u>

Part. volens willing; nolens unwilling. *Imv.* nōlī,² nōlīte don't

¹ All verbs are perfectly regular in the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses. The forms of *esse* and its compounds may be used as a model for all verbs in these tenses. ² § 141 a.

187. Prin. Parts: *vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus*

		INDICATIVE	
		Active	Passive
<i>Pres.</i>	<u><i>vocō</i></u> <i>I call, am calling</i>		<i>vocor</i> <i>I am called</i>
§ 171	<i>vocās</i>		<i>vocāris</i>
	<i>vocat</i> § 136		<i>vocātur</i> § 136
	<i>vocāmus</i>		<i>vocāmur</i>
	<i>vocātis</i>		<i>vocāminī</i>
	<i>vocant</i>		<i>vocantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>vocābam</i> <i>I was calling</i>		<i>vocābar</i> <i>I was called</i>
§ 171	<i>vocābās</i>		<i>vocābāre, vocābāris</i>
	<i>vocābat</i>		<i>vocābātur</i>
	<i>vocābāmus</i>		<i>vocābāmur</i>
	<i>vocābātis</i>		<i>vocābāminī</i>
	<i>vocābant</i>		<i>vocābantur</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>vocābō</i> <i>I shall call</i>		<i>vocābor</i> <i>I shall be called</i>
§ 171	<i>vocābis</i>		<i>vocābere, vocāberis</i>
	<i>vocābit</i>		<i>vocābitur</i>
	<i>vocābimus</i>		<i>vocābimur</i>
	<i>vocābitis</i>		<i>vocābiminī</i>
	<i>vocābunt</i>		<i>vocābuntur</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<u><i>vocāvī</i></u> <i>I called, have</i>	<i>vocātus</i> ¹	<i>sum</i> <i>I was called</i>
§ 171	<i>vocāvistī</i> <i>called</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>es</i>
§ 178	<i>vocāvit</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>est</i>
	<i>vocāvimus</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>sumus</i>
	<i>vocāvistis</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>estis</i>
	<i>vocāvērunt</i> , ² <i>vocāvēre</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>sunt</i>

¹ Agrees with the subject in gender and number.² -*runt* is a modified form of *sunt* § 168, note 3.

Note that Indicative and Subjunctive forms have *only twenty-two* different endings. Learn the stem (§ 163) used in each tense, the signs of the tenses and the vowel changes in the same.

188. English: (to) *call, called, called*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active		Passive	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vocem I call</i>	<i>vocer I be called</i>	
§ 172	<i>voces</i>	<i>vocēre, vocēris</i>	
	<i>vocet he call, etc.</i>	§ 139 <i>vocētur he be called</i>	
	<i>vocēmus § 141</i>	<i>vocēmur</i>	
	<i>vocētis</i>	<i>vocēminī</i>	
	<i>vocent</i>	<i>vocentur</i>	
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>vocarem I called</i>	<i>vocarer I were called</i>	
§ 172	<i>vocarēs</i>	<i>vocārēre, vocārēris</i>	
	<i>vocāret</i>	<i>vocārētur</i>	
	<i>vocārēmus</i>	<i>vocārēmur</i>	
	<i>vocārētis</i>	<i>vocārēminī</i>	
	<i>vocārent</i>	<i>vocārentur</i>	

The Subjunctive uses only the second set of endings, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§137 *b, c*), always change -*bā-* to -*rē-*, -*erā-* to -*issē-*, and *erā-* to *essē-*.

Always change -*bi-* to -*rē-*, -*eri-* to -*issē-*, *eri-* to *essē-*, if the writer's standpoint is past (see § 147 *g*).

(1st Conj.) Change -*bi-* to -*ē-*, -*eri-* to -*erī-*, *eri-* to *si-*, if the writer's standpoint is present (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>vocāverim I have called</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>sim I have been</i>
§ 172	<i>vocāveris</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>sis called</i>
§ 178	<i>vocāverit</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>sit § 156 b</i>
	<i>vocāverimus</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>simus</i>
	<i>vocāveritis</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>sitis</i>
	<i>vocāverint</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>sint</i>

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-*ā-* disappears before another vowel.

-*ā-* and -*ē-* become short before *nt* and before final -*m*, -*t*, or -*r*.

-*bi-* and -*eri-* become -*b-* and -*er-* before -*o*. -*erī-* (see § 170 *l*).

-*bi-* becomes -*be-* before -*r* and -*bu-* before -*nt*. § 170

187. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

	<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>vocāveram I had called</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>eram I had been</i>
§ 171	<i>vocāverās</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erās called</i>
§ 178	<i>vocāverat</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>vocāverāmus</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>vocāverātis</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>vocāverant</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>vocāverō I shall have</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erō I shall have</i>
§ 171	<i>vocāveris called</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>eris been called</i>
§ 178	<i>vocāverit</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>vocāverimus</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>vocāveritis</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>vocāverint</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

190. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vocāns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>		—	—	—
	<i>vocantis</i>	<i>calling</i>					
<i>Perf.</i>	—				<i>vocātus, vocāta, vocātum</i>		
					<i>(having been) called</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>vocaturus</i>	<i>-ura</i>	<i>-urum</i>		<i>vocandus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to call</i>				<i>(deserving) to be called</i>		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>vocatus</i>	<i>vocatus</i>	<i>Eorum vocandōrum facultas</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>vocatus</i>	<i>vocatum</i>	<i>opportunity to call them</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>vocatui</i>	<i>vocatibus</i>	<i>Ad eōs vocandōs parātus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>vocatum</i>	<i>vocatus</i>	<i>ready to call them</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>vocatus</i>	<i>vocatus</i>	<i>De eis vocandis desperat</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>vocatu</i>	<i>vocatibus</i>	<i>despairs of calling them</i>

188. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

Active

Passive

<i>Plup.</i> vocavissem <i>I had called</i>	vocatus	essem <i>I had been</i>
§ 172 vocavisses	vocatus	esses <i>called</i>
§ 178 vocavisset	vocatus	esset § 156 e
vocāvissēmus	vocātī	essēmus
vocāvissētis	vocātī	essētis
vocāvissent	vocātī	essent

189.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> vocā <i>call thou</i>	vocāre <i>be thou called</i>
§ 173 vocāte <i>call ye</i>	vocāminī <i>be ye called</i>
<i>Fut.</i> vocatō <i>thou shalt call</i>	vocator <i>thou shalt be called</i>

190. b. GERUND (Noun) § 129 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

Singular

Singular

<i>N.</i> vocare <i>to call; calling</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i> vocandī <i>of calling, to call</i>	vocandī	-ndae	-ndī
<i>D.</i> vocando (<i>for</i>) <i>calling</i>	vocandō	-ndae	-ndō
<i>Ac.</i> vocandum, vocare <i>calling</i>	vocandum	-ndam	-ndum
ad vocandum <i>to call</i>	—		
<i>Ab.</i> vocando <i>by calling, etc.</i>	vocandō	-ndā	-ndō

Spatium vocandī est

there is time to call

Plural

vocandōrum -ndārum -ndōrum

Eos vocatum venit § 157

he came to call them

vocandīs -ndīs -ndīs

vocandos -ndas -nda, etc.

e.

INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

<i>Pres.</i> vocāre (<i>to</i>) <i>call, be calling</i>	vocārī (<i>to</i>) <i>be called</i> § 127
<i>Perf.</i> vocāvisse (<i>to</i>) <i>have called</i>	vocātus esse § 99
<i>Fut.</i> vocaturus esse } <i>be going</i>	vocatus fore } <i>be going to</i>
§215 g vocatum ire } <i>to call</i>	vocatum irī } <i>be called</i>

The stem vowel -ā- becomes short before -nd and -nt. § 28 b

191. a. cōnor, cōnārī, —, cōnātus *exert self, attempt*

INDICATIVE

Active

Deponent

<i>Pres.</i>		<u>cōnor</u> <i>I exert myself, try</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		cōnābar <i>I tried, was trying</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	§ 171	cōnābor <i>I shall try</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§§ 100-1	cōnātus sum <i>I (have) tried</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		cōnātus eram <i>I had tried</i>
<i>Futp.</i>		cōnātus erō <i>shall have tried</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		cōner <i>I try, may try, etc.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 172	cōnārer <i>I tried, should try</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 156 b, c	cōnātus sim <i>I (have) tried</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		cōnātus essem <i>I had tried</i>

b.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		cōnāre <i>exert thyself, try</i>
	§ 173	cōnāmini <i>exert yourselves</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		cōnator <i>thou shall try</i>
		cōnator <i>he shall try</i>
		conantor <i>they shall try</i>

c.

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāns -āns -āns cōnantis <i>trying</i>	—
<i>Perf.</i>	—	cōnātus -a -um <i>having tried</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus -ūra -ūrum going to try	cōnandus -nda -ndum (deserving) to be tried

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

N. *conari* to try, trying

G. *cōnandī* to try, of trying

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. *cōnātus* *cōnātūs*

G. *cōnātūs* *cōnātuum*

D. *cōnātui* *cōnātibus*

Ac. *cōnātum* *cōnātūs*

Ab. *cōnātū* *cōnātibus*

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

cōnandī -ndae -ndī of trying

Cōnātūs tuōs compressī I put
down your attempts

Cōnātum eunt are going to try

Cōnātū dēsistunt they leave
off (from) trying

f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176

Pres.

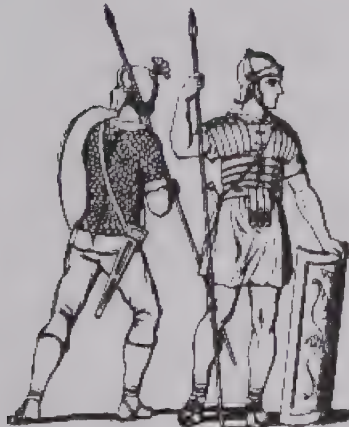
cōnārī (to) try, trying

Perf.

cōnātus esse (to) have tried

Fut. *cōnātūrus esse*

(to) be going to try



Legiōnāriī Militēs.

192. Prin. Parts : video, vidēre, vidī, vīsus

INDICATIVE

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<u>video</u> <i>I see, am seeing</i>	<u>videor</u> <i>I am seen, seem</i>
§ 171	vidēs	vidēris
	videt § 136	vidētur § 136
	vidēmus	vidēmur
	vidētis	vidēmini
	vident	videntur
<i>Imp.</i>	vidēbam <i>I was seeing</i>	vidēbar <i>I was seen</i>
§ 171	vidēbās	vidēbāre, vidēbāris
	vidēbat	vidēbātur
	vidēbāmus	vidēbāmur
	vidēbātis	vidēbāmini
	vidēbant	vidēbantur
<i>Fut.</i>	vidēbō <i>I shal' see</i>	vidēbor <i>I shall be seen</i>
§ 171	vidēbis	vidēbere, vidēberis
	vidēbit	vidēbitur
	vidēbimus	vidēbimur
	vidēbitis	vidēbimini
	vidēbunt	vidēbuntur
<i>Perf.</i>	vidī <i>I saw, have seen</i>	vīsus ¹ sum <i>I was seen or</i>
§ 171	vidistī	vīsus es <i>seemed</i>
	vidit	vīsus est
	vidimus	vīsī sumus
	vidistis ²	vīsī estis ²
	vidērunt, vidēre	vīsī sunt

¹ Agrees with the subject in gender and number.² -istis = estis, cf. § 213, note 2.

Note that vidēre has exactly the same endings as vocāre and the same tense signs except in the Present Sub. See note, § 187.

193.

English: (to) *see, saw, seen*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active

Passive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>videam I see</i>	<i>videar I be seen</i>
§ 172	<i>videās thou see</i>	<i>videāre, videāris</i>
	<i>videat he see § 139</i>	<i>videatur he be seen</i>
	<i>videamus § 141</i>	<i>videāmur</i>
	<i>videātis</i>	<i>videāmini</i>
	<i>videant</i>	<i>videantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>viderem I saw, should</i>	<i>viderer I were seen, etc.</i>
§ 172	<i>vidērēs see, etc.</i>	<i>vidērēre, vidērēris</i>
	<i>vidēret</i>	<i>vidērētur</i>
	<i>vidērēmus</i>	<i>vidērēmur</i>
	<i>vidērētis</i>	<i>vidērēmini</i>
	<i>vidērent</i>	<i>vidērentur</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change *-bā-* to *-rē-*, *-erā-* to *-issē-*, and *erā-* to *esse-*.

Always change *-bi-* to *-rē-*, *-eri-* to *issē-*, *eri-* to *essē-*, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(2d Conj.) Change *-bi-* to *-ā-*, *-eri-* to *-erī-*, and *eri-* to *sī-*, if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>viderim I have seen</i>	<i>visus</i>	<i>sim I have been</i>
§ 172	<i>videris</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>sīs seen</i>
	<i>viderit</i>	<i>visus</i>	<i>sit § 156 b</i>
	<i>viderimus</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
	<i>viderītis</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>sītis</i>
	<i>viderint</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>sint</i>

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-ē- becomes short before another vowel.

-ā- and *-ē-* become short before *nt* and final *-m, -t, or -r*.

-bi- and *-eri-* become *-b-* and *-er-* before *o*. *-eri-* (see § 170 *i*).

-bi- becomes *-be-* before *-r* and *-bu-* before *-nt*. § 170.

192. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>videram I had seen</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>eram I had been seen</i>
§ 171	<i>viderās</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erās</i>
	<i>viderat</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>viderāmus</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>viderātis</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>viderant</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>viderō I shall have</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erō I shall have been</i>
§ 171	<i>videris seen</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>eris seen</i>
	<i>viderit</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>viderimus</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>videritis</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>viderint</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

195. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vidēns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	—	—	—
	<i>videntis</i>	<i>seeing</i>				
<i>Perf.</i>	—			<i>vīsus</i>	<i>visa</i>	<i>vīsum</i>
				<i>(having been) seen</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>vīsūrus</i>	<i>-ūra</i>	<i>-ūrum</i>	<i>videndus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to see</i>			<i>(deserving) to be seen</i>		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	Plur.	
<i>N.</i>	<i>vīsus sight</i>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>Mātris videndae facultās</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>vīsuum</i>	<i>opportunity to see mother</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>vīsui</i>	<i>vīsibus</i>	<i>Diēs mātři videndae dicta</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>vīsum</i>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>day set to see mother</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>Miserābile vīsū § 157</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>vīsū</i>	<i>vīsibus</i>	<i>pitiāble to look upon</i>

193. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

Active		Passive	
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>vidissem I had seen</i>	<i>visus</i>	<i>essem I had been seen</i>
§ 172	<i>vidissēs</i>	<i>visus</i>	<i>essēs § 156 c</i>
	<i>vidisset</i>	<i>visus</i>	<i>esset</i>
	<i>vidissēmus</i>	<i>visi</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
	<i>vidissētis</i>	<i>visi</i>	<i>essētis</i>
	<i>vidissent</i>	<i>visi</i>	<i>essent</i>

194.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vidē see thou</i>	<i>vidēre be thou seen</i>
§ 173	<i>vidēte see ye</i>	<i>vidēmini be ye seen</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>videtō thou shalt see</i>	<i>videtor thou shalt be seen</i>

195. b. GERUND (Noun) § 175 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

Singular		Singular		
<i>N.</i>	<i>vidēre to see, seeing</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i>	<i>videndī of seeing, to see</i>	<i>videndī</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>videndō for) seeing</i>	<i>videndo</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>videndum, videre seeing</i>	<i>videndum</i>	<i>-ndam</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>ad videndum to see</i>	—		
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>videndō by seeing, etc.</i>	<i>videndō</i>	<i>-ndā</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Videndī spatium datur</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>time to see is given</i>	<i>videndōrum</i>	<i>-ndārum</i>	<i>-ndōrum</i>
<i>Hōra videndō dicta est</i>		<i>videndis</i>	<i>-ndis</i>	<i>-ndis</i>
	<i>the hour is set to see</i>	<i>videndos</i>	<i>-ndas</i>	<i>-nda, etc.</i>

INFINITIVE (Noun) §§ 177, 127

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>videre (to) see, be seeing</i>	<i>videri (to) be seen or seem</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>vidisse (to) have seen</i>	<i>visus esse (to) have been seen</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>visurus esse } be going to</i>	<i>visus fore } be going to</i>
§ 215 g	<i>visum ire } see</i>	<i>visum iri } be seen</i>

The stem vowel *-ē-* becomes short before *-nd* and *-nt*.

196. a. vereor, verēri, —, veritus *reverence, dread*

INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
Pres.		<u>vereor</u> <i>I am afraid, fear</i>
Imp.		verēbar <i>was afraid, feared</i>
Fut.	§ 171	verēbor <i>I shall fear</i>
Perf.	§ 100-1	veritus sum <i>I (have) feared</i>
Plup.		veritus eram <i>I had feared</i>
Futp.		veritus erō <i>shall have feared</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		verear <i>I fear, may fear, etc.</i>
Imp.	§ 171	verērer <i>feared, might fear</i>
Perf.	§ 156 b, c	veritus sim <i>I (have) feared</i>
Plup.		veritus essem <i>I had feared</i>

b.

IMPERATIVE

Pres.		verēre <i>fear (thou), revere</i>
	§ 173	vereminī <i>fear (ye), dread</i>
Fut.		veretor <i>thou shalt fear</i>
		veretor <i>he shall fear</i>
		verentor <i>they shall fear</i>

c.

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	verens -ens -ens	—
	verentis <i>fearing</i>	
Perf.	—	<u>veritus</u> -a -um <i>having feared</i>
Fut.	veriturus -ura -urum	verendus -nda -ndum
	<i>going to fear</i>	<i>(deserving) to be feared</i>

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

N. vererī to fear, fearing

—

G. verendī of fearing, to fear verendī -ndae -ndī

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. —

G. —

D. —

Ac. [veritum]

Ab. [veritū]

Many case forms of
supines are wanting.

In many verbs, only forms
in -um or -ū are found.

f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

Pres. vererī (to) fear, be afraid

Perf. veritus esse (to) have feared

Fut. veriturus esse

—

(to) be going to fear

Examples

Ne eius animum offendat veretur fears he will offend his mind

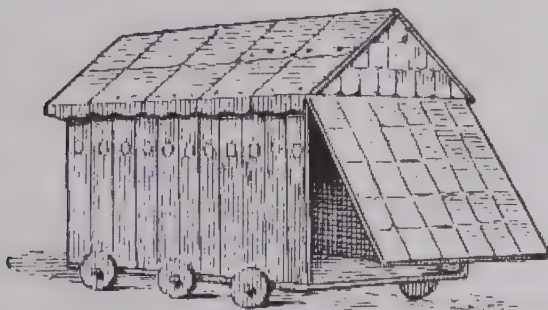
Ne eum offenderet verebatur feared that he might offend him

Nōne id verebere? will you not fear that?

Veritus est ut me videret he feared that he wouldn't see me

Insidias veritus (because he) feared an ambush

Verendum mihi non erit I'll not have to fear § 106 d



Vinea.

197. Prin. Parts.: ago, agere, ēgī, āctus

		INDICATIVE	
		Active	Passive
Pres.	<u>agō</u> <i>I drive, am driving</i>	<u>agor</u> <i>I am driven</i>	
§ 171	<u>agis</u>	<u>ageris</u>	
	<u>agit</u> § 136	<u>agitur</u>	
	<u>agimus</u>	<u>agimur</u>	
	<u>agitis</u>	<u>agimini</u>	
	<u>agunt</u>	<u>aguntur</u>	
Imp.	<u>agēbam</u> <i>I was driving</i>	<u>agēbar</u> <i>I was driven</i>	
§ 171	<u>agēbās</u>	<u>agēbāre, agēbāris</u>	
	<u>agēbat</u>	<u>agēbātur</u>	
	<u>agēbāmus</u>	<u>agēbāmur</u>	
	<u>agēbātis</u>	<u>agēbāmini</u>	
	<u>agēbant</u>	<u>agēbantur</u>	
Fut.	<u>agam</u> <i>I shall drive</i>	<u>agar</u> <i>I shall be driven</i>	
§ 171	<u>agēs</u>	<u>agēre, agēris</u>	
	<u>aget</u>	<u>agētur</u>	
	<u>agēmus</u>	<u>agēmur</u>	
	<u>agētis</u>	<u>agēmini</u>	
	<u>agent</u>	<u>agentur</u>	
Perf.	<u>ēgī</u> <i>I drove, I have driven</i>	<u>āctus</u> ¹	<u>sum</u> <i>I have been driven</i>
§ 171	<u>ēgistī</u>	<u>āctus</u>	<u>es</u>
	<u>ēgit</u> ²	<u>āctus</u>	<u>est</u> ²
	<u>ēgimus</u>	<u>āctī</u>	<u>sumus</u>
	<u>ēgistis</u>	<u>āctī</u>	<u>estis</u>
	<u>ēgērunt, ēgēre</u>	<u>āctī</u>	<u>sunt</u>

¹ Agrees with the subject in gender and number. ² -it and -erit are modified forms of *est* and *sit*; *ēgit* = *is having driven* = *has driven* or *drove*, etc. Cf. §§ 99, 183, note 3.

Note that *agere* has exactly the same tense signs as *vidēre* and *vocāre* except in the Future Ind. Cf. § 192.

198. English : (to) *drive, drove, driven*, or (to) *do, did, done*

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>agam I drive</i>		<i>agar I be driven</i>
§ 172	<i>agās thou drive</i>		<i>agāre, agāris</i>
	<i>agat he drive</i> § 139		<i>agātur he be driven</i>
	<i>agāmus</i> § 141		<i>agāmur</i>
	<i>agātis</i>		<i>agāmini</i>
	<i>agant</i>		<i>agantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>agerem I drove</i>		<i>agerer I were driven</i>
§ 172	<i>agerēs</i>		<i>agerēre, agerēris</i>
	<i>ageret</i>		<i>agerētur</i>
	<i>agerēmus</i>		<i>agerēmur</i>
	<i>agerētis</i>		<i>agerēmini</i>
	<i>agerent</i>		<i>agerentur</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change -*bā-* to -*rē-*, -*erā-* to -*issē-*, and *erā-* to *essē-*.

Always change -*ē-* to -*rē-*, -*eri-* to -*issē-*, *eri-* to *essē-*, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -*ē-* to -*ā-*, -*eri-* to -*erī-*, and *eri-* to *sī-* if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ēgerim I have driven</i>	<i>āctus</i>	<i>sim I have been driven</i>
§ 172	<i>ēgeris</i>	<i>āctus</i>	<i>sis</i> § 156 <i>b</i>
	<i>ēgerit</i> ²	<i>āctus</i>	<i>sit</i> ²
	<i>ēgerimus</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
	<i>ēgeritis</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>sītis</i>
	<i>ēgerint</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>sint</i>

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-*e-* disappears before *another vowel*.

-*e-* becomes -*i-* before *m, s, or t*; -*u-* before *nt*.

-*e-* becomes *ē* before *b*. -*erī-* (see § 170 *i*).

-*ā-* and -*ē-* become *short* before -*nt* or *final -m, -t, or -r*.

§ 170

197. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>egeram I had driven, had</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>eram I had been driven</i>
§ 171	<i>egerās been driving</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>eras</i>
	<i>egerat</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>egerāmus</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>ēgerātis</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>ēgerant</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>egero I shall have driven</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>ero I shall have been</i>
§ 171	<i>egeris</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>eris driven</i>
	<i>ēgerit</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>ēgerimus</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>ēgeritis</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>ēgerint</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

200. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>agēns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	—	—	—
	<i>agentis</i>	<i>driving, doing</i>				
<i>Perf.</i>	—			<i>āctus</i>	<i>ācta</i>	<i>actum</i>
				<i>(having been) done, driven</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>āctūrus</i>	<i>-ūra</i>	<i>-ūrum</i>	<i>agendus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to drive or do</i>			<i>(deserving) to be driven</i>		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	Plur.	
N.	<i>āctus act</i>	<i>āctūs acts</i>	Omnia erant agenda
G.	<i>āctūs</i>	<i>āctuum</i>	<i>everything had to be done</i>
D.	<i>āctui</i>	<i>āctibus</i>	Tempus rei agenda
Ac.	<i>āctum</i>	<i>āctūs</i>	<i>time to do the thing</i>
V.	<i>actus</i>	<i>actus</i>	Boves actum it
Ab.	<i>āctū</i>	<i>āctibus</i>	<i>is going to drive the cows</i>

198. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>egissem I had driven</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>essem I had been</i>
§ 172	<i>egisses</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>esses driven § 156 c</i>
	<i>ēgisset</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>esset</i>
	<i>ēgissēmus</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
	<i>ēgissētis</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>essetis</i>
	<i>ēgissent</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>essent</i>

199.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>age drive thou § 214</i>	<i>agere be thou driven</i>
§ 173	<i>agite drive ye</i>	<i>agiminī be ye driven</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>agitō thou shalt drive</i>	<i>agitor thou shalt be driven</i>

200. b. GERUND (Noun) § 175 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>agere to drive, driving</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i>	<i>agendī of driving, to drive</i>	<i>agendī</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>agendō (for) driving</i>	<i>agendō</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>agendum, agere driving, etc., ad agendum to drive</i>	<i>agendum</i>	<i>-ndam</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>agendō by driving, etc.</i>	<i>agendō</i>	<i>-ndā</i>	<i>-ndo, etc.</i>
<i>Agere oportet</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
<i>to act is necessary</i>		<i>agendōrum</i>	<i>-ndārum</i>	<i>-ndōrum</i>
<i>Tempus agendī est</i>		<i>agendis</i>	<i>-ndis</i>	<i>-ndis</i>
<i>it is time to act</i>		<i>agendōs</i>	<i>-ndās</i>	<i>-nda</i>

e. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177 e

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>agere (to) drive, be doing</i>	<i>agi (to) be driven</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ēgisse (to) have driven</i>	<i>actus esse (to) have been</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>acturus esse } be going</i>	<i>actus fore be going to</i>
§ 215g	<i>actum ire } to drive</i>	<i>actum iri be driven</i>

— becomes long before -ns; disappears before another vowel.

201. a. ūtor, ūtī, —, ūsus *help self (with), use, enjoy*

INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
Pres.		<u>ūtor</u> <i>I help myself, use</i> 6
Imp.	§ 182 b	ūtēbar <i>I used, was enjoying</i>
Fut.	§ 171	ūtar <i>I shall use or enjoy</i>
Perf.	§ 100-1	ūsus sum <i>I (have) used</i>
Plup.		ūsus eram <i>I had used</i>
Futp.		ūsus erō <i>I shall have used</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		ūtar <i>I use, may or shall use</i>
Imp.	§ 171	ūterer <i>I used, would use</i>
Perf.	§ 156 b, c	ūsus sim <i>I (have) used</i>
Plup.		ūsus essem <i>I had used</i>

b.

IMPERATIVE

Pres.		ūtere <i>help thyself, use</i>
	§ 173	utimini <i>help yourselves, use</i>
Fut.		utitor <i>thou shalt use</i>
		utitor <i>he shall use</i>
		utuntor <i>they shall use</i>

c.

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	utens, utens, utens utentis <i>using</i>	—
Perf.	—	usus, usa, usum <i>having used</i>
Fut.	usurus, usura, usūrum going to use or enjoy	utendus, utenda, utendum (deserving) to be used

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

Ab. *utī to use, using*

G. *ūtendī of using, to use*

ūtendī, ūtendae, ūtendi

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. *usus use* *usus uses*

G. *ūsūs* *ūsuum*

D. *usui* *usibus*

Ac. *usum* *ūsūs*

Ab. *ūsū* *ūsibus*

*Qui magnō nobis usui ad
bellum gerendum erant
which were (for) great use to
us for carrying on the war
Ex usu fuit was of advantage*

f.

INFINITIVE (Noun)

Pres.

utī (to) use, using

Perf.

usus esse (to) have used

Fut. *usus esse*

(to) be going to use



Kalendārium Rei Rūsticæ.

202. Prin. Parts: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus*

INDICATIVE

Active

Passive

*Pres. capiō I take, am taking**capior I am taken*§ 171 *capis**caperis**capit**capitur* § 136*capimus**capimur**capitis**capimini**capiunt**capiuntur**Imp. capiēbam I was taking**capiēbar I was taken*§ 171 *capiēbās**capiēbāre, capiēbāri**capiēbat**capiēbātur**capiēbāmus**capiēbāmur**capiēbātis**capiēbāmini**capiēbant**capiēbantur**Fut. capiam I shall take**capiar I shall be taken*§ 171 *capiēs**capiēre, capiēris**capiet**capiētur**capiēmus**capiēmur**capiētis**capiēmini**capient**capientur**Perf. cēpī I took, have taken**captus*¹ *sum I was taken*§ 171 *cēpistī**captus* *es**cēpit**captus* *est**cēpimus**capti* *sumus**cēpistis**capti* *estis**cēpērunt,*² *cēpēre**capti* *sunt*²¹ Agrees with the subject in gender and number.² -runt = sunt; cēpērunt = are having taken = have taken.

Indicative and Subjunctive forms have only twenty-two different endings. See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193.

203.

English : (to) *take, took, taken*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active

Passive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capiam I take</i>	<i>capiar I be taken</i>
§ 172	<i>capiās thou take</i>	<i>capiāre, capiāris</i>
	<i>capiat he take</i> § 139	<i>capiātur he be taken</i>
	<i>capiāmus</i> § 141	<i>capiāmur</i>
	<i>capiātis</i>	<i>capiāmini</i>
	<i>capiant</i>	<i>capiantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>caperem I took</i>	<i>caperer I were taken</i>
§ 172	<i>caperēs</i>	<i>caperēre, caperēris</i>
	<i>caperet</i>	<i>caperētur</i>
	<i>caperēmus</i>	<i>caperēmur</i>
	<i>caperētis</i>	<i>caperēmini</i>
	<i>caperent</i>	<i>caperentur</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change -*bā-* to -*rē-*, -*erā-* to -*issē-*, and *erā-* to *essē-*.

Always change -*ē-* to -*rē-*, -*erī-* to -*issē-*, *erī-* to *essē-*, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -*ē-* to -*ā-*, -*erī-* to -*erī-*, and *erī-* to *sī-*, if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ceperim I have taken</i>	<i>captus sim I have been</i>
§ 172	<i>ceperis</i>	<i>captus sis taken</i> § 156 <i>b</i>
	<i>cēperit</i>	<i>captus sit</i>
	<i>cēperimus</i>	<i>capti simus</i>
	<i>cēperitis</i>	<i>capti sitis</i>
	<i>cēperint</i>	<i>capti sint</i>

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

The stem vowel -*i-* becomes -*e-* before *r*;

becomes -*iu-* before *nt* and -*iā-* before *b*.

-*ā-* and -*ē-* become short before *nt* and *final -m, -t, or -r.* § 170

202. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>ceperam I had taken</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>eram I had been</i>
§ 171	<i>ceperās</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erās taken</i>
	<i>ceperat</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>ceperāmus</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>eramus</i>
	<i>ceperātis</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>ceperant</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>cepero I shall have</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erō I shall have</i>
§ 171	<i>ceperis taken</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>eris taken</i>
	<i>cēperit</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>ceperimus</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>ceperitis</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>ceperint</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erunt</i>

205. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capiens</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>		—	—	—
	<i>capientis</i>	<i>taking</i>					
<i>Perf.</i>	—				<i>captus, capta, captum</i>		
					<i>(having been) taken</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>captūrus</i>	<i>ūra</i>	<i>-ūrum</i>		<i>capendus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to take</i>				<i>(deserving) to be taken</i>		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	Plur.	
N.	<i>captus</i>	<i>captūs</i>	<i>Arma capiendī facultās</i>
G.	<i>captūs</i>	<i>captuum</i>	<i>opportunity to take arms</i>
D.	<i>captui</i>	<i>captibus</i>	<i>Sui recipiendī facultās</i>
Ac.	<i>captum</i>	<i>captūs</i>	<i>opportunity to take them-</i>
V.	<i>captus</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>selves back or withdraw</i>
Ab.	<i>captu</i>	<i>captibus</i>	

203 SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

Active		Passive	
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>cepiſsem I had taken</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>essem I had been</i>
§ 172	<i>cepiſſes</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>essēs taken § 156 c</i>
	<i>cēpiſſet</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>esset</i>
	<i>cēpiſſēmus</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
	<i>cēpiſſētis</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>essētis</i>
	<i>cēpiſſent</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>essent</i>

204.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>cape take thou</i>	<i>capere be thou taken</i>
§ 173	<i>capite take ye</i>	<i>capimini be ye taken</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>capitō thou shalt take</i>	<i>capitor thou shalt be taken</i>

205. b. GERUND (Noun) § 157 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

Singular		Singular		
<i>N.</i>	<i>capere to take; taking</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i>	<i>capiendī of taking</i>	<i>capiendī</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>capiendō (for) taking</i>	<i>capiendō</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>capiendum, capere taking</i>	<i>capiendum</i>	<i>-ndam</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>ad capiendum to take</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>capiendō by taking, etc.</i>	<i>capiendō</i>	<i>-ndā</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
			Plural	
		—	—	—
	<i>Spatium arma capiendī</i>			
	<i>time to take arms</i>	<i>capiendōrum</i>	<i>-ndārum</i>	<i>-ndōrum</i>
	<i>Tempus ad arma capienda</i>	<i>capiendīs</i>	<i>-ndīs</i>	<i>-ndīs</i>
	<i>defuit time was lacking —</i>	<i>capiendōs</i>	<i>-ndā</i>	<i>-nda</i>

e. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capere (to) take, be taking</i>	<i>capī (to) be taken</i>	§ 127 -i-
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>cēpiſſe (to) have taken</i>	<i>captus esse (to) have been taken</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>capturus esse be going</i>	<i>captus fore be going to</i>	
§ 215 g	<i>captum ire } to take</i>	<i>captum irī } be taken</i>	

-i- becomes -iē- before *ns* and -ie before *nt* in present participles;
 -i- becomes -ie (sometimes -iu) before *nd*.

206. a. *gradior, gradi, —, gressus move self, walk*

INDICATIVE

Active

Deponent

<i>Pres.</i>		<i><u>gradior</u> I move myself, go</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 182	<i>gradiēbar I was walking</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	§ 171	<i>gradiar I shall walk or go</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 100-1	<i>gressus sum I (have) walked</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		<i>gressus eram had walked</i>
<i>Futp.</i>		<i>gressus erō shall have walked</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		<i>gradiar I walk or shall walk</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 172	<i>graderer walked, should walk</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 156 b, c	<i>gressus sim I (have) walked</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		<i>gressus essem had walked</i>

b.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		<i>gradere move thyself, walk</i>
	§ 173	<i>gradimini move yourselves, walk</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		<i>graditor thou shalt walk</i>
		<i>graditor he shall walk</i>
		<i>gradiuntor they shall walk</i>

c.

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>gradiens, -ens, -ens</i>	—
	<i>gradientis walking</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<i>gressus, -a, -um having walked</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>gressurus, -a, -um</i>	<i>gradiendus, -a, -um</i>
	<i>going to walk</i>	<i>(deserving) to be walked</i>

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175	e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104
N. <i>gradi to walk, walking</i>	—
G. <i>gradiendi of walking</i>	<i>gradiendi, -ae, -i of walking</i>
SUPINE (Noun) § 157	<i>Gradientis saepsit wrapped</i>
N. <i>gressus gressus</i>	<i>them as they walked (along)</i>
G. <i>gressus gressuum</i>	<i>Gressu patuit dea the goddess</i>
D. <i>gressui gressibus</i>	<i>was evident in her gait</i>
Ac. <i>gressum gressus</i>	<i>Ea dirige gressum direct your</i>
Ab. <i>gressu gressibus</i>	<i>steps that way § 119 g</i>
f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176	
Pres. —	<i>gradi (to) walk, walking</i>
Perf. —	<i>gressus esse (to) have walked</i>
Fut. <i>gressurus esse</i>	—
(to) <i>be going to walk</i>	

Suggestions for Word Study

The root of *gradi* appears in *grade, gradient,¹ gradation, graduate, undergraduate, ungraduated, graduation*, etc.

Using the prefix *con-*, we have *congressional, congressman.¹*

How many of the prefixes in §§ 219, 2-3 ; 220 are used with this root? Use a dictionary. Cf. also p. 26, line 19, note, and p. 40.

Make a list of words containing this root.

Make lists of words containing other common Latin roots.

Underscore the parts representing the various forms the original roots assume in Latin, thus :

progressive, convention, efficient, convenient

How does a knowledge of the vowel changes in Latin affect your ability to spell English words correctly?

¹ Study the meaning of the English additions to the Latin roots in word-building. Write definitions showing their effect on the meaning of the original roots.

207. Prin. Parts: audio, audire, audīvī, auditus

INDICATIVE

	<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<u>audiō</u> <i>I hear</i>		audior <i>I am heard</i>
§ 171	audīs		audīris
	audit		audītur § 136
	audīmus		audīmur
	audītis		audīmini
	audiunt		audiuntur
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbam <i>I was hearing</i>		audiēbar <i>I was heard</i>
§ 171	audiēbās		audiēbāre, audiēbāris
	audiēbat		audiēbātur
	audiēbāmus		audiēbāmur
	audiēbātis		audiēbāmini
	audiēbant		audiēbantur
<i>Fut.</i>	audiam <i>I shall hear</i>		audiar <i>I shall be heard</i>
§ 171	audiēs		audiēre, audiēris
	audiet		audiētur
	audiēmus		audiēmur
	audiētis		audiēmini
	audient		audientur
<i>Perf.</i>	<u>audīvī</u> <i>I hear, have heard</i>	audītus ¹	sum <i>I was heard</i>
§ 171	audīvistī	audītus	es
§ 178	audīvit	audītus	est ²
	audīvimus	audīti	sumus
	audīvistis	audīti	estis
	audīvērunt, audīvēre	audīti	sunt

¹ Agrees with the subject in gender and number.² The *e-* of *est* is lost in *sit*; *-erit* = *sit*.Indicative and Subjunctive forms have *only twenty-two* different endings.
See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193, 197, 198, 202, 203.

208.

English: (to) *hear, heard, heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active

Passive

Pres. audiam *I hear*

audiar *I be heard*

§ 172 audiās

audiāre, audiāris

audiat *he hear* § 139

audiātur *he be heard*

audiāmus § 141

audiāmur

audiātis

audiāmini

audiant

audiantur

Imp. audirem *I heard*

audīrer *I were heard*

§ 172 audīres

audīrere, audīrēris

audīret

audīrētur

audīrēmus

audīrēmur

audīrētis

audīrēmini

audīrent

audīrentur

The Subjunctive uses only the second set of endings, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change -bā- to -rē-, -erā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -ē- to -rē-, -eri- to -issē-, eri- to essē-, if the writer's standpoint is past (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -ē- to -ā-, -eri- to -eri-, and eri- to sī- if the writer's standpoint is present (see § 147 *f*).

Perf. audiverim *I have heard*

auditus sim *I have been heard*

§ 172 audiveris

auditus sis § 156 *b*

§ 178 audiverit²

auditus sit²

audiverimus

auditi simus

audiveritis

auditi sitis

audiverint

auditi sint

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

The stem vowel -i- becomes short before another vowel;

becomes -iu- before nt, and -iē- before b.

-ā- and -ē- becomes short before nt and final -m, -t, or -r. § 170

207. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>audiveram I had heard</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>eram I had been</i>
§ 171	<i>audiverās</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>eras heard</i>
§ 178	<i>audiverat</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>audiverāmus</i>	<i>audītī</i>	<i>eramus</i>
	<i>audiverātis</i>	<i>audītī</i>	<i>eratis</i>
	<i>audiverant</i>	<i>audītī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>audiverō I shall have</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>ero I shall have</i>
§ 171	<i>audiveris heard</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>eris been heard</i>
§ 178	<i>audiverit</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>audiverimus</i>	<i>audītī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>audiveritis</i>	<i>audītī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>audiverint</i>	<i>audītī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

210. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>audiens</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	—	—	—
	<i>audientis</i>	<i>hearing</i>				
<i>Perf.</i>	—			<i>auditus,</i>	<i>audita,</i>	<i>auditum</i>
				<i>(having been) heard</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>auditurus</i>	<i>-ura</i>	<i>-urum</i>	<i>audiendus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to hear</i>			<i>(deservin.) to be heard</i>		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	Plur.	
<i>N.</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>Audiendī causā venī</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>audituum</i>	<i>I came to hear</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>auditui</i>	<i>auditibus</i>	<i>Eōrum audiendorum causā or</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>auditum</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>ad eos audiendōs venī I</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>auditus</i>	<i>came to hear them</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>auditū</i>	<i>auditibus</i>	

208. • SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

Active		Passive	
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>audivissem I had heard</i>	<i>auditus essem I had been heard</i>	
§ 172	<i>audivisses</i>	<i>auditus esses</i>	§ 156 c
§ 178	<i>audivisset</i>	<i>auditus esset</i>	
	<i>audivissēmus</i>	<i>auditi essemus</i>	
	<i>audivissētis</i>	<i>auditi essetis</i>	
	<i>audivissent</i>	<i>auditi essent</i>	

209.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>audi hear thou</i>	<i>audire be thou heard</i>
§ 173	<i>audite hear ye</i>	<i>audimini be ye heard</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>auditō thou shalt hear</i>	<i>auditor thou shalt be heard</i>

210. b. GERUND (Noun) § 175 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

Singular		Singular		
<i>N.</i>	<i>audire to hear, hearing</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i>	<i>audiendī of hearing</i>	<i>audiendī</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>audiendō (for) hearing</i>	<i>audiendō</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>audiendum, audire hear-</i>	<i>audiendum</i>	<i>-ndam</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>ing, ad audiendum to hear</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>audiendō by hearing, etc.</i>	<i>audiendō</i>	<i>-ndā</i>	<i>-ndō</i>

Multorum auditu by

Plural

the hearing of many

audiendōrum -ndārum -ndōrum

Nihil praeter auditum

audiendis -ndis -ndis

nothing but hearsay

audiendōs -ndās -nda

e. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>audire hear, be heeding</i>	<i>audiri (to) be heard</i>	§ 127 -i-
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>audivisse (to) have heard</i>	<i>auditus esse (to) have been heard</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>auditurus esse be going to</i>	<i>auditus fore be going to</i>	
§215 g	<i>auditum ire</i>	<i>audire</i>	<i>audire</i>

-i- becomes -iē- before -ns and -ie- before -nt- in present participles;
-i- becomes -ie- (sometimes -iu-) before -nd. § 170

211. a. potior, potirī, —, potītus *make self able, get*

INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
<i>Pres.</i>		<u>potior</u> <i>I get (hold of)</i> 6
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 182	potiēbar <i>was getting, got</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	§ 171	potiar <i>I shall get</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 100-1	potītus sum <i>I (have) got</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		potītus eram <i>had gotten</i>
<i>Futp.</i>		potītus erō <i>shall have got</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		potiar <i>I get or may get</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 172	potirer <i>got, might get</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 156 b, c	potītus sim <i>I (have) got</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		potītus essem <i>had gotten</i>

b.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		potire <i>get thou</i>
	§ 173	potimini <i>get ye</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		potitor <i>thou shalt get</i>
		potitor <i>he shall get</i>
		potiuntor <i>they shall get</i>

c.

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

<i>Pres.</i>	potiēns, -ēns, -ēns	—
	potientis <i>getting</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<u>potītus</u> , -a, -um <i>having</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	potīturus, -a, -um	potiendus, -a, -um
	<i>going to get</i>	<i>(deserving) to be got</i>

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

N. *potiri* to get, getting

G. *potiendi* of getting

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. —

G. —

D. —

Ac. *potitum*

Ab. *potitū*

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

—
potiendi, -ae -i of getting

Many case forms of supines are wanting. In many verbs, only forms in *-um* or *-u* are found.

f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176

Pres.

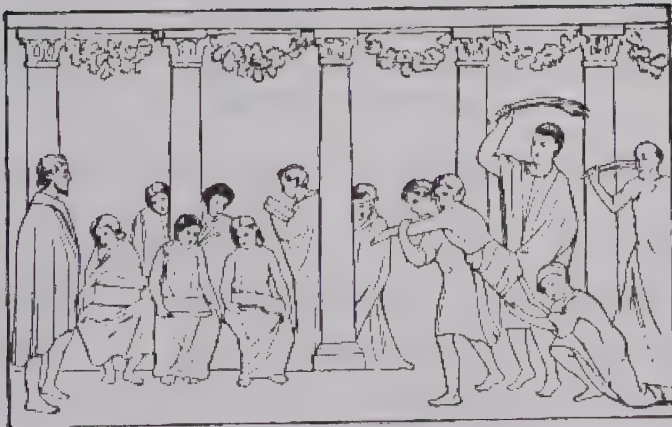
potiri (to) get, getting

Perf.

potitus esse (to) have got

Fut. *potiturus esse*

(to) be going to get



Ludus Litterarius — The Game of Letters (School).

212. INDICATIVE

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>		
<i>Pres.</i> <u>ferō</u> <i>I bear</i>	<i>feror</i> <i>am borne</i>	<u>eō</u> <i>I go</i>	<u>fiō</u> <i>am made</i>
§ 171 <i>fers</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>fīs</i>
<i>fert</i> § 170, 1	<i>fertur</i>	<i>it</i> § 137	<i>fit</i>
<i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>	<i>imus</i>	<i>finus</i>
<i>fertis</i>	<i>feriminī</i>	<i>itis</i>	<i>fitis</i>
<i>ferunt</i>	<i>feruntur</i>	<i>eunt</i>	<i>fiunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ibam</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>
§ 171 <i>ferēbās</i>	<i>ferēbāre -ris</i>	<i>ibās</i>	<i>fiēbās</i>
<i>ferēbat</i>	<i>ferēbātur</i>	<i>ibat</i>	<i>fiēbat</i>
<i>ferēbāmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i>
<i>ferēbātis</i>	<i>ferēbāminī</i>	<i>ibātis</i>	<i>fiēbātis</i>
<i>ferēbant</i>	<i>ferēbantur</i>	<i>ibant</i>	<i>fiēbant</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>	<i>ibō</i>	<i>fiam</i>
§ 171 <i>ferēs</i>	<i>ferere -ris</i>	<i>ibis</i>	<i>fiēs</i>
<i>feret</i>	<i>ferētur</i>	<i>ibit</i>	<i>fiet</i>
<i>ferēmus</i>	<i>ferēmur</i>	<i>ibimus</i>	<i>fiēmus</i>
<i>ferētis</i>	<i>ferēminī</i>	<i>ibitis</i>	<i>fiētis</i>
<i>ferent</i>	<i>ferentur</i>	<i>ibunt</i>	<i>fient</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <u>tulī</u> <i>I bore</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<u>ivī</u> <i>I went</i>	<i>factus sum</i>
§ 171 <i>tulistī</i>	<i>lātus es</i>	<i>ivistī</i>	<i>factus es</i>
§ 178 <i>tulit</i>	<i>lātus est</i>	<i>ivit</i>	<i>factus est</i>
<i>tulimus</i>	<i>lātī sumus</i>	<i>ivimus</i>	<i>factī sumus</i>
<i>tulistis</i>	<i>lātī estis</i>	<i>ivistis</i>	<i>factī estis</i>
<i>tulērunt</i> or	<i>lātī sunt</i>	<i>ivērunt</i> ¹ or	<i>factī sunt</i>
<i>tulēre</i>		<i>ivēre</i>	

¹ *iverunt* or *ivere*, *ierunt* or *iere*; -v- is usually dropped in forms of *ire* and its compounds.

Ind. and Sub. forms have only *twenty-two different endings*.

213. SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>		
<i>Pres. feram I bear</i>	<i>ferar be borne</i>	<i>eam I go</i>	<i>fiam be made</i>
§ 172 <i>ferās</i>	<i>ferāre -ris</i>	<i>eās</i> ²	<i>fiās</i> ³
<i>ferat</i>	<i>ferātur</i>	<i>eat</i> § 140	<i>fiat</i>
<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>	<i>eāmus</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
<i>ferātis</i>	<i>ferāmini</i>	<i>eātis</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
<i>ferant</i>	<i>ferantur</i>	<i>eant</i>	<i>fiant</i>
<i>Imp. ferrem</i> ¹	<i>ferrer</i> ⁴	<i>irem</i>	<i>fierem</i>
§ 172 <i>ferrēs</i>	<i>ferrēre -ris</i>	<i>irēs</i>	<i>fierēs</i>
<i>ferret</i>	<i>ferrētur</i>	<i>iret</i>	<i>fieret</i>
<i>ferrēmus</i>	<i>ferrēmur</i>	<i>irēmus</i>	<i>fierēmu</i> ;
<i>ferrētis</i>	<i>ferrēmini</i>	<i>irētis</i>	<i>fierētis</i>
<i>ferrent</i>	<i>ferrentur</i>	<i>irent</i>	<i>fierent</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change *-bā-* to *-rē-*, *-erā-* to *-isse-*, and *erā-* to *essē-*.

Always change *-ē-* or *-bi-* to *-rē-*, *-eri-* to *-issē-*, *eri-* to *essē-*, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change *-ē-* or *-bi-* to *-ā-*, *-eri-* to *-erī-* and *-eri-* to *sī-*, if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf. tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>	<i>īverim</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
§ 172 <i>tulerīs</i>	<i>latus sis</i>	<i>īverīs</i>	<i>factus sis</i>
§ 178 <i>tulerit</i>	<i>latus sit</i>	<i>īverit</i>	<i>factus sit</i>
<i>tulerīmus</i>	<i>lātī simus</i>	<i>īverīmus</i>	<i>factī simus</i>
<i>tulerītis</i>	<i>lātī sītis</i>	<i>īverītis</i>	<i>factī sītis</i>
<i>tulerint</i>	<i>lātī sint</i>	<i>īverint</i>	<i>factī sint</i>

PECULIARITIES OF VOWELS IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

¹ See § 170 note. ² *-i-* becomes *-i-* before another vowel (cf. § 170 *-i-*) but *i-* becomes *e-* at the beginning of a word or before a vowel (except *e*).

³ Note the *-i-* before another vowel in *fiā*. ⁴ See § 170 note.

212. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

<i>Plup.</i> tuleram	<i>lātus</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>īveram</i>	<i>factus</i>	<i>eram</i>
§ 171 tulerās	<i>lātus</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>īverās</i>	<i>factus</i>	<i>erās</i>
§ 178 tulerat	<i>lātus</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>īverat</i>	<i>factus</i>	<i>erat</i>
tulerāmus	<i>lāti</i>	<i>erāmus</i>	<i>īverāmus</i>	<i>factī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
tulerātis	<i>lāti</i>	<i>erātis</i>	<i>īverātis</i>	<i>factī</i>	<i>erātis</i>
tulerant	<i>lāti</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>īverant</i>	<i>factī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i> tulerō	<i>lātus</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>īverō</i>	<i>factus</i>	<i>erō</i>
§ 171 tuleris	<i>lātus</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>īveris</i>	<i>factus</i>	<i>eris</i>
§ 178 tulerit	<i>lātus</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>īverit</i>	<i>factus</i>	<i>erit</i>
tulerimus	<i>lāti</i>	<i>erimus</i>	<i>īverimus</i>	<i>factī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
tuleritis	<i>lāti</i>	<i>eritis</i>	<i>īveritis</i>	<i>factī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
tulerint	<i>lāti</i>	<i>erunt</i>	<i>īverint</i>	<i>factī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

215. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> ferens § 97	—	iens § 97	—	—
ferentis		euntis		
<i>Perf.</i> —	<i>lātus</i> § 98	—	<i>itum</i> § 98	<i>factus</i>
<i>Fut.</i> laturus	ferendus	iturus	eundum § 104	-i-

b. GERUND (Noun) § 175

c. GERUNDIVE (Adj.) § 158

<i>N.</i> ferre	ire			
ferendī	eundī	-eundi	-eundae	-eundi

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 157

<i>N.</i> —	-itus	Mihi eundum est <i>I must go</i>
<i>G.</i> —	-itūs	Dē flūmine trānseundō spēs
<i>D.</i> —	-itui	<i>hope of crossing the river</i>
<i>Ac.</i> <u>lātum</u>	<u>-itum</u>	Difficili trānsitū flūmen
<i>Ab.</i> lātū	-itū	<i>a river of difficult passage</i>

213. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive	
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem	<i>lātus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>ivissem</i>	<i>factus essem</i>
§ 172 <i>tulissēs</i>	<i>lātus</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>ivissēs</i>	<i>factus essēs</i>
§ 178 <i>tulisset</i>	<i>lātus</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>ivisset</i>	<i>factus esset</i>
<i>tulissēmus</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>ivissēmus</i>	<i>facti essēmus</i>
<i>tulissētis</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>ivissētis</i>	<i>facti essētis</i>
<i>tulissent</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>ivissent</i>	<i>facti essent</i>

214.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> <i>fer</i> ¹ <i>bring</i>	<i>ferre</i> ¹	<i>i go (thou)</i>	<i>fi become</i>
<i>fer</i> <i>te</i>	<i>ferimini</i>	<i>ite</i>	<i>fite</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>fertō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>itō</i>	
§ 173 <i>fertō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>itō</i>	
<i>fertōte</i>	—	<i>itōte.</i>	
<i>feruntō</i>	<i>feruntor</i>	<i>euntō</i> ²	

215. *e.*

INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>		<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<u>ferre</u> bear	ferri	—		<u>fieri</u> be done
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse	—		factus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse	lātus fore	—		factus fore
	latum ire	lātum iri			factum iri

f.

Active

Passive

<i>Pres.</i> <i>ire</i> <i>go, be going</i>	<i>iri</i> <i>traveling be done</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>iisse (to) have been going</i>	<i>itum esse</i> " <i>have been done</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>itūrus esse be going to go</i>	<i>itum iri be going to be traveled</i>

g.

Occasionally used instead of the future.

(ii) *Se perditum eunt they are going to ruin themselves.**Video se perditum ire**Video eos perditum iri**I see they are going to destroy themselves**I see that they are going to be destroyed*¹ See § 170. ² See Note 2, § 213.

216. a. Forms¹ made on the Present Stem (§ 163 a).

-a- before final **-m** or **-r** may be the *sign* either of the *Present Subjunctive* or *Future Indicative* :

legam, loquar, fiam, ferar, patiar, audiam

-ā- or **-a-** (when shortened before **-t, -nt, or -ntur**)

First Conjugation² — *Stem Vowel* — *Present Indicative*

vocās, cōnāris (cōnāre § 191 b); **rogat, nuntiātur**;

stāmus, vagāmur; **amātis, laudāminī**; **dant**,³ **iuvantur**

Second Conjugation — *Sign of the Present Subjunctive*

iubeās, videāre, teneāris; **liceat, polliceātur**;

audeāmus, iubeāmur; **habeātis, doceāminī**; **audeant**

Third and Fourth Conjugations — *Sign of the Present Subjunctive* (and *First Person sing.* of the *Future Indicative*)

capiās, patiāre, congrediāris; **legat, loquātur**;

audiāmus, mittāmur; **ūtāminī, agātis**; **fiant**,⁴ **ferantur**

b. In forms made on the Present Stem (§ 163 a).

-e- before final **-m** or **-r** is always *Present Subjunctive*.

-ē- or **-e-** (when shortened before **-t, -nt, or -ntur**)

First Conjugation — *Sign of the Present Subjunctive*

vocēs, cōnēre (cōnēris); **roget, nūntiētur**;

stēmus, vagēmur; **amētis, laudēminī**; **dent**,³ **iuventur**

¹ Not containing the sign **-bā-, -rē-, or -bi-**. ² The *Prin. Parts* must be learned. ³ **Dare** resembles the first. ⁴ **Fieri** follows the third conjugation.

Second Conjugation — *Stem Vowel* — *Present Indicative*

iubēs, tenēris, (iubēre §§ 127, 194); licet, pollicētur;
audēmus, verēmur; habētis, vidēminī; tenent, con-
tinentur

Third and Fourth Conjugations — *Sign of the Future Ind.*

fiēs, interficiēre, sequēre; capiet, accipiētur;
audiēmus, potiēmur; sciētis, patiēminī; fient, ferentur

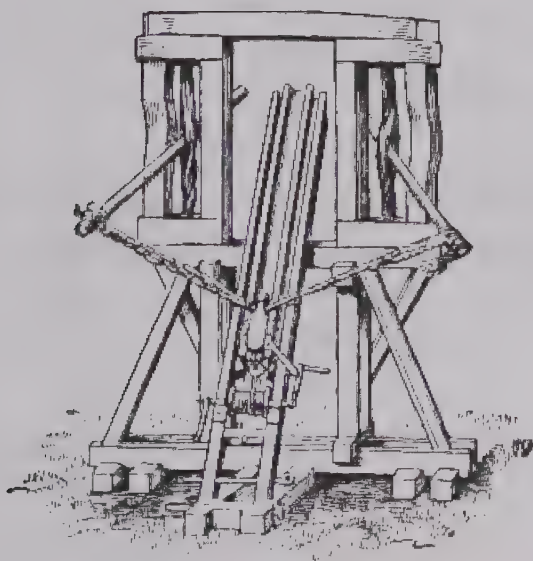
But in the third conjugation

-e-ris is Pres. Ind. loqueris, mitteris, caperis

-ē-ris is Fut. Ind. loqueris, mittēris, capiēris

c. Give Mode and Tense and translate.

audēre vocēre vidēre loquēre dētur tenētur ferētur
nūntiāre largiāre patiēre cōnāmur cōgāmur laudāmur
dicātur mandātur nūntient mūnient dicent



Ballista.

217. *a.* In forms made on the Perfect Stem (§ 163 *b*).

Any verb having the ending **-istī**, **-istis**, or **-erunt** is instantly known to be a *perfect indicative active* form and the perfect stem may be learned from it.

b. Read and translate the following paragraphs and write out the principal parts of the verbs from your observations.

Galli rebellionem facere volunt. Hoc cōnatu non desistunt. Concilium convocant. Duces inter se cōsulant. Iam bellum gerere cōstituunt, cum unus e ducibus surgit; surrectus ita loquitur:

“Iam diu, fratres, bellandī cupidī estis. Saepe concilium convocavistis. Concilio convocatō, me consululistis. Persaepe apud vōs surrēxī neque vōbīs ita dicere dēstitī: Romanos potentis, Gallōs fortis esse infirmos; hos saepe contra illos coniūravissee; bella multa gesta esse; tum demum Gallos semper victos, arma eorum Romanis tradita esse. His de causīs, ut saepe iam dixī, suadeo, ne bellum cum eīs, quī tanta tamque multa iam bella tam bona gessērunt fortūna atque adhuc semper vicerunt, geratis atque pācem servētis.”

c.

Contracted Forms

-v- is often dropped in the combinations **-ivī-**, **-ivi-**, **-ive-**. **audivī**, **petivimus**, **cupivīt**, **audiverat**, **cupivisset** become **audiī**, **petiimus**, **cupiit**, **audierat**, **cupiisset**, **cupisset**. **-ve-**, **-vē-**, and **-vi-** (not before **-t** or **-mus**) are often dropped.

cōsulant ask advice of, consult 4

surgit rises

cōstituunt are deciding **gerere** wage

tradita delivered

servetis keep, observe **infirmos** unsteady

vincere win, defeat

d. Write out the full form of each of the following :

iērunt	vocāstis	iūrāsse	trānsissent
ierant	mandārunt	collocāsse	cōnsuērint
isse	rogāstī	servāsse	cōnsuērat
exisset	cupistī	putārō	pugnārant
petiisse	putāstī	rōgārunt	cōnsuēsse
petisse	convocārim	nūntiārit	superārint

218. a. The meaning of ancient root words is usually broader than that of modern ones. They set forth the actual facts in more primitive and simple fashion, whereas our words have become more mechanical means of conveying ideas and farther removed from the plain facts they represent. Scarcity of words formerly made it necessary to apply each one to a wide range of things.

	Librōs	ē-ligit, (he) is selecting books.
	books	out-picks
	Litterās	legit, (he) is reading a message.
	letters	picks
	Fructūs	legit, (he) is gathering fruit.
	fruits	picks
Avis	aequor	legit, the bird skims the level-sea.
bird	the even	picks
Nāvis	litus	legit, the ship skirts the shore.
boat	shore	picks
Nauta	litus	legit, the sailor scans the shore.
sailor	shore	picks

b. The original meaning of the root **leg-** is easily seen in its descendants, *legible* (writing) and *eligible* (persons).

c. The underlying idea conveyed by **leg-** is something like

pass-along-seeing-gathering or following,

according as it refers to the passing along of the eye and finger of a reader, the eye and hand of a picker, the eye and body of a bird, or the hull of a ship. And the sameness of the actions becomes still more apparent as we consider the spread-out surface of the ancient roll or book, the extended row of rolls to select from, the ground traversed in picking wild berries, the level expanse of the sea and the extent of shallows, beach, and coast land.

d. We must not think of the abundant fruit of cultivated trees or of glancing easily over printed pages, with separated words, for when *leg-* was first used, picking meant searching and reading once meant painfully gathering ideas from rudely carved lines of words all run together as one. And the few words of primitive peoples were made to perform many services, whereas we have borrowed words from all our neighbors in our desire to have one word for each thing.

219. The prefixing of prepositions and other particles has made vowel changes in many common root words.

1. *ae* sometimes becomes *ī*; *au* sometimes becomes *ū*.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<i>aestimāre</i> rate	<i>esteem</i>	<i>ex-istimare</i> think out	<i>estimate</i>
<i>quaerere</i> seek	<i>query</i>	<i>ex-quirere</i> seek out	<i>exquisite</i>
<i>caedere</i> hew, cut	<i>chisel</i>	<i>oc-cidere</i> cut on front, kill	<i>suicide</i>
<i>prae</i> ahead of	<i>pre-</i>	<i>pri-mus</i> foremost, first	<i>primary</i>
<i>claudere</i> shut	<i>clause</i>	<i>ex-cludere</i> shut out or off	<i>exclude</i>
<i>clausi</i> I closed	<i>enclose</i>	<i>ex-clusi</i> I shut out or off	<i>exclusive</i>
<i>causa</i> reason	<i>causal</i>	<i>re-cusāre</i> give back reasons (why not)	

2. Short **a** becomes **e**, especially before **r** or *two consonants*.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
dare <i>put, give</i>	date	ab-dere <i>put away, conceal</i>	render
dedi <i>I gave, sent</i>		ab-didi <i>I concealed</i>	
		circum-dare <i>surround</i>	
cre- <i>faith, trust</i>	creed	cre-dere <i>put faith in</i>	credible
scandere <i>climb</i>	scan	a-scendere <i>climb up</i>	ascension
gradi <i>walk, go</i>	gradual	ag-gredi <i>go at, attack</i>	aggressive
pati <i>suffer</i>	patient	per-peti <i>endure through</i>	perpetual

3. Short **a** and **e** become **i** before single consonants, except **r**.

habere <i>hold, keep</i>	habit	pro-hibere <i>keep forth, off</i>	prohibit
tenere <i>hold</i>	tenant	con-tinere <i>keep together</i>	contain
facere (i) <i>make, do</i>	fact	cōn-ficere (i) <i>do up, finish</i>	confection
tangere <i>touch</i>	tangent	at-tingere <i>touch upon</i>	contingent
frangere <i>break</i>	fragile	in-fringere <i>break into</i>	infringe

4. In words *beginning with a vowel* or **h** contractions often occur.

emere <i>take, buy</i>	redeem	sumere (sub-emere) <i>take up</i>	resume
agere <i>drive, do</i>	agent	cōgere (co-agere) <i>collect, force</i>	cogent
habere <i>have</i>	inhabit	debere (de-habere) <i>have from, owe</i>	debt

220. The consonants in prepositions vary greatly when used in compounds according to the first letter of the root word.

1. **ab** (**ā-**, **ab-**, **abs-**, **au-**) *from, away, aside, off*.

vertere <i>turn</i>	vertex	ā-vertere <i>turn aside</i>	avert, averse
iacere (i) <i>throw</i>	jet	ab-icere (i) <i>cast away</i>	object
tenere <i>hold, keep</i>	tenure	abs-tinere <i>keep from</i>	abstinence
ferre <i>bear</i>	fertile	au-ferre <i>carry off; ablatus</i>	ablative
tuli <i>I bore</i>		abs-tuli <i>I took away</i>	

2. *ad* (*a-*, *ac-*, *ad-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *am-*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*)
to, for, up to, up on, toward, near, by, etc.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.	COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<i>scandere</i> climb <i>scansion</i>	<i>a-scendere</i> climb up	<i>ascend, ascent</i>
<i>cedere</i> yield, go <i>cede</i>	<i>ac-cedere</i> go to	<i>accede, access</i>
<i>dare</i> put, give <i>dative</i>	<i>ad-dere</i> put beside	<i>add, addenda</i>
<i>facere</i> (i) do, act <i>fact</i>	<i>af-ficere</i> ¹ (i) act toward	<i>affect</i>
<i>agere</i> drive <i>agent</i>	<i>ad-igere</i> drive to	<i>exigent</i>
<i>gradi</i> walk, go <i>gradual</i>	<i>ag-gredi</i> ² go at, attack	<i>aggressor</i>
<i>ferre</i> bring <i>refer</i>	<i>ad-ferre</i> bring up (to)	<i>afferent</i>
<i>lātus</i> brought <i>ablative</i>	<i>al-lātus</i> ² brought up to	<i>relate</i>
<i>nuntiāre</i> bring word	<i>an-nūtiāre</i> ² bring word	<i>announce</i>
<i>petere</i> seek <i>petition</i>	<i>ap-petere</i> seek for	<i>appetite</i>
<i>sistere</i> stand <i>insist</i>	<i>as-sistere</i> stand by	<i>assist</i>
<i>tribuere</i> give <i>tribute</i>	<i>at-tribuere</i> give to	<i>attribute</i>
<i>rapere</i> (i) snatch <i>rapid</i>	<i>ar-ripere</i> (i) seize upon	<i>rapture</i>

3. *ante* *ahead of, before*; *circum-*, *circu-* *around, about*.

<i>cēdere</i> come, go <i>cession</i>	<i>ante-cedere</i> go ahead of	<i>antecedent</i>
<i>dare</i> put, give <i>data</i>	<i>circum-dare</i> put around	<i>circus</i>
<i>īre</i> travel <i>itinerant</i>	<i>circu-ire</i> go around	<i>circuit</i>

4. *cum* (*co-*, *col-*, *com-*, *comb-*, *con-*, *cor-*) *together, up, fully or thoroughly*.

<i>emere</i> take, buy <i>redeem</i>	<i>co-emere</i> buy up	<i>sample, exempt</i>
<i>nōscere</i> begin to know	<i>co-gnōscere</i> learn fully	<i>cognizant</i>
<i>loqui</i> speak <i>loquacious</i>	<i>col-loqui</i> speak with	<i>colloquial</i>
<i>parāre</i> get <i>prepare</i>	<i>com-parare</i> get together	<i>compare</i>
<i>ūrere</i> burn	<i>comb-ūrere</i> burn up	<i>combustion</i>
<i>facere</i> (i) make <i>fact</i>	<i>cōn-ficere</i> (i) do up	<i>confection</i>
<i>rumpere</i> break <i>rupture</i>	<i>cor-rumpere</i> break up	<i>corrupt</i>

¹ Often printed *ad-ficere*, but pronounced *af-ficere*.

² Cf. note 1.

5. *de-* down, from; *dis-* (*dī-*, *dif-*, *dir-*) from, apart, off.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.	COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<i>capere</i> (i) take <i>capture</i>	<i>dē-cipere</i> (i) take down	<i>deceive</i>
<i>facere</i> (i) make <i>factor</i>	<i>dē-ficere</i> (i) fail	<i>deficient</i>
<i>dare</i> put, give <i>data</i>	<i>dē-dere</i> lay down, give up	§ 219, 2
<i>specere</i> (i) look <i>spy</i>	<i>dē-spicere</i> (i) look down	<i>despicable</i>
<i>medius</i> middle <i>mid-</i>	<i>dī-midium</i> from-the-middle	<i>demi-</i>
<i>ferre</i> bear, carry <i>bear</i>	<i>dif-ferre</i> bear apart	<i>different</i>
<i>emere</i> take <i>example</i>	<i>dir-imere</i> break up or apart	§ 219, 3
<i>pōnere</i> set <i>position</i>	<i>dis-pōnere</i> put at intervals	<i>dispose</i>

6. *ex* (*ē-*, *ef-*, *ex-*) out, out of, forth, up out.

<i>dare</i> put, give	<i>ē-dere</i> put forth, raise out	<i>edit</i>
<i>nūntiāre</i> report <i>nuncio</i>	<i>ē-nūntiāre</i> tell out	<i>-nounce</i>
<i>facere</i> (i) make <i>fact</i>	<i>ef-ficere</i> (i) make out	§ 219, 3 <i>effect</i>
<i>ferre</i> bear <i>transfer</i>	<i>ef-ferre</i> carry away; (<i>ē-lātus</i>)	<i>elate</i>
<i>pedēs</i> feet <i>pedestrian</i>	<i>ex-pedire</i> free (the feet)	<i>expedient</i>
<i>sequi</i> follow <i>sequence</i>	<i>ex-sequi</i> follow out	<i>execute</i>

7. *in* (*il-*, *im-*, *ind-*, *ir-*) in, on, into, upon, at; *in-*, *un-*.

<i>lātus</i> brought <i>relate</i>	<i>il-lātus</i> brought upon	<i>illative</i>
<i>pedēs</i> feet <i>pedal</i>	<i>im-pedire</i> entangle (feet)	<i>impede</i>
<i>pendere</i> hang <i>pending</i>	<i>im-pendere</i> hang over	<i>impend</i>
<i>ex-uere</i> put off	<i>ind-uere</i> put on, clothe	<i>indue</i>
<i>ridere</i> laugh <i>ridicule</i>	<i>ir-ridere</i> laugh at	<i>deride</i>
<i>opinans</i> thinking <i>opinion</i>	<i>in-opinans</i> unthinking	

8. *inter-*, *intel-* between, at intervals; *intrō-* into, in.

<i>legere</i> gather <i>legend</i>	<i>intel-legere</i> be aware	<i>intellect</i>
<i>cēdere</i> yield, come <i>cede</i>	<i>inter-cedere</i> come between	<i>intercede</i>
<i>facere</i> (i) make § 219, 3	<i>inter-ficere</i> (i) do to pieces, kill	
<i>mittere</i> let go <i>mission</i>	<i>inter-mittere</i> let go at intervals	
<i>ducere</i> draw, lead <i>duke</i>	<i>intrō-ducere</i> take into	<i>introduce</i>

9. *nec-* not; *ob* (*o-*, *ob-*, *obs-*, *oc-*, *of-*, *op-*) in face of, against.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<i>ōtium</i> leisure, ease		<i>neg-ōtium</i> not ease, work	<i>negotiate</i>
<i>legere</i> gather, pick		<i>neg-legere</i> not gather	<i>negligent</i>
<i>lēgi</i> I gathered		<i>neg-lēxi</i> I overlooked	
<i>mittere</i> let go	<i>missile</i>	<i>o-mittere</i> let go by	<i>omit</i>
<i>tenere</i> hold, gain	<i>tenet</i>	<i>ob-tinere</i> hold against odds	§ 219, 3
<i>tendere</i> stretch	<i>tend</i>	<i>os-tendere</i> show	<i>ostensibly</i>
<i>tetendi</i> I stretched	4	<i>os-tendi</i> I showed	
<i>currere</i> run	<i>current</i>	<i>oc-currere</i> run in the face of	<i>occur</i>
<i>ferre</i> bring	4 <i>transfer</i>	<i>of-ferre</i> bring before	3 p 4 t <i>offer</i>
<i>tuli</i> I brought		<i>ob-tuli</i> I brought before	
<i>lātus</i> brought		<i>ob-lātus</i> being offered	<i>oblation</i>
<i>pōnere</i> place, set	<i>pose</i>	<i>op-pōnere</i> put in way	<i>opponent</i>

10. *per-*, *pel-* through, over, to pieces, to destruction, very.

<i>facere</i> (i) do	<i>factor</i>	<i>per-ficere</i> (i) do through	<i>perfect</i>
<i>ire</i> go, travel		<i>per-ire</i> go to destruction	<i>perish</i>
<i>tenere</i> hold	<i>tenant</i>	<i>per-tinere</i> hold through	<i>pertain</i>
<i>pauci</i> few § 64	<i>paucity</i>	<i>per-pauci</i> very few (all told)	§ 64

11. *prae-* ahead of, before; *praeter-* beyond, past, by.

<i>cedere</i> yield, go	<i>cede</i>	<i>prae-cedere</i> go ahead of	<i>precede</i>
<i>habere</i> hold, keep	<i>have</i>	<i>prae-bere</i> hold before, furnish	§ 219, 4
<i>facere</i> (i) make, put		<i>prae-ficere</i> (i) put at head	<i>prefect</i>
<i>ire</i> go, travel	<i>initial</i>	<i>praeter-ire</i> go by, pass	<i>preterit</i>

12. *prō-* (*pol-*, *por-*, *pro-*, *pro-*, *prōd-*) forth, on, beforehand.

<i>licerī</i> bid, offer		<i>pol-licerī</i> offer beforehand, promise	
<i>regere</i> go straight	<i>Rex</i>	<i>por-rigere</i> go straight on, extend	
<i>fugere</i> (i) flee	<i>fugitive</i>	<i>pro-fugere</i> (i) flee forth	
<i>gradī</i> (i) go, walk	<i>grade</i>	<i>pro-gredi</i> (i) go on	§ 219, 2 <i>progress</i>
<i>ire</i> go, travel	<i>exit</i>	<i>prōd-ire</i> go forth	

13. **se-, sēd-** *apart, away, aside*; **re-, red-** *again, back*.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
cernere <i>see</i>	d'scern	sē-cernere <i>separate</i>	
cretus <i>seen, taken</i>		sē-crētus <i>taken aside</i>	secret
parare <i>get, put</i>	prepare	sē-parāre <i>set apart</i>	separate
red-itiō <i>a going back</i>		sēd-itiō <i>going apart</i>	sedition
cedere <i>move</i>	cede	sē-cēdere <i>go apart</i>	secede
cessi <i>I gave way</i>	cess' on	sē-cessi <i>I withdrew</i>	secession
cura <i>care</i>	curator	se-curus <i>having no care of</i>	secure

14. **sub** (**sub-, suc-, suf-, sug-, sum-, sup-, su-, sus-**) *under, up*; *as support or help*.

ire <i>go, travel</i>	it'nerant	sub-ire <i>undergo</i>	
sequi <i>follow</i>	sequence	sub-sequi <i>follow up</i>	subsequent
cedere <i>go, move</i>	recede	suc-cedere <i>come up or after</i>	succeed
ferre <i>bear</i>	offer	suf-ferre <i>bear up under</i>	suffer
gerere <i>make</i>	belligerent	sug-gerere <i>build up</i>	suggest
gessi <i>I made</i>		sug-gessi <i>I built up</i>	
mittere <i>let go</i>	remit	sum-mittere <i>send as help</i>	submit
petere <i>seek</i>	petit' on	sup-petere <i>be on hand</i>	
portāre <i>bring</i>	import	sup-portare <i>bring up</i>	support
emere <i>take, buy</i>	§ 219, 4	su-mere <i>pick up, take</i>	assume
emi <i>I took</i>		su-mpsī <i>I took up</i>	sumptuous
specere (i) <i>look</i>	species	su-spicere (i) <i>look up</i>	suspicious
capere (i) <i>take</i>	capacity	sus-cipere (i) <i>undertake</i>	susceptible
tenere <i>hold</i>	tenure	sus-tinere <i>hold up, endure</i>	sustain

15. **super** *over, above*; **trans, trā-** *across, over*.

esse <i>be, remain</i>	essence	super-esse <i>be over or left</i>	
dare <i>give, put</i>	dative	trā-dere <i>hand over, § 219, 2</i>	tradition
ire <i>go, travel</i>	exit	trans-ire <i>cross, go over</i>	transit
ducere <i>lead</i>	induce	trā-ducere <i>lead or take over</i>	

221. *a.* Prepositional ideas are often reechoed by the verb. Where there are several prepositional ideas in connection with a single verb, each is expressed separately.

Inde per Alpīs in Italiā contendit *from there he hurried-on over the Alps into Italy.*

b. But a single prepositional idea is very often expressed twice; once by a *preposition used with a noun*, and again by the *same preposition* or a particle of similar meaning *prefixed to the verb*, especially in expressions of place and position.

Longe ā domo abest *he is far away from home* Cf. §§ 61 e, 230

A Roma discedit *he departs from-the-vicinity-of Rome*

Ad oppidum accedit *he is coming-up to the town* Cf. § 220, 2

Cum Romanis contendunt *they contend with the Romans* § 62 a

De salute desperant *they give-up hope of saving themselves*

De finibus suis exeunt *they go-out of their borders* § 220, 6

Copias (ex) castris educit *he leads-out his troops from camp*

Eos dedūcit ex his regionibus *he takes them out of these parts*

Eos in insidias inducit *he draws them into a snare* Cf. § 60

Intrā finis nostros ingrediuntur *they enter inside our borders*

Inter nos et id silva intercedit *there is a wood between us and it*

Inter hunc et me murus interest *there's a wall between him and me*

Copias prō castris prōducit *leads-forth troops in front of camp*

Sub nostram aciem succedunt *they come-up (hill) under our line*

Copias (trāns) flumen trāduco *I lead my troops across the river*

Frequentative Verbs

222. Some verbs denote an action as repeated or intensified.

a. ORIGINALS

beat, daze, spit,
twit, wrig, shove.

FREQUENTATIVES

batter, dazzle, sputter,
twitter, wriggle, shuffle.

b. Latin frequentative verbs are made on the participial stems of other verbs and contain the element *-ta-* or *-sa-*.

c. ORIGINALS		FREQUENTATIVES	
<i>nāre</i> float	<i>navy, naval</i>	<i>natāre</i> keep floating	<i>natatorium</i>
<i>volāre</i> fly	<i>volatile</i>	<i>volitāre</i> flit, bustle	
<i>habēre</i> have, hold 4	<i>have</i>	<i>habitāre</i> dwell in 6	<i>inhabit</i>
<i>dicere</i> say, tell	<i>diction</i>	<i>dictare</i> keep telling	<i>dictate</i>
<i>specere</i> (i) see	<i>species</i>	<i>spectare</i> keep viewing	<i>spectacle</i>
<i>verti</i> turn self	<i>invert</i>	<i>versari</i> busy self	<i>versatile</i>
<i>iacere</i> (i) throw	<i>reject</i>	<i>iactare</i> toss, keep throwing	<i>jet</i>
<i>venire</i> come	<i>convention</i>	<i>ventitare</i> come and go	

d. The originals of some frequentatives are uncertain.

<i>dubitare</i> keep delaying, hesitate	Inf. ; doubt	<i>quā</i> Sub. <i>dubious</i>
<i>flāgitāre</i> demand insistently or urgently 4 p 4 t § 230 h		
<i>sollicitare</i> keep urging or insisting 4 ; urge on 4		<i>solicitous</i>

Inceptive Verbs

223. Verbs denoting the *beginning of an action* are formed by annexing the element *-sce-* (grow, become, begin to), which appears as *-ish* in the English *vanish* and *flourish*. See p. 12.

a. ORIGINALS		INCEPTIVE VERBS	
<i>lucere</i> be bright	<i>lucid</i>	<i>lucescere</i> become (grow) bright	
<i>flōrēre</i> bloom	<i>flower</i>	<i>flōrescere</i> begin to bloom	<i>flourish</i>
<i>frigere</i> be cool	<i>frigid</i>	<i>frigescere</i> grow cool	<i>refrigerator</i>
<i>alere</i> feed	<i>aliment</i>	<i>ad-olescere</i> grow up	<i>ad-olescent</i>
<i>alitus</i> raised	<i>altitude</i>	<i>ad-ultus</i> grown up	<i>adult</i>
<i>valere</i> be well	<i>valor</i>	<i>valescere</i> get well	<i>convalescent</i>
<i>proficere</i> (i) make		<i>proficisci</i> begin to ad-	
forward, gain	<i>profit</i>	<i>vance</i> , set out	<i>proficient</i>
<i>creāre</i> make	<i>create</i>	<i>crēscere</i> grow	<i>crescent, increase</i>

marked 0 because they show that no other verb is coming before the main verb is reached, unless another "guide" intervenes.

225. Each new "guide" adds one to the number of verbs expected before the main verb, and each subordinate verb reduces that number by one. Figures at any given point indicate how many verbs are thus far known to precede the main verb.

Caesar, ¹ quoniam ⁰ senatus censu-¹era-t, ² uti, ² qui-cumque
Caesar, inasmuch-as senate decreed-had-it, that, who-ever
¹ Galliam provinciam obtineret, ² quod-posset, ¹ Aeduos defende-
¹ Gaul province, ² held-he, ¹ what could-he, Aeduans defend-
⁰ ret, **Aeduorum iniurias neglect-urus non era-t.**
⁰ should-he, Aeduans' wrongs overlook-going-to not was-he.
¹ Inasmuch as the senate ⁰ had ordered, ¹ that, ² whoever ¹ held Gaul
⁰ (as his) province, should, as far as he was able, defend the Aeduans,
Caesar was not going to overlook the Aeduans' wrongs.

The first verb after a "guide" belongs with it, unless another "guide" intervenes.

Ius est, ut, ¹ qui vincant, ¹ eis, ² qu-os vinca-nt ¹ imper-e-nt.¹
¹ Law is, ² that, ¹ they who win, ² those, ¹ who-m win-they, ⁰ rule-may.
¹ It is a law, ² that ¹ those who win ⁰ may rule ¹ those, ⁰ whom they subdue.

¹ The figures should be reduced to 0 before a period. A semicolon requires the same, as it indicates the practical completion of the sense. Parts between semicolons may be treated as complete sentences.

Ius¹ era-t bell-i,² ut,¹ qui² vic-is-se-nt,¹ eīs,² qu-os¹
Right was-it war-of, that they-who won-had-they, those, who-m
 vic-is-se-nt,¹ quem² ad modum vel-le-nt¹ impera-re-nt.⁰
subdued-had-they, what after fashion like-d-they, rule-might-they.

It was the right of war, that those who had conquered, might rule those, whom they had subdued, after what fashion they liked.

226. If a word meaning *and* (*or* or *nor*) stands immediately after the main verb, it points to another main verb farther on; but if it follows a subordinate verb, it revives the force of the "guide" to which the subordinate verb belongs.

Caesar duas legiōnēs cōscrips-it et init-ā aestat-e,
Caesar two legions enrolled-he and begun-at summer-at,
 in Galliam qui¹ deduce-re-t,⁰ Quintum Pedium mis-it.
 to Gaul¹ that-he take-might-he,⁰ Quintus Pedius sent-he.
Caesar enlisted two legions and at the beginning of summer
sent Quintus Pedius, that he might take (them) to Gaul.

Standing after cōscripsit, et points on to misit.

Da-t negōtium Senon-ibus,¹ quī finitimī Belg-īs
Gives-he task Senons-to, who borderers Belgians-to
 era-nt,⁰ utī¹ ea,² quae apud e-os¹ gera-ntur,
 were-they,⁰ that¹ those,² which among the-m going-on-are-they,¹
 cognosc-a-nt,⁰ se-que¹ de hīs rebus certiore
 learn-shall-they,⁰ him-and¹ as-to these things pretty-certain
 faci-a-nt.⁰ Hi omnēs nuntiā-v-erunt, manus cōg-i.
 make-shall-they.⁰ They all report-ed-they bands gathered-be.

He assigned (it as) a task to the Senons, who were neighbors to the Belgians, that they should find out those (things) that were going on among them, and should keep him posted about these things. They all reported (that) bands (were) being gathered.

-que, and, connects **faciant** to **cognōscant** and renews the force of **utī**, which governs **cognoscant**.

227. Verbs are often omitted, where they are easily understood.

Flūmen Dubis,	¹ ut	circin-ō	circum-ductum	⁰ ()
<i>River Doubs,</i>	<i>as-if</i>	<i>compasses-by</i>	<i>about-dug</i>	()

oppidum cingi-t.
town girdles-it.

The river Doubs encircles the town, as if (it had been) drawn around it with a pair-of-compasses.

E-duc	te-cum	etiam omnis	tu-os,	¹ sī minus	⁰ ()
<i>Out-take</i>	<i>thee-with</i>	<i>also</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>thy-men,</i>	¹ <i>if not-all</i> ()

¹ **quam plurimōs** ⁰ ().
¹ **as** **most** ⁰ ().

Take out all your men with you too, if (you can) not (take them) all (take out) as many as (you can).

The full Latin sentence is: **Educ tēcum etiam omnis tuōs, sī minus (potes), quam plurimōs (potes).**

We say: *as well as he can* or *as best he can*. Latin uses only the latter form: **quam optime potest**, *as best he can*, or, **quam celerrimē potest**, *as quickest he can*, or, **quam maximum mīlitum numerum**, *as greatest a number of soldiers he can*.



Galeae.

Our task and how it is to be accomplished

228. Nothing can make the purpose of well-graded readings clearer, or better emphasize the importance of helps such as are given in this appendix than a glance at the problem which is solved for you below.

It is a rather complicated sentence from the author you are likely first to attack, and the solution serves at once to illustrate the most convenient and satisfactory method by which you must already have attained the ability to attack that author and to outline the surest steps by which you may still attain such ability, if you have not already done so.

229. You will probably regard this sentence difficult at first sight.

“*Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Rōmano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fecissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret.*” B. G., I., 33, 4.

But you can easily read in Latin and understand :

1 a. Germani trans Rhenum incolebant.

2 a. Germani autem ¹ Rhenum transibant.

3 a. **Germānī** in Galliam **veniebant**.

4 a. Multitudo Germanorum in Galliam veniebat.

5 a. Germani autem Rhenum transibant et magna multitudo eorum in Galliam veniebat.

NOTE. — **Cōsuēscēbant**, *were becoming accustomed*, assumes the tense of **transibant** (2 a) and **veniebant** (3 a) and changes them to present infinitives. See § 132.

6 a. Germani autem Rhenum **transire** consuescebant.

7 a. Germani autem Rhenum transire et in Galliam magna eorum multitudo **venire** consuescebat.²

NOTE. — The statement of an actual occurrence is changed to the *infinitive with subject accusative* when it becomes the subject of a verb. §§ 142, 152 a.

8 a. **Germānōs** in Galliam **venire** periculosum erat.

9 a. **Germānōs** autem **cōnsuēscere** Rhēnum transire Romanis periculosum erat. (Cf. 2 a and 6 a above.)

NOTE. — A declaration changes its form when it becomes the object of a verb. §§ 142, 153. Here **erat** becomes **esse**.

10 a. Paulatim ³ autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire Romanis periculosum esse videbat.

11 a. Magnam multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam venire populo Romano periculosum esse videbat.

12 a. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano periculosum esse videbat.

¹ **Autem** however.
gradually, little by little.

² Agrees with its nearest subject.

³ **Paulatim**

1 *b.* **Homines** sibi temperatūrī erant.

2 *b.* Cimbri Teutonīque Galliam occupaverant.

3 *b.* Cimbri et Teutonī **ita** fecerant.

4 *b.* Rhodanus Galliam a provincia dīvidebat.

5 *b.* Sequanī proximī provinciae¹ ex Gallīs sunt. Facile erat Rhodanum e Sequanīs in provinciam transire.

NOTE. — **Cum** with the *subjunctive* may mean *after*. §§ 115 *b*, *c*, 224.

6 *b.* **Cum** Cimbri Teutonīque omnem Galliam occupavissent, in provinciam exībant. Ex provincia in Italiam contendebant.

NOTE. — **Quin**, *but, so that . . . not*, takes the *subjunctive*. § 115.

7 *b.* Homines barbarī sibi temperatūrī non erant, **quīn** in provinciam exīrent. § 155 *b*.

8 *b.* **Homines** barbarōs sibi temperaturōs nōn esse existimabat, **quīn** in provinciam nostram exīrent.

9 *b.* Homines feros ac barbaros sibi temperaturos non existimabat, **quīn** ex provincia in Italiam contenderent.

NOTE. — **Ut** with the *indicative* often means *as*. § 147 *b*.

10 *b.* Homines ferī ac barbarī in provinciam exitūrī erant, **ut** Cimbri Teutonīque fecerant. §§ 102–3, 202.

11 *b.* Homines ferī ac barbarī temperaturī non erant, **quīn**, **cum** omnem Galliam occupassent, in provinciam exīrent, **cum** Rhodanus Gallos a provincia dīvideret.

NOTE. — But in indirect statements, all subordinate verbs stand in the *subjunctive*. § 137 *b*.

12 *b.* Homines feros ac barbaros sibi temperaturos non existimabat, **quīn**, **cum** omnem Galliam occupassent, **ut** ante Cimbri Teutonīque fecissent, in provinciam exīrent atque inde² in Italiam contenderent, **cum** Rhodanus Gallos a provincia dīvideret.

¹ *I.e.* the cisalpine province, now northern Italy.

² *Inde* from there.

“Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venīre, **populo Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat,**
¹quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ²ut ante Cimbri
Teutonique fecissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in
⁰Ītaliā contenderent, praesertim ¹cum Sequanōs a pro-
vincia nostra Rhodanus dīvideret.” §§ 225, 226.

The tricks thus employed by Latin authors to express thoughts are limited in number. You can learn them all (or nearly all) beforehand and then read the authors. But to become used to them and master them you must read. This is what is meant by preparing for Caesar, Cicero, and other writers; and if you have not read an abundance of easy Latin intelligently, you are not prepared to read the average Latin of their writings without the greatest drudgery and difficulty.

What shall one do in order to become able to read the authors easily and comfortably and enjoyably?

1. Read easy Latin first. 2. Read connected Latin from the first. 3. Re-read it till you master it. 4. Make yourself understand yourself as you read. 5. Read plenty of Latin that is easy to master. 6. Read aloud to train your eye, to get your own tongue accustomed to narrate to you, and to impress the Latin forms and phrases (in their natural order) on your own ear and understanding. 7. Read the Latin both before and after translating. 8. Read harder and harder sentences and read them harder and harder, and you will soon be able to read anything.

¹ Praesertim especially.

230. a. What appears to be *direct* or *indirect object* in English is expressed in a variety of ways in Latin according to the nature of the governing word. The *governing power* of certain words (especially verbs) will frequently be indicated by using abbreviations to point out some of the more common constructions that must be used with them. Other constructions will be learned by experience and observation.

CONSTRUCTIONS	ABBR.	EXAMPLES	
Infinitive as subject	Inf. s.	Legere licet	§ 131
Infinitive as object	Inf. o.	Legere cōnātur	§ 130
Infinitive with	4 Inf.	Puerum ire iubet	§ 134
subject Accusative		Puerum ire patitur	§ 142 a
b. Takes the Genitive	2	{ Librī cupidus est	§ 107 c
		{ Puerī interest	§ 73 c
c. Takes the Dative	3	{ Cōsiliō interest	§ 73 d
		{ Servis praeest	
d. Takes the Accusative	4	Puerum vocat	§ 5 d
e. Takes the Ablative	6	Librō ūtitur	§ 182 b
f. Acc. of the person	4 p 6 t	{ Puerum librō dōnat	§ 74, 12
Abl. of the thing		{ Puerum librō spoliāt	§ 63 b
g. Dat. of the person	3 p 4 t	{ Puerō librum dōnat	§ 56, 3
Acc. of the thing		{ Puerō ¹ librum imperat	§ 5 f
		{ Puerō ² librum ēripit	§ 5 f
h. Two Accusatives	4 p 4 t	{ Puerum librum flagitat	§ 147 e
		{ Puerum nomen rogat	§ 155
i. Acc. (thing)	4 t ab p	{ Librum ā puerō ¹ postulat	§ 147 e
a, ab w. Abl. >		{ Id ab aliīs ³ quaerit	§ 147 e
(person)		{ Id ā mē petit	
j. e, ex w. Abl. (person)	4 t ex p	Id ex puerō ¹ quaerit	§ 147 e
Acc. and Dat.	4 t 3 p	Id puerō persuadet	§ 147 e
ut-clause (thing)	3 p ut w. Sub.	Puero persuadet ut eat	§ 147 a

¹ Translate of the boy. ² Translate from the boy. ³ Translate of others.

ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

(Based on text and word lists and paradigms of Appendix. No English-Latin vocabulary necessary.)

While striving to master the forms of a *few* nouns thoroughly, pupils often console themselves with the thought that they are preparing to recognize the cases of *all* nouns promptly and unerringly. Their expectations may well be fulfilled in forms like

solis	virtutī	magnus	amīce	lūcem	tōtō
bonōs	cornūs	omnis	āera	regum	Circēs

because no other case has the same spelling. But when we remark that no Latin scholar on earth can possibly tell the case of

omnis	amīci	tempus	mare	decem	filio
custos	fructūs	equīs	oppida	regnum	dies

without first seeing them used in sentences, it becomes evident why the pupil's hope of being able to tell the case of a word by the *last letter or so* is every day being shattered in Latin classes.

The fact is that the character and form of most Latin words are not to be determined so much by knowing their lineage as by observing the "company they keep" — *i.e.* their relation to the words with which they are used.

These exercises aim to develop the habit of looking at words *from both points of view* and to train pupils to employ both these indispensable methods of procedure, *viz.* :

a. Using forms found in model sentences or like those given in paradigms, and

b. Writing forms of other words known to be correct from their use in easy passages of the text.

NOTE. — Easy exercises accomplish the desired results far more readily than more difficult ones. These exercises have been made especially simple and easy, as they are intended either for rapid oral or written work. They may be used at intervals, as the reading proceeds, to clinch the pupil's grasp of forms, while their use is most apparent, and to assist in developing a clearer and more definite idea of the *machinery* through which the human mind works to express thoughts both in English and Latin.

One-Word Exercises. English Case-Forms

English cannot be turned into Latin without careful study of the use of each word. The purpose of Exercises I–VI is to compel attention to the construction of single words in English and Latin sentences. Constructions that are apt to be confounded or need to be contrasted are studied together. Sections marked (a) in Exercises I–VIII require the use of the nouns found in §§ 75–6 and other words having the same endings.

EXERCISE I — Predicate Nominative and Direct Object

Study carefully §§ 5 a, d, e; cf. § 74, 3, 4; 76. Omit words in parentheses. Number each. Commence each exercise with a capital. Punctuate as in English.

a. 1. (It is) evening. 2. (I love) the evening. 3. (I see) the master. 4. (He calls) his son. 5. (That is) the son. 6. (He is called) Mark. 7. (He is thought) an enemy. 8. (He is) unfriendly. 9. (That island is) Rhodes. 10. (Do you see) Rhodes? 11. (That is) Philippi. 12. (Do you see) Philippi? 13. (That is) the boy. 14. (We see) the boy. 15. (They are) boys. 16. (They see) the boys. 17. (That is) a book. 18. (He has) a book. 19. (Those are) books. 20. (They have) books.

b. *Express the following in Latin (see pp. 3–5) as predicate nominatives.*

1. A sphere. 2. A great globe. 3. The earth. 4. The sun. 5. A globe. 6. A great sphere. 7. Large globes. 8. Flat. 9. Round. 10. Large.¹ 11. Bright. 12. Globe-like. 13. Small. 14. Pale.

Express the following in Latin as direct objects.

1. The earth. 2. What? 3. A great light. 4. What (things)? 5. Another light. 6. What things?

¹ Predicate nominatives are either nouns or adjectives; p. 5 note, § 83.

EXERCISE II — Direct and Indirect Object

Study carefully § 5 d, f; cf. §§ 56, 3; 74, 3, 4, 6 and 93. Use words occurring in § 5 and on pages 2-5 of the text.

a. 1. (It is) Mark. 2. (Call) Mark. 3. (Give) Mark (this). 4. (I see) pupils. 5. (Are they) pupils? 6. (They are not) masters. 7. (Tell) the pupils (so). 8. (He saw) boys. 9. (Did he tell) the boys (so)? 10. (He told) most (of them). 11. (See) the books. 12. (Are they) books? 13. (Some are) pupils; (others are) teachers. 14. (That is) a village. (See 5 g and Vocab.)

1. (Call) the boys. 2. (Do not call) the master. 3. (They are called) globes. 4. (See) the globes. 5. (It is) the master. 6. (That is) a boy. 7. (He is not) a pupil. 8. (It is) his son. 9. (Give) the son (a book). 10. (Call) a boy. 11. (Is he called) Mark? 12. (He calls) most-of-them. 13. (We choose) the boys. 14. (Tell) the boys (so). 15. (Give) the sons (this).

b. *Express as indirect objects (see pp. 6-8, 11 and § 74).*

1. The earth. 2. Moon. 3. Stars. 4. It; them. 5. Cato.

Express as direct objects (see pp. 6-11 and § 74, 4).

1. Light.¹ 2. The earth. 3. It.¹ 4. Them. 5. Another-body's light. 6. A soft light. 7. Other lights. 8. These lights. 9. A-great-deal. 10. Many (things); what (things)? 11. The stars. 12. Me; himself. 13. A river. 14. Cato.

Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 6-11; § 74, 3).

1. Lighted. 2. Luminous. 3. Dark.² 4. Bright. 5. Like. 6. Another's.² 7. Glittering. 8. Bright and hot. 9. Thick and countless. 10. Flat. 11. Globular; round. 12. Large. 13. Glittering and hot. 14. Light and shadows. 15. Little dots; stars; a star. 16. Spheres. 17. Other suns. 18. Cato. 19. Swift. 20. A ray; rays. 21. Julius. 22. A book.

¹ Use two or more different words.

² Which are plural? Which neuter? § 55 c, e, f.

EXERCISE III — Direct Address and Exclamations

Study § 74, 7 and 8. Cf. §§ 75-6. Use words on pp. 2-5.

a. 1. Thou foe. 2. My son. 3. (Look), master! 4. O Mark! 5. My (native) Rhodes. 6. (Fortunate) Rhodes! 7. (Poor) Mark! 8. (Come) boys. 9. O pupils. 10. (Lucky) pupils! 11. (Look) my sons! 12. (Speak) foes! 13. O (fortunate) Philippi! 14. Ye masters. 15. O (great) globes! 16. (Poor) boys! 17. O (bright) rays!

EXERCISE IV — Ownership Asserted; Ownership Assumed

Study § 5 e. Cf. §§ 56, 2, 3; 105 and 106 b.

a. 1. (That is) a book. 2. (I see) the book. 3. (It belongs) to Mark. 4. (It is) Mark's (book). 5. (Is there a name) to the book? 6. (That is) a school.¹ 7. (Those are) pupils. 8. (Call) the pupils. 9. (Give) the pupils (books). 10. (Are there books) for the pupils? 11. (Is there any name) to the school? 12. Mark (has books). 13. (I have) Mark's (books). 14. (Mark has) the books. (§ 5 e.) 15. (It belongs) to the boy. 16. Boys'. 17. Globe's. 18. Of most-(of-them). 19. Of Philippi.

Express in Latin (see pp. 7-14).

1. Earth's.² 2. Of the moon. 3. Its.³ 4. Their.³ 5. Stars'.² 6. Of the sky. 7. Of the sun. 8. Of this figure. 9. Of the smaller dipper. 10. And-of-them.

EXERCISE V — Measures of Extent and Difference; Time

Study § 68. Cf. § 5 d, j; 56, 4, 6; 74, 17, 18, 19.

a. 1. (It is) autumn.⁴ 2. During autumn. 3. During the evening. 4. At evening. 5. Within a year. 6. (I see) hamlets. 7. (They are) villages. 8. (It is) the year. 9. A year's (time). 10. Years' (work). 11. (Time) of year. 12. (Is there any end) to the year? 13. (It lasts) a year. 14. (It lasts) for years (§ 56, 4). 15. A year (later). 16. (Ten) years (after).

¹ Ludus.

² In more than one way.

³ § 109 b, c.

⁴ Autumnus.

b. *Express in Latin; see pp. 6, 10, 12, 18, 19.*

1. During-the-day.¹ 2. During the night. 3. So great a distance (§ 74, 17). 4. At midday. 5. In the morning.
6. All day. 7. Late in the day. 8. All night long. 9. The whole year. 10. At midnight. 11. At the rising (of the sun).
12. At night. 13. The² higher the better (74, 19). 14. (Is away) a-great-deal. 15. A-great-deal better. 16. Next year.
17. Last year. 18. (Can)not (read) at all. 19. A year before.
20. The year before. 21. (Is away) two years. 22. Seven years later. 23. Yesterday.³ 24. Today. 25. Tomorrow.¹
26. On that day.⁴ 27. In six years. 28. For six years.

EXERCISE VI — Subject Nominative; Subject Accusative

Study §§ 56, 1 and 4; 121, 122, 125, 134, 142 a. Cf. § 74, 1 and 2.

- a. 1. A boy (goes). 2. (We see) a boy (go). 3. Boys (call). 4. (I hear) boys (call). 5. A friend (is calling).
6. (I hear) a friend (calling). 7. Most-of-them (came).
8. (We saw) most-of-them (come). 9. The villages (burned).
10. (We saw) the villages (burn). 11. The school (is closed).
12. (He orders) the school (closed).

b. *Express as subjects of finite verbs (see pp. 2-11).*

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. The sky (p. 5, note.)
4. The sun. 5. Light.³ 6. Night. 7. The earth.³ 8. This light.
9. These lights. 10. Globes. 11. The stars.³ 12. We; I; you; thou. 13. Julius. 14. Julia. 15. The boy. 16. He; it;³ she; they.³

Express as subjects of infinitives.

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. The sky. 4. The sun.
5. Light.³ 6. Night. 7. Earth.³ 8. This light. 9. These lights.
10. Globes. 11. Stars. 12. Us; me; it;³ them.

¹ Latin adverb. ² English adverb; Abl. in Latin.

³ More than one way. ⁴ Of which declension is each? § 55 c.

a. 1. (There goes) a boy.¹ 2. (I see) the boy (go). 3. (He bade) the boy (go). 4. (There) he (goes). 5. Horses (run). 6. (I see) horses (run). 7. The sons (go). 8. (I let) the sons (go). 9. (Where are) the boys? 10. (There are) the boys!¹ 11. (He orders) the boys (to go).² 12. (Here is) the boy! 13. (Where is) the master? 14. (He is calling) the boy. 15. The boy (is called). 16. (He bids) the boy (hurry). 17. (There go) the boys. 18. (I see) the boys (run). 19. (They order) the school (closed). 20. The school (is closed). 21. (It is closed) for a year (§ 56, 4). 22. (Here comes) Mark.

¹ If the word *here*, *there*, or *where* stands first in an English sentence, the subject usually stands after the verb.

² § 146 a.

Two-Word Exercises ¹

Predicate Nominative — what a person or thing *is*, *becomes*, *is made* or *called* or *said to be*, etc.

Predicate Accusative — what one *knows*, *thinks*, *declares* or *learns* a person or thing *to be* or *become*, etc.

EXERCISE VII — Study § 5 a-c; cf. §§ 74, 3; 146, 1. Use words (pp. 24-6) like paradigms §§ 75-6.

a. 1. Paulus (is considered) a friend. 2. (I think) Paulus a friend. 3. (I know) Paulus (to be) a friend. 4. (I see) my friend Paulus. 5. His son (is thought) hostile. 6. (I think) his son (to be) an enemy. 7. (I call) his son an enemy. 8. The boy (is named) Paulus. 9. (He calls) his son Paulus. 10. (We know) the boy (to be) Paulus. 11. (We know) the boys (to be) friendly. 12. The master (is) a Greek.

b. Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 5, 6, 10-1, 14).

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. Large (*n.*). 4. Great globes. 5. Large (*f.*). 6. Dark (*n.*). 7. Day. 8. Shadows. 9. Stars.² 10. Pale. 11. A star. 12. Suns. 13. Spheres.

¹ In exercises marked (a).

² More than one way.

14. Small. 15. Round.¹ 16. The dipper. 17. Motionless.
18. The larger dipper. 19. The smaller. 20. Polaris.²

Express as predicate accusatives (see pp. 5, 6, 10-2).

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. Bright (*sing.*). 4. Great²
globes. 5. Large (*f.*). 6. Dark (*n.*). 7. Day. 8. Shadows.
9. Pale. 10. Stars.¹ 11. A star. 12. Suns. 13. Spheres.
14. Small. 15. Very-large. 16. Night. 17. Midday.
18. High.

Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 15-21).

1. South. 2. West-wind. 3. Cool.¹ 4. Damp. 5. Soft.
6. Hard. 7. Harder. 8. Flowing. 9. Shapeless. 10. Even.
11. Plains. 12. Hills.³ 13. Rough. 14. Thin. 15. Dense.
16. Denser. 17. More thin. 18. Very-rare. 19. Fixed.
20. End. 21. Situated. 22. The North Pole. 23. Cold (*pl.*).
24. Cold (*sing.*). 25. Warm.¹ 26. Spring. 27. Summer.
28. Longer. 29. Green. 30. Clear. 31. Blue. 32. Very-
short. 33. Dry. 34. Covered-with-flowers.

EXERCISE VIII — Predicate of the Object; Appositives

NOTE. — Predicate Nouns are attached to the direct object in such a way as to become a *part of the assertion*.

Ex. (They count) the boy a friend. Cf. § 5 *b*.

Write the word for *boy* as direct object;
then *friend*, predicate of the object (accusative).

Puerum
Puerum amicum.

Study § 5^a b and § 93; cf. § 74, 5.

1. (He considers) the Romans his enemies. 2. Romans
(seem) friendly. 3. Most-of-them (are not) enemies. 4. (I
call) most-of-them friends. 5. Our friend Mark (is calling).
6. Our friend Mark's (plan). 7. (Tell) our friend Mark.
8. (They see) your friend the master. 9. Friend Mark!
10. (We know) the boy (to be) Mark.

¹ More than one way.

² Of which declension is each? § 55 *c*; cf. §§ 42, 2; 52.

³ § 79 *a*.

b. Express as predicates of the object (see pp. 3, 12-5).

1. A globe. 2. The East. 3. The West. 4. The South.
5. The pointers. 6. The North. 7. The west wind.

Express as subjects with appositives (pp. 15, 17, 19).

1. The first (one), Boreas. 2. The latter being adjusted.
3. The star Polaris. 4. Water when-falling (p. 42).

Express as objects with appositives (see pp. 20-3).

1. Places that-were-deserted. 2. The fruits that-are-ripe.
3. Fields and woods that are white.

Study § 94. Use words found on pp. 24-6.

- a. 1. O (fortunate) Greeks who-were-philosophers. 2. (They call) the Greek Theodorus. 3. (He names) his son Lucius.
4. (He is older) than my friend Aemilius. 5. (They saw) Rhodes when-it-was-a hamlet.¹ 6. (He is) a boy that-is-friendly. 7. The master who-is-our-friend (told us this).
8. (We knew) his son when-a-boy. 9. (He saw) Philippi when-it-was-a-mere-village. 10. The son (is learning it) while-he-is a boy. 11. (We told) most of-them as-they-were-friendly.
12. (Invite) the Greeks even-though-they-are-enemies. 13. The master (lived here) when-a-boy. 14. (Tell) the son, if-he-seems-friendly. 15. (Ask) the boy even-if-he-is-a Greek.
16. (We shall ask) the Romans because-they-are-our-friends. 17. (Invite) Titus since-he-is-my son. 18. (They are stronger) than Mark when-he-was-a boy. 19. A boy who-was-his-friend (warned him).

EXERCISE IX — Infinitives in English and Latin

Study §§ 121-3, 127-8, 130. What is a finite verb? § 125. Use Infinitives only. Omit words in parentheses.

1. (I ought) to call. 2. (I will) call. 3. (They may) be called. 4. (I can) be called. 5. Calling (may) be done. 6. (I

¹ Study § 94.

ought) to try. 7. (I can) make effort. 8. (I can) order. 9. (It may) be ordered. 10. Order (may) be given. 11. To read. 12. (It can) be read. 13. (I may) take. 14. (We can) let. 15. (It may) be heard. 16. (I can) send. 17. (He is willing) to go. 18. Traveling (may) be done. 19. (I may) be unwilling. 20. (It cannot) be. 21. (He began) traveling. 22. (They dare not) speak. 23. (Doesn't he dare) to be heard?

Exercises of one to three words. See §§ 131-4 a.

a. 1. Trying (is permitted). 2. (One may) try. 3. Reading (is allowed). 4. Bribing (is) giving. 5. Call (is) speak. 6. To order (is) to allow. 7. To be taken. 8. Be going. 9. To be. 10. To be put. 11. Be able. 12. Let. 13. To wish. 14. Prefer. 15. Be unwilling.

1. (I seem) to be able. 2. (Seem) to be. 3. (Seem) to hear. 4. (Kept) from trying. 5. (Ordered) to read. 6. (Kept) from being. 7. (Forced) to let. 8. (Said) to be.

1. (I wish) to call my friends (§ 133). 2. (We can) be friends. 3. (He seems) to be unfriendly. 4. (Might) be called friend. 5. (Is ordered) to call the boys. 6. (Seems) to be calling the master. 7. (Appears) to be a wall. 8. (May) be willing to speak. 9. (I may) prefer to read. 10. To try to go.

b. 1. (Hear) Mark call (§ 134). 2. (I hear) calling done. 3. (Let) a boy go. 4. (I think) Mark willing. 5. (Regard) boys able to speak. 6. (I order) boys to be called. 7. (I hear) the son call. 8. (I hear) it ordered. 9. (Hear) the order given. 10. (I saw) a boy take a horse. 11. (I saw) the horses taken.

Express as direct objects of other verbs (pp. 21-2, 26).

1. To ripen. 2. Reaping. 3. Picking. 4. To be. 5. To become white. 6. To pick. 7. To gather. 8. To make-ready. 9. To speak. 10. To learn.

Express as subjects of other verbs (cf. §§ 129, 131, 133):

1. Seeing. 2. Going-out. 3. To see (p. 20). 4. To wander (p. 24). 5. Writing (p. 29). 6. Looking-over (p. 34). 7. To count (p. 36). 8. To measure (p. 41). 9. Willing.¹ 10. To write (p. 29). 11. To get (p. 45). 12. Acquiring (p. 46). 13. Writing (p. 48). 14. To enumerate (p. 50). 15. Getting. 16. Building. 17. Keeping-up. 18. Providing. 19. To bring-up (p. 52).

¹ § 131.

Complete Sentences

EXERCISE X — The Present Indicative (Finite)

Study §§ 136-7. Review § 5 a-c and 74, 1-5.

1. He is calling. 2. The boy is calling. 3. ¹ She is calling the boy. 4. A boy is being called. 5. It is called Rhodes. 6. (The island) is called Rhodes. 7. He is called Mark. 8. The boy is called Mark. 9. Calling-is-being-done. 10. They call. 11. Boys call. 12. They call the boy Lucius. 13. The boy is called Lucius. 14. He calls the boys friends.

1. The boys are called friendly. 2. They order. 3. The order-is-given. 4. They are ordered. 5. Reading is being done. 6. It is read. 7. They do go. 8. One goes.

NOTE. — Every language has its own peculiar order of words. Latin words must be written or spoken in the *natural Latin order*. The infinitive regularly stands before indicatives meaning *may, can, let, wish, try, will, prefer, are heard, are ordered*, etc. Imitate the order of words in the model sentences given in §§ 130-4.

EXERCISE XI — Indicatives and Infinitives

- a. 1. They call. 2. They can call (§ 121). 3. They are trying. 4. They may try. 5. It is permitted to try. 6. One may read. 7. They read. 8. They will not read. 9. They

¹ Place the *verb* at the end of the sentence or of its clause.

will-rather hear. 10. He prefers to hear. 11. He is reading. 12. He is ordered to read. 13. He is ordered to go. 14. It is being read. 15. It can be read. 16. She reads.

Infinitives with Indicatives (§§ 129, 132; cf. § 155).

b. 1. Seem to rise (p. 12). 2. Seems to remain (p. 14). 3. Seem to turn-themselves (p. 19). 4. Are seen going. 5. Are seen turning-themselves-back (p. 25). 6. Of speaking (p. 26). 7. About doubling (p. 29). 8. Cannot be discerned (p. 30). 9. Was the custom to count (p. 36). 10. One may measure. 11. Method of measuring (p. 41). 12. Taught to find (p. 43). 13. To get by reading (p. 45). 14. By hearing; by seeing (p. 46). 15. (We) are taught to write (p. 48). 16. Are forced to write; ought to shine (p. 49).

Express in Latin (as found on pp. 22-3; cf. §§ 136-7).

Irr.	-ā-	-ē-	-e-	-i-	-i-
brings	blows	shines ¹	burns	there begins	raves
becomes	roars	sees ²	grows	looks-down	comes ³
(they) are	blow	see	fall	begin	come ⁴
become	bend	are silent	seek	look-down	go ⁴
are-away ⁵	move	are-rigid	dry-up	take; make ⁶	hear

Express in Latin (see pp. 10, 20-3; cf. §§ 181-3).

is called	is seen	is spoken of	is-made ⁷	is heard
detains-itself	seems	turns-itself ⁸	dies	bribes
are called	seem	feed (selves)	die	bribe
gather (selves)	dread	come-back	let	open
attempt	are-mixed	help-selves ⁹	go (§ 206)	go out

c. *Express in Latin (cf. §§ 136-7).*

1. Gift-is-made (§ 137). 2. Penetrating-is-done (p. 16). 3. Answer-is-given (p. 43). 4. Descending-is-done (p. 18). 5. Taking away-is-done (p. 43). 6. Going-is-done (p. 18).

¹ p. 12. ² § 74. ³ p. 15. ⁴ p. 24. ⁵ p. 10. ⁶ p. 21. ⁷ § 212. ⁸ p. 19.

⁹ p. 26.

7. Calling-is-done (§ 136). 8. One may (§ 136). 9. Reading-is-done (or) one reads (§ 106 c). 10. One takes; one heeds; one goes (§§ 136-7). 11. One replies (p. 43). 12. One writes (p. 49).

NOTE. — A former thought or statement is often mentioned as a part of a new thought or statement (§ 142). Former thoughts are often expressed as the direct object of verbs meaning *see, hear, perceive, know, say, read, order, bid, let, wish* (§ 142).

d. 1. The master calls. 2. They hear the master call. 3. Boys try. 4. He lets the boys try. 5. The sons speak. 6. They let the sons speak. 7. The-order-is-given. 8. They hear the-order-given. 9. The master is reading. 10. The boys wish the master to read. 11. The son goes. 12. He lets his son go. 13. They hear that¹ the son goes. 14. The boys try. 15. They wish the boys to try. 16. He wishes that the boys try. 17. It is being read. 18. They wish it to be read.

e. *Imitate the sentences on pp. 12 and 13.*

In the morning the sun rises. It rises off east. We see the sun rise. At mid-day the sun is high in the sky. We call the mid-day noon. The sun shines all day. We see the sun shining in the sky. Late in the day it sets. We see (it) set off west. At evening it-gets-dark. The stars grow bright. We see the stars grow bright. The moon rises off east. We see the moon rise. It shines all night. We see the moon shining in the sky. Late at night the moon sets. The stars also seem to set in the west.

f. *Express in Latin as found in the text.*

(We) are (p. 16); call, see (p. 12); get (p. 7); hear (p. 13).

(We) are-away, stand, like, choose (p. 24); desire² (p. 26).

(We) are able (p. 48); are called (§ 187); are taught (p. 43).

(We) think (for ourselves), help-ourselves, measure (p. 38, § 182).

¹ § 146 a.

² or *wish*.

- (We) look, speak-of, declare, know, know-not, inquire (p. 42).
 (We) notice, regard, learn, become-acquainted-with, are able, advance-ourselves, become, distinguish, can, are taught (p. 45).
 (We) get, go out, make, are-made (p. 46).
 (We) shall-note, have-said, were, shall-learn, shall-follow (p. 34).

Express in Latin as found in the text or paradigms.

- (Thou) art (p. 57); art reading (p. 5); askest (p. 43);
 (Thou) callest (§ 187); art rejoicing; dost-understand (p. 57);
 takest (§ 202); hearest (§ 207); goest (§ 212).
 (Thou) canst (§ 183); art called; art excited; art forgetful
 (p. 57); art taken (§ 202); art heard (§ 207).
 (Thou) wilt-have-completed; wilt-begin; wilt-be-clad (p. 57).
 (You) did-read; are-reading; will-read (p. 10).
 (I) am; think; am called; hold; rejoice; understand (p. 57);
 take (§ 202); hear (§ 207); can; could;¹ was; were¹ (§ 183).

EXERCISE XII — Commands; The Position of the Vocative

Study Imperative forms. See §§ 183 c, 186, 189, 191 b, 194, 196 b, 199, 201 b, 204, 206 b, 209, 211 b, 214. Cf. § 170, note.

The negative of a command or entreaty is **nē** (*not*). The negative of a declaration is **nōn** (*not*).

Nōlī, nōlīte² (*do not*) followed by the infinitive is far more common and more polite than **ne** with the imperative.

Nē puerum vocā!	Nōlī eum vocāre	Nōn vocat
<i>don't call the boy!</i>	<i>do not call him</i>	<i>he is not calling</i>

1. Call the master, Mark.³ 2. Don't call the boys! 3. Do not call the boys. 4. Go, boy! Don't be called. 5. Go, boys;³ don't be called! 6. Try,⁴ Aemilius. 7. Try, boys!

¹ More than one way. ² § 186. ³ § 56, 5. ⁴ §§ 181-2.

8. Do read,¹ master! Order² the boys to read. Bid Mark (to) try. 9. Read, Mark! Don't be bidden. 10. Let³ the boys go, master! 11. Let Titus be invited, boys. Don't let Paulus hear! Do not let³ the master hear. 12. Go, boy! Don't be ordered. Don't be caught. 13. Be friendly, Mark.

¹ Cf. § 199. ² Cf. § 194. ³ Cf. § 206 b.

EXERCISE XIII — Adverbs and Indeclinable Numerals

Study § 69 and the table of numerals, p. 29.

The boy has a book. He reads well. The boys have books. They can read well. The barbarian is not a pupil. He can not read. Most Greeks can read. The majority (of) Romans can read well. Romans speak (in-) Latin. Mark speaks (in-) Latin. He can speak well. Titus speaks better. Most pupils speak very well. Theodorus speaks differently. He speaks (in-) Greek. The barbarians do not speak (in-) Greek. They cannot even speak (in-) Latin. The Gaul¹ tries to speak Latin. He speaks as well as he can. Theodorus speaks badly. The master calls the boys. They hear the-calling-done. They do not wish to go. He calls again-and-again. Afterward though-unwilling² they go as quickly as possible. He tells (bids) them to read. They read very well. They read as long-as they can. Afterward he lets them go.

1. How long is he absent?³ 2. He is away for a-long-time. 3. The master calls the boys more-than-once. 4. They are far away.³ 5. They do not hear. 6. They are too far away. 7. They stay (are) away³ too long. 8. They go away⁴ as far as possible. 9. They wander⁵ far and wide. 10. They go away very seldom. 11. They do not love the master as much as they fear him. 12. They do not wish the master ill.

¹ Gallus.

² invitī.

³ § 185.

⁴ abeunt.

⁵ vagantur.

1. There are ten pupils. 2. Apollonius (3) has fifty books. 3. Titus gives Theodorus books. 4. The boy does not read well. 5. He reads as best he can. 6. The barbarians² cannot even read. 7. The boys read more easily. 8. Marcus reads the book five times. 9. He loves to read. 10. He reads as rapidly as he can. 11. He often makes-mistakes.² 12. Titus loves horses especially. 13. He loves horses more than (he loves) books. 14. ³Titus (3) has twenty horses.¹ 15. He gives the master books. 16. The master reads very well. 17. They express-themselves otherwise than the master (speaks).

¹ See § 62 f.² errat.³ (3) = Dat. (1) = Nom.; cf. § 105.

EXERCISE XIV — The Use of Prepositions

NOTE. — Some Latin prepositions are always followed by the accusative case; some always take the ablative; **in** and **sub** may take either case. Each Latin preposition has *just one underlying idea*, that we cannot express exactly with any one word. Each partial meaning given must be taken in the sense of all the others. English prepositions have no exact equivalents in Latin.

Ex. *They send Mark a book.*

Cf. § 5 f.

Write the word for *book* (direct obj.)

1. **Librum** . . .

Distance is involved. Use **ad**

1. **Librum ad** . . .

Ad governs the Acc. case

1. **Librum ad Mārcum** . . .

Dare § 128 means *give* or *send*

1. **Librum ad Mārcum dant.**

Ex. *He starts for the fields.*

Cf. § 5 g.

Destination; **in** with Acc.

2. **In agrōs** . . .

Proficiscī start (like **loqui** § 136)

2. **In agrōs proficiscitur.**

Ex. *He seems (a man) of friendly feeling toward Titus.*

Amīcō **animō in** **Titum videtur.**

Use a preposition with the accusative in each. Study § 57.

1. In-the-direction-of-the hamlet. 2. (Wait) till evening!
3. Near the village. 4. Up to the walls.¹ 5. They go toward the fields. 6. Up on the wall. 7. Close-by the village.²
8. He is next-to Mark. 9. He is ordered to go ahead-of the boys. 10. The pupil is in-care-of the master. 11. They are going among friends. 12. They are wandering in-the-vicinity-of the village. 13. They happen³ upon a barbarian. 14. He is starting for school. 15. Between the pupils.

Use only prepositions with the ablative. Study § 58.

1. From-the-direction-of the village. 2. From a boy (up).
3. He is called by a boy. 4. Away from the walls. 5. From-the-direction-of Rhodes. 6. Down from the wall. 7. The boy is with the master. 8. They are among friends. 9. He is on the wall. 10. And for this reason. 11. He speaks concerning the books. 12. A few of our men are speaking. 13. He speaks for his friends. 14. They are (§ 185) far away from the school (§ 221 b). 15. He is in the village.

Use at least one preposition in each exercise. Study § 60.

1. He sends Mark a book. 2. They are on the wall.
3. They lead the horses up on a hill. 4. Titus goes to the village (§ 5g). 5. He puts the boys to flight. 6. The boys have in mind to call the master (§ 105). 7. Call the boys to the house, Titus. 8. They are far away from the house (§ 221 b). 9. Titus sends Theodorus a book. 10. Our friends are at the village. 11. They return home from the village. 12. The boy

¹ § 63 a.

² vicus -i, m.

³ incidere, cf. §§ 197, 221 b.

goes with the horses. 13. Mark is one of them. 14. Not a few of the boys are in the school. 15. They rush ¹ to arms. 16. He is (a boy) of unfriendly mind toward the Greeks (§ 62 *g*).

Use no prepositions. For case forms see §§ 56, 60-2, 76.

1. Give a book to Mark! 2. They ride on horses (§ 62 *b*). 3. Apollonius goes to Rhodes. 4. They return home. 5. Mark goes to Philippi. 6. He is in Cyprus. 7. They go (out) from home (§ 221 *b*). 8. Mark gives Theodorus a book. 9. They return at evening. 10. They are coming-back ² from Rhodes. 11. They till the land with horses. 12. They wait for a year. 13. It is the master's son. 14. It is the house of Titus. 15. The field is next (§ 68 *c*, Ex.) to the village (3).

Use one preposition with the accusative in each. § 57.

1. Beyond the village. 2. In the eyes of Apollonius. 3. At my house. 4. At Titus' house. 5. In which direction are they going? 6. In sight of town. 7. They are wandering over the fields. 8. Because of the height of the walls.

Use one preposition with the ablative in each. § 58.

1. One of ³ them is returning. 2. There is a bridge over (on) the river. 3. One of the boys is going out from home. 4. In comparison with the books. 5. Not a few of the pupils are trying. 6. They wait-for ⁴ Titus in front of the walls. 7. I take Titus for a friend. 8. They go along with the master. 9. He is among the boys. 10. The master returns ² ahead of the pupils. 11. In behalf of the barbarians.

¹ *currere*; cf. § 197.

³ See § 66 *c*.

² *reverti* like *loqui*, § 136; see § 182.

⁴ *expectare*.

EXERCISE XV — Indefinite Numbers

Study § 64. Use prepositions in Nos. 14 and 16.

1. How-many pupils are there? 2. There are many.
3. They are going home. 4. They see horses. 5. The horses belong to Titus. 6. Titus sees several. 7. How many does Theodorus see? 8. He sees five horses. 9. The master sees just-as-many. 10. Mark sees as many as Titus. 11. The Gaul sees none. 12. How many are going? 13. Our (men) are going. 14. Titus takes as many as possible with him. 15. The majority wish to go. 16. Not-a-few of the boys ride on horses.

EXERCISE XVI — Indefinite Pronouns (Masculine)

Study §§ 40, 65-6 and 108-10 masculine only. See § 74.

Use one preposition in each sentence (except 12, 13, 15, 16).

1. The boys are wandering in the fields. 2. A-few are in the school. 3. Some prefer to remain (§ 128) in school. 4. Very few are going to the village. 5. The master goes with the boys. 6. They go to the fields. 7. She sees the boys go to school. 8. She sees her (people) go to the village. 9. They call their men into the house. 10. She sends her (friends) books (§ 5 f). 11. My-people are of friendly feeling toward Mark. 12. The good-men love horses. 13. Horses do not like bad-men. 14. The good are of friendly mind toward the bad. 15. Some praise Mark, others blame him. 16. The one praises Mark, the other (praises) Titus.

1. One praises one, another another. 2. Which one of the (two) boys blames Mark? 3. Neither-one blames Mark. 4. Neither (§ 66) Mark nor any one of the boys speaks. 5. Some blame one, others another. 6. The ones praise the master, the others blame him. 7. Nobody calls the pupils. 8. Who is ordering the boy to speak? 9. He alone is going home. 10. They alone return home (§ 182 b).

EXERCISE XVII — First and Second Declension Nouns

NOTE. — All the nouns thus far given belong to the same class as **alumnus**, pl. **alumni**. First Declension nouns belong to the same class as our word **formula**, pl. **formulae** (borrowed from Latin). Neuter nouns of the Second Declension are of the same class as **stratum**, pl. **strata**. They have **-um** (rarely **-us**) in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular and **-a** in the same cases of the plural. Note that the ending **-a** occurs in the singular of the one class but in the plural of the other.

Study § 77. Use no prepositions. Cf. §§ 56, 60.

1. In Alexandria. 2. In Rhodes. 3. At Arpinum. 4. In Philippi. 5. From Syracuse. 6. At Leuctra. 7. He is Titus' son. 8. She is a daughter of Titus. 9. Arpinum is a town. 10. Son's and daughter's. 11. Town's. 12. The sons' and daughters'. 13. Towns'. 14. He goes to Philippi. 15. They go either¹ to Athens or¹ to Leuctra. 16. He goes to Arpinum. 17. They go to Rhodes. 18. According to a plan. 19. He goes out from Athens. 20. By the north wind.

¹ Use **aut . . . aut**; cf. § 66 a.

Use one preposition in each. §§ 57-8.

1. To the town. 2. Through towns and villages. 3. With sons and daughters. 4. Into the crowd. 5. Into camp. 6. Into the provinces. 7. Toward the provinces. 8. In-sight-of Arpinum. 9. Away from the camp. 10. Toward Athens. 11. In the towns. 12. To-a-point-near Philippi (§ 60).

NOTE. — To get the base of a noun of the First or Second Declension, drop **-i** or **-ūrum**, **-ae** or **-arum** from the *genitive*. Use the uncontracted Genitive Singular only to get the base. In writing Latin use the contracted form of the Genitive Singular, if any. Do not attempt to write the Nominative Singular without first making sure of the exact spelling; see §§ 6 c, 41-3. Each noun has its own set of endings. From the Nominative and Genitive given in the vocabulary, it can be determined which set of terminations a noun has.

Study §§ 59, 129, 135; cf. §§ 190 b, 191 d, 195 b, 196 d, 200 b, 201 d, 205 d, 206 d, 210 b, 211 d, 215 b.

1. For the sake of hearing. 2. For attacking. 3. Is necessary to try (cf. § 152 a). 4. He is ready to read. 5. He can read well. 6. Upon inquiring. 7. Upon taking. 8. By fleeing. 9. He is prepared to flee. 10. They wish to read. 11. To act is necessary. 12. It is time to act. 13. Time to see is not given. 14. Time to take arms is not given.

EXERCISE XVIII — Time, Cause, Purpose, Manner, Respect

Study §§ 56, 6; 59; 74, 12, 15, 16, 18; 96 b, c. *See pp.* 31-2.

Use no prepositions. 1. To Aemilius. 2. To Aemilia. 3. In wisdom.¹ 4. In abundance.² 5. With resources.² 6. From care. 7. From Leuctra. 8. In an hour.³ 9. For an hour (4). 10. For five hours (4). 11. To the inhabitants.⁴ 12. Hour's. 13. Galba's.⁵ 14. Girl's. 15. In the course⁶ of an hour. 16. In the period⁶ of a year. 17. In zeal.⁷ 18. In two years. 19. According to the plan. 20. Wrongly. 21. He is praised for his diligence. 22. (Go) for grain. 23. (Start) for Rome.

Use a preposition in each. 1. In-the-eyes-of Aemilius. 2. In-the-care-of Aemilia (§ 57). 3. With Galba. 4. Between Aemilia and the maid.⁸ 5. Beyond Rome. 6. On-this-side-of the camp (§ 57). 7. By a slave; by a maid. 8. About troops.² 9. From among the troops. 10. One of the poets (§ 66 c) is calling. 11. Few of the philosophers wish to go. 12. In-behalf-of the sons; in-behalf-of the daughters. 13. In the opinion of the crowd. 14. Carefully. 15. With diligence. 16. According to Paulus' plan. 17. To Aemilius. 18. Against a companion. 19. For the camp. 20. At Julius.

¹ cōsiliū.

² cōpia -ae, f.

³ hōra -ae, f.

⁴ incolae -ae, m.

⁵ Galba -ae, m.

⁶ spatium -ī, n.

⁷ studium -ī, n.

⁸ serva -ae, f.

Study §§ 66 b, c and 120 a-e. Use words on pp. 28-9.

One preposition in each. 1. One of the sons is calling. 2. Aemilia is calling one of the girls. 3. Two of the boys are at home. 4. They can see one of the towns. 5. He is called by one of (his) daughters. 6. They see the horses of two of the barbarians (§ 63). 7. Three of the towns are taken. 8. He can see three of the horses. 9. Thousands of barbarians are fighting with the Romans. 10. The master gives three of the boys books. 11. Titus is reading a book of one of his sons. 12. Mark gives one of the boys a book. 13. The camp is in-sight-of Leuctra. 14. They are ten miles away from the camp. 15. Both are coming from the village. 16. Either Lucius or Galba will call the boys to the house.

Study §§ 67-8; cf. uses of words on pp. 31-2.

1. Year before last. 2. Ten miles. 3. Ten miles away. 4. On that day. 5. He cannot read at all. 6. Twice in the course of a year. 7. Four times in a period of three years. 8. For a period of four days. 9. He cannot see at first. 10. He sees Aemilius for the first time at Arpinum. 11. Five times in the course of a year. 12. He calls again and again.

Study §§ 70, 71 c; 72; 73 a-e; 74, 17 and 19.

1. There is need of so much for the pupils. 2. How much of good is there to the book? 3. It is rated of very great (value). 4. He buys it at a very small (figure). 5. It is so much the interest of the pupils. 6. They take part in reading. 7. Slaves are for-the-most-part a protection to boys. 8. How much do they read? 9. They read as much as I. 10. How much better can Titus read? 11. Very little better. 12. The one reads too little, the other well enough. 13. There is nothing bad to him. 14. He is not alarmed at all.

EXERCISE XIX — Indefinite Pronouns (Neuter)

Study §§ 71 a, b; 108 a, b; 109 a, 110, 111, 112.

1. What is of more (value)? 2. They hear nothing else.
3. The Greeks defend none of the towns; boys are a protection to the one, slaves to the other. 4. If there is any protection, he may tell them. 5. If any one knows anything, one may tell it. 6. What one hears, he may tell them. 7. How able are they? 8. Which of the towns is defended better? 9. They defend both, what they can. 10. We do not know whether they read or speak (§§ 137 c; 139; 143). 11. They neither read nor speak (§ 66). 12. They are ready for neither (thing). 13. It is permitted to read everything (that is) best.

EXERCISE XX — The Agreement of Pronouns

NOTE. — Pronouns agree with the words for which they stand in gender and number. What determines their case?

Express by words found in the text.

The earth is not luminous; *it* is dark; the sun gives *it*¹ light, 6, 5. We choose *boys*; we select *two*; *they* are not far from us; we hear *them* speaking.² We see *a light*; *it* is called the sun, 4, 3. *The sun* is not flat; *it* looks globe-like, 4, 3. *The earth and moon* are dark; *they* are not luminous, 8, 2. What gives *them* light? The sun illuminates *them*, 7, 4. There are *two dippers*; and one of *them* is called the smaller, the other the larger, 14, 9. The second is *Auster*; and *it* starts from-the-direction-of the noonday-sun, 15, 7.

We call *the fourth* Zephyrus; *it* blows from the west, 15, 11. There are two poles; and one of *them* is called the North, the other the South Pole, 19, 9. *These regions* are cold; everything in *them* is frozen, 19, 11. The farmer plants *trees*, whose fruit

¹ Figures refer to pages and lines where pronouns are found. ² P. 24.

he will never see, 20, 21. He plants *trees*, *that-they* may profit others, 20, 22. There is *a school* at Rome; prominent men let their sons go to it, 26, 2; *in it* they learn Greek (things).

EXERCISE XXI — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

Study §§ 116 a-c; 138-9; 147 c.

1. I call thee. 2. Thou callest me. 3. I urge that thou call (§ 188) us. 4. Give (§ 184) me the book. 5. They send me (§ 5 f) books. 6. They are at my house (§ 57). 7. Who is at thy house? 8. He asks who is going (§ 143) with me. 9. You urge that we call Mark. 10. Whom (§ 110) do you call us? 11. Why does he order us to go? 12. A demand-is-made by you. 13. Which (§ 108) of you (two) blames us? 14. What one of us accuses you?

1. I call my (friends, § 64) to me. 2. I urge that thou call (§ 188) the boy to thee. 3. We request that he call the pupils to him. 4. He demands lands for himself. 5. He calls Titus to him. 6. They take¹ (their) sons with them. 7. We reproach² ourselves. 8. We take² the boys with us. 9. He forgets (§ 107 c) Mark's insult (2) to him (2). 10. They forget Titus' injury to me.³ 11. He has⁴ troops about him.

EXERCISE XXII — The Imperfect and Perfect Tenses

Study §§ 183-5. Translate past tenses by the Perfect.

Where were you last year, Titus? You were at home (§ 60)? I was at thy house (§ 57). I could not see thee. Thou wast absent at-the-time. Wast thou not at Mark's house (§ 109 b)? There is (some one-) who knows (§ 137 c) where thou wast. Many are said to have been with thee. They did not fail

¹ *dūcunt*

² § 64.

³ Use the genitive.

⁴ *habet*.

thee (3). One is said to have been absent. Many do not know where thou wast (§ 143). Galba says many wish (§ 142 *a*) to find out.¹ I was with Galba. We were not far away. There were many with us. Thou couldst not see Galba. He could not see thee. Neither of us could see thee.

Translate past tenses by the Imperfect. See §§ 144-5.

I was at Arpinum year before last, boys. Doesn't Mark know where I was (§ 143)? He was in the camp. The camp was (§ 66 *c*) not far from town. And-if-he (§ 115 *c*) was in the town, he could see me often. Why (§ 114) did you fail me (3)? You could easily (§ 69) find out where I was. Galba will go away if he can. They however wish the boys to be at hand.

EXERCISE XXIII — The Perfect, Active and Passive

NOTE. — To get the perfect stem of any verb, drop -I from the Perfect Indicative, Active, First Person, Singular. The Perfect Active of all verbs has the same endings as fui (§ 183 *b*). For the passive, see §§ 168, 171, 187, etc.; cf. §§ 99 and 101.

rogāvī I asked	habuī I had	dixī I said	cēpī I took	fui I was
vetuī forbade	vidī saw	legī read	fecī did	venī came
vocāvī called	iussī bade	tulī bore	ivī, iī went	dedī gave

1. I asked. 2. Thou hast called. 3. He forbade. 4. We have had. 5. You saw. 6. They have bidden. 7. I said. 8. Thou hast borne. 9. She has read. 10. We took. 11. You have done. 12. They have gone.¹ 13. I was. 14. Thou hast been. 15. He has come. 16. We came. 17. You have been giving. 18. They have been. 19. They have been absent. 20. I was able. 21. Thou hast been asking. 22. I have seen. 23. It has been going. 24. He has been reading. 25. We have often (§ 69) forbidden. 26. To have taken; to have seen; to have gone; to have given.

NOTE. — Rewrite changing to the Subjunctive. To the passive.

¹ Translate in four different ways.

EXERCISE XXIV — The Third Declension

Study §§ 57-8, 78-81, 82 a-c. One preposition in each.

1. With a guard. 2. As-for the wound. 3. Toward the mouth of the river. 4. Toward the country. 5. In-the-opinion-of the maiden. 6. To the judges. 7. Toward the ships. 8. In what direction? 9. Toward the sea. 10. Into river Arar. 11. Near Bibracte. 12. From the direction of Gades. 13. Because of the tax. On the sea.

Use no prepositions. 1. With a wound. 2. To the country (§ 74, 10). 3. To Bibracte. 4. From Gades. 5. On account of a wound. 6. By force. 7. By sea. 8. On the river Arar. 9. By clouds. 10. With oxen. 11. By walls. 12. At Gades. 13. In Bibracte. 14. To Gades. 15. Because of the tax.

EXERCISE XXV — Nouns of all Declensions and Classes

Study §§ 81; 82 a-c; 145. Use words on pp. 51, 56.

There is a house near by the river. A boy is going-up to the house. He is called Aemilius. He approaches the doorstep. On it (§ 119 *e*) he reads "Look-out-for the dog." Does he see the dog? Does it alarm him at all? There is a maiden near the entrance. She is a girl of nine years. Her-name-is Aemilia. She is Aemilius' sister. She calls him. She wishes her brother good-health. The brother hears his sister's voice. He comes to her. They talk. Then they run to the house.

General Truths — Present Tenses (*see pp. 52-4*)

With us (p. 31) the father is called the man-of-the-house. He rules the household. The house is a care to him. It is the father's (duty) to build a home, to provide all (things) of which there is need. It is the mother's (part) to look after the children. She is spoken-of-as a matron. Many things are a care to her.

The mother brings up her sons and daughters, makes bread, prepares food, keeps all (things) in order. Children obey their father, mother (and) elders; yield to them, bow to their will. It is necessary that children be obedient.

Actions Continued in the Past — The Imperfect (pp. 51-2)

Among (p. 31) the Romans the father had the power of life and death over the mother, children (and) slaves. They led away captured (men) into slavery. It was permitted slaves however to buy back their freedom by serving.

There was a river in Latium. It was called the Liris. It flowed into the sea. Not far from the Liris was a plantation. It was a possession of Paulus who-was-a Roman citizen. The river Fibrenus flowed into the Liris. There was a villa near the river. It was Paulus' villa. Paulus was a farmer. He had possessions at either side of the river Fibrenus. There was a bridge over the river Liris. The depth of the water was very-slight. Some used-to-cross by-fording, others by the bridge.

Paulus was sitting in the atrium. He was talking with a Greek. The Greek was called Chilo. He was inquiring of him what there was new. Chilo was telling him all (things). The master was praising Chilo, because he looked-after the cattle. He was giving him instructions. He was equalizing the tasks of the work. He was assigning each-one a share of toil. He was deciding where each should go, what he should do on the next day.

Acts Finished in the Past ¹ — Perfect Tenses

There was too little water for the cattle. The slaves cared-for them. They drove them to the river Fibrenus. One of the slaves ran-away. Brennus saw him escape. He did not tell

¹ Occurring on a single occasion and not spoken of as repeated.

this to Chilo, the overseer. The latter spoke with the master Paulus. He made mention of Brennus. He ought to have paid¹ the penalty. The master forbade Chilo to punish him. Chilo, to be sure, being-a-Greek did not seem (a man) of good feeling toward Gauls.

EXERCISE XXVI — Agreement of Adjectives (§§ 83-9; 109 c)

pauci, paucae, pauca, few² plerique, pleraeque, pleraque most³

m.	m.	m.	m.	f.	f.
liber bonus		agricolae boni		pleraeque puellae	
a good book		of a good farmer		most (of the) girls	

1. He is a good (§ 91) son. 2. He is a good boy. 3. He is a good farmer. 4. It is our horse. 5. It is my book. 6. It is another's book. 7. It is our town. 8. It is our daughter. 9. It is our friend. 10. Aemilia is a good girl. 11. He sees our horse. 12. He calls few friends. 13. They are good sons. 14. It is our father. 15. He is a powerful friend. 16. Toward our camp. 17. Of most horses. 18. Of few horses. 19. Of our father. 20. Of my horse. 21. Of another's horse. 22. Of a good farmer. 23. He is a bad boy.

N. s. m.	N. s. m.	G. s. m.	G. s. m.	N. pl. m.	N. pl. m.
Galba	amicus	Libri	veteris	Agricolae amici	sunt
Galba (who is)	friendly	of an old book		farmers are friendly	

1. What sort of horse is it? 2. It is a good horse. 3. It is my horse. 4. A beautiful (§ 91) horse. 5. Does he see (§ 145) the beautiful horse? 6. What-kind-of-a book does he bring (§ 212)? 7. A good book. 8. He brings an old book. 9. He saw (§ 192) my books. 10. He brings such a book as Mark's (is). 11. What-sort-of farmer is he? 12. Friendly. 13. What sort of town? 14. Such a town as Arpinum.³

¹ dare débuit.

² Place before their nouns.

³ Rewrite in the plural.

Write the following expressions in the Nominative. See § 42.

1. Old customs. 2. My friends. 3. Old trees. 4. Other's trees. 5. Old wounds. 6. My wounds. 7. Old wars.¹
8. Old wrongs (§ 96 1). 9. My wrongs. 10. Equal wrongs.
11. Equal dangers.² 12. Powerful races.³ 13. Very powerful tribes. 14. Great dangers.

NOTE. — Rewrite the above in the Nominative Singular, Genitive Singular, Genitive Plural, Accusative Singular, and Ablative.

EXERCISE XXVII — Comparison of Adjectives

Place the adjectives *tantus* and *quantus* before their nouns, the others after their nouns. Use words on pp. 38–9. Write each expression in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.

1. A wide river. 2. A broad field. 3. A shorter route.
4. A narrow way.⁴ 5. A broader field. 6. A short route.
7. A low hill. 8. A high mountain. 9. A high tree. 10. A short person.⁵
11. A longer route. 12. A shorter way.
13. A very long march. 14. A rather easy route. 15. Very great care (§ 96). 16. Enormous size. 17. So great height.

NOTE. — Rewrite Nos. 1 to 15 above in the plural.

EXERCISE XXVIII — Irregular Adjectives (§§ 40, 108–9, 120)

Write each in the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative cases.

1. The son alone. 2. The daughter alone. 3. All Gaul.
4. The whole camp. 5. Any town. 6. No island. 7. Which thing? 8. Neither horse. 9. Either girl. 10. Any men.
11. The other (man). 12. Others. 13. The other daughter.

NOTE. — Rewrite in the plural.

¹ bellum, -i, n. ² periculum, -i, n. ³ gēns, gentis, f. ⁴ via, -ae, f. ⁵ homō, hominis, m.

EXERCISE XXIX — Adjective Forms of Verbs

Study §§ 93–104. Write each in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.

1. A boy (who is) trying. 2. A maiden (who is) waiting.
3. (One who is) reading. 4. A crowd (that is) departing.
5. The sun (when) rising. 6. A (thing that is) extolling.
7. A slave fleeing. 8. (He) going. 9. A (thing) demanded.¹
10. (He when) ready. 11. (She though) terrified. 12. A (man who had been) taken.
13. A town (that was) fortified. 14. A legion (that was) best prepared.
15. A less impeded route. 16. A thing² heard. 17. (He) having delayed.
18. (She) having spoken. 19. A boy having followed. 20. A crowd going to follow.
21. A maiden (when) going to go out. 22. A judge (who was) going to grant.
23. A (thing that ought) to be granted. 24. A ship (that is) to be awaited.
25. A number to be divided. 26. A town (that ought) to be fortified.
27. A river (that ought) to be crossed (§ 215 a, c).

NOTE. — Rewrite in the plural.

EXERCISE XXX — Expressions of Purpose, Result, etc.

Write each sentence six different ways. § 159.

1. Envoys come to seek peace. 2. They send (a man) to call the boys.
3. They come to Rome to ask aid. 4. He sends envoys to seek auxiliaries.³
5. They send troops to devastate⁴ the fields. 6. Soldiers⁵ are called to defend⁶ the town.

Write each sentence one or two ways. §§ 149, 151.

1. They are not so brave as to try this. 2. No one is so brave that he would not be frightened.
3. They had done it to frighten him. 4. There are many that are easily frightened.
5. There is no one but is frightened occasionally.

¹ Neuter. ² res. § 81. ³ auxilia, -orum, n. ⁴ vastare. ⁵ milēs, militis. ⁶ defendere.

EXERCISE XXXI — The Indicative and Subjunctive

Review §§ 136-40; study §§ 137 c, 138 a-c, 147, 149, 156.

Present Tenses

He is going; they urge that he go. Who is he? I know who he is. They try; he recommends that they try. If he is away, he does not hear it. If he should be away, he would not hear it. He hears; they speak so, that he hears. He can not read the book. He would read, if he should be able.

Imperfect Tenses (§§ 171-2)

He was trying; they urged that he should try. Where was he? They knew where he was. If he was present,¹ he heard it. If he were present, he would hear it. He kept-hearing (it). It was said in-such-a-way that he heard it. He could not read. He would² read it, if he could.

Perfect Tenses

Where was he? They told Titus where he was. He heard (it); it was said in-such-a-way that he heard (it). If he was away, he could not hear it. If he should be away, he would not hear it. He would tell Mark, if he should be able.

Pluperfect and Imperfect

He had been away; he had not heard (it). If he had been present, he would have heard it. Where had they been? No one told Titus where they had been. He had been able to tell Mark. He had not been willing. He could have told³ Mark, if he had been willing. He did not tell us, because he was not willing. Although (§ 115 b) he had heard it, he would not tell. If we had seen you, we should have called you.

¹ Use a form of *adesse*; cf. § 185. ² Subjunctive, see § 186. ³ = *would have been able* (to tell).

EXERCISE XXXII — Variations of Expressions

Study the sections referred to with each group. Express in Latin as found in the text or reference given.

§§ 56, 6; 57-8; 74, 15; 224. Because they are so great a distance away 10, 8 and 17.¹ Therefore 15, 5. By reason of its very nature. On account of evenness 17, 5, 8. Suffer for lack of water. Suffer with thirst 21, 17. (And) for this reason; (and) on account of this fact 20, 8; 35, 10; 47, 18; 69, 17; 75, 9. For the same reason 49, 6. For my sake 57, 21. Why? 57, 4, 21; § 115 c.

§§ 56, 6; 74, 16. In shape, 3. In all respects, 17. In order, 28.

§§ 56, 6; 62 b; 71 c; 182. With its heat 21, 3. By the rays 7, 4. With its own light 9, 6. Of or by its own weight 18, 4. By other bodies' light 11, 9. With fruit 22, 5. With frost 22, 9. With clouds 22, 15. With ice 23, 9. With snow 23, 14. With citizenship 24, 6. On horses; on horseback 24, 10. By three names 25, 16. With masters 26, 9; with the eyes 30, 10. In hours; in days; in months; in years 31, 2. By the month and day 32, 3. With air 33, 14. In miles 38, 11. By fording; on bridges 39, 14, 15. By the width 40, 4. In the left hand 47, 9. By machinery 49, 20. By a rapid journey 50, 20.

§ 62 a. With them 16, 3. With horses 20, 19. With boys 24, 10. Along with them 26, 21. With our own measures 26, 24. With many 48, 15. With him 50, 16; 67, 11. With carts 51, 7. With her 55, 20; 58, 5. With the rest 58, 2; with the Greeks 58, 9; with this slave 58, 13; with Theodorus 58, 21. With his father and Crassus 67, 16; with his father as-he-returns 71, 16. With his young son 67, 8, 9.

§§ 56, 6; 96 b. In the right proportions 30, 8. With greater pains 47, 4. Slowly and with great care 48, 3. With great diffi-

¹ Numbers refer to pages and lines.

culty 49, 19. In fair shares 51, 23. Of a sudden 55, 6. With great noise 55, 9. According to what fashion dressed 57, 18. As quickly as possible 60, 3. With great danger 63, 3. According to his own notion 63, 17. With fitting words 65, 17. With a king's taste 67, 8. In a hoarse language 71, 8. In a louder voice 71, 11. With a great fuss made 72, 14. Without wrong doing 87, 20. In secret 91, 22. Without offense 92, 19. In a low voice 55, 21.

§§ 56, 2, 6; 62 *g*. (Some are of one color) others of another color 30, 9. Of the same length 35, 7. Of three hours 35, 18. To the depth of many thousand feet 39, 19. Of a smaller body; of shorter stature 40, 12. Of good feeling toward Gauls 52, 4. Of good mind toward him 55, 15. A girl of nine years 55, 19. Of enormous size 59, 12. Of any favor (in the eyes of his father at that time) 60, 16. Of good disposition toward him 65, 18. A boy of eleven years stood 70, 17. He would have appeared to us (a boy) of fifteen years. He was of so large limbs 70, 19. Was of great favor 76, 27.

§§ 56, 2; 72. More (of) heat 20, 3. Less (of) light 20, 6. Two thousand books 29, 13. One fourth of a day 31, 24. As much of trouble as 34, 16. More of trouble 36, 17. Length is estimated in miles 38, 16. One half (of) a pace 40, 14. What is there (of) remainder? Nothing (of) remainder 43, 16. What good or beautiful 45, 11. Something new 46, 7. Some business 46, 12. What-amount of a book 49, 18. What new 51, 17. What affair? 60, 10. No annoyance 61, 7. Any hindrance 62, 8. A large part of the public land 63, 11.

§§ 56, 6; 94-6. With light absent; (when) light (is) absent 30, 3. The sun (when) setting 35, 13. In counting days; when counting days 36, 9. And-upon-this being done; and (as soon as) this (is) done 43, 4. When reading-is-being-done 47, 9. During the night 6, 5; 14, 2. During Caesar and Bibulus consuls 57, 3. On the fourth day 31, 16. On these things having

been found out 59, 14. Upon this message being given 62, 11. Upon Aemilius requesting it 65, 16. With Caesar unwilling; (if) Caesar (is) unwilling 86, 5. And-with it removed 87, 5. Upon the Aeduans promising grain 89, 6.

§ 96 c. According to the custom; by the method 50, 2. According to the custom of Greeks 64, 18. By what method 31, 5. Of his own accord 64, 9. According to his own notion 63, 17. According to¹ his custom; according to her custom; according to their custom (§ 96 c).

§ 56, 4; 68 a, b. How much they differ 34, 21. Differ a great deal from ours 40, 9. Advance more or farther every-day 45, 6. Writes a great deal 50, 6. Pleases us little 51, 10. Not at all 57, 13. Do you understand at all? 57, 18. Are as far apart as the length of a man can occupy of space 59, 8. For the most part 69, 7.

Teaches them many (things) 34, 5. (We) are taught the most important tricks 43, 4. Are taught to read 45, 2. Asks me my name (§ 155). Ask the Aeduans (for) grain 90, 19.

§§ 5 j; 56, 6; 69. More than five miles 50, 21. Longer than a year 70, 13. More than five miles 90, 13. Was shorter than the one that we use 40, 11. They stepped shorter than we 40, 13. The Romans were of shorter stature than we (are).

§§ 5 e; 105-6. There is weight to all things. Each has its own weight 42, 2, 3. Each (thing) has its own color. Blue (belongs) to the sky. Gold has a yellow color. There are different-colored rays to light 30. There is a golden color to the fields 21. (There is) only one name to most Greeks 25. We have in mind 24. There are thirty days to November 31. There is no measure to space 33. For reading (persons) there is access 45. A name belonged to the boy Arm'nius 71.

¹ More than one way.

EXERCISE XXXIII—The Rendering of English Prepositions

Study the sections referred to with each group.

On. §§ 56-62; 74, 18. On the ground 19, 12. On horses; on foot 24, 10. On high mountains 23, 7. On the seventh day 32, 3. On no side 33, 10. On the book 47, 13. On the earth 3, 2; 42, 7. On itself 42, 12. On the upper side 70, 7. On inquiring 82, 6. On all Gaul 84, 6. On them 101, 10.

Over. §§ 56, 3, 6; 57-8. Over the fields 21, 5. (Over) the earth 23, 14. Over this thing 85, 10. (Boast) over this victory 83, 5. Over this river 86, 4. Above this number 29, 13.

To. §§ 60, 159. To-day 10, 11. To-morrow 10, 13. To air 18, 3. To the fields 20, 17; 21, 12. To Arpinum 24, 8. To school 25, 13. To it 26, 2. To Italy 26, 15. To each (thing) 30, 4. To these measures 32, 16. To all space 33, 7. To the depth 39, 19. To their body 40, 1. To establish peace 84, 16. To go out 84, 5. To any one 64, 20; 88, 5. Till the last day 31, 17.

For. §§ 56-60. For rest 12, 10. For the cattle 21, 9. For themselves. For winter 21, 11. For lack of water 21, 16. For each day 22, 7. For Rome 26, 10. For us 26, 21. For many years 26, 13. (For) great use. For reading the books 34, 8. For width 41, 8. For example 43, 11. For writing 49, 10. For-what-place 51, 24; cf. 119 *d*. For my sake 57, 21. As for Paulus (§ 57). For him 64, 11. For his age 70, 19.

About. §§ 57-8. About autumn; about their hearth 22, 1, 17. About this matter 34, 14. About doubling 29, 1. At about the twelfth hour 64, 21. About ten (§ 57).

Of. §§ 56, 62 *g*, 66 *c*. Of which 14, 9; 19, 9. (Cleared) of leaves 22, 12. (Treats) of numbers 43, 2. Of measuring; of measuring circles 41, 11, 15. Of one foot 39, 6. Of two hundred feet 48, 21. Of a white color 30, 13. (Full) of air 33, 14.

VOCABULARY

Where the uses or peculiarities of words are more important than the mere meaning, reference is made to sections of the appendix where they are treated. Certain proper names are purposely omitted in order to allow the student to master them by observation as directed in §§ 45, 55c. The nominative case of such nouns should be used to render them in English, unless they are found in an anglicized form in headlines or in the appendix.

Some words not found in the text are given to illustrate the form or meaning of others.

The following abbreviations are used: Ab., Abl. *ablative*; Ac., Acc. *accusative*; adj. *adjective*; App. *appendix*; B. G. *Gallic War*; cf. *compare*; dir. *direct*; Eng. *English*; f., fem. *feminine*; Futp. *future perfect*; Imp. *imperfect*; Imv. *imperative*; Ind. *indicative*; indir. *indirect*; m., mas. *masculine*; n., neu. *neuter*; o., obj. *object*; Part. *participle*; P. P. *perfect participle*; Plup. *pluperfect*; sing. *singular*; Sub. *subjunctive*; s., subj. *subject*; w. *with*.

For explanation of other signs see § 230, page 280.

ā, ab, abs 58; 62d; 220, 1
 ab-do, -dere, -didī, -ditus, in 4;
 219, 2
 ab-dūcō, ab-dūcere, ab-dūxī, ab-
 ductus *lead away*
 ab-eo, ab-ire, -iī, -itus *go away*
 ab-horreō, ab-horrēre, ab-horruī
shrink from
 abs-tineō, abs-tinēre, abs-tinuī,
 -tentus 220, 1
 ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, ā-futūrus
 185, ā or ab 6; absēns 94b
 ac 66, 69
 ac-oōdō, ac-cēdere, ac-cessī, -ces-
 sus *ap-proach, come near, be*
added, ad 4; 220, 2; 221b
 ac-celero, ac-celerāre *hasten*
 ac-cido, ac-cidere, -cidī 3; 95
 ac-cipiō, ac-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus
receive, accept, learn

ac-clivis, -e *upward sloping*
 ac-commodo, ac-commodāre *ad-*
just
 ac-currō, -currere, -currī, -cursus
run to or up to ad 4
 ac-cūso, ac-cusāre 4; 74, 4
 ācer, ācris, ācre *sharp, active,*
spirited; acriter sharply;
acerbus, -a, -um bitter; aciēs,
aciēi f. edge; line (of battle)
 ad (w. Acc.) §§ 57, 220, 2
 ad-do, ad-dere, -didī, -ditus *put*
beside, give to, add 3p, 4t
 ad-dūco, ad-ducere, -dūxī, -duc-
 tus *lead on, bring to, induce*
 ad-eo, ad-ire, -iī, -itus *go to,*
get at; aditus, -ūs m. a going
to, an approach, access
 ad-hibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibi-
 tus *have at hand or present*

ad-hūc *up to this* 119d

ad-mīror, -mīrārī, —, -mīrātus
wonder at 4

adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvī,
adultus *grow up*; adulēscēns,
-entis *young (man)*

ad-orior, ad-orirī, —, ad-ortus
rise up against, attack

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, ad-
futūrus *be present, be at
hand*

adventus, -ūs m. *a coming to*

ad-vertō, -vertere, -verti, versus
turn toward; *animum adver-*
tere or animadvertere turn
attention to, notice 4; *adversus*
turned towards; *facing, op-*
posed, unfavorable 3; *adversus*
w. Acc. against

aedēs, -is f. *building*; *temple*;
(pl.) *house*; aedi-fico, -āre
build a house, build; aedi-
ficiūm -ī n. *building*

aeger, -gra, -grum *sick*; aegre
with difficulty; *hardly*.

aequus, -a, -um *level, even, equal*;
fair, kindly; *aequum est it is*
fair; *aequē (ac) equally, as*
well (as); *aequitās aequi-*
tātis f. 43; *aequor, -oris n.* 41;
aequāre equal

aes, aeris n. *copper, bronze*;
money; *aes alienum (another's*
money), debt

aestās, aestātis f. *summer*

aestimō, -āre 73; *ex-īstimare*
reason out, think, judge

aetās, -ātis f. *age, time of life*

aethēr, -is m. 51, *ether, a very*
light, colorless and attenuated
substance thought to pervade

all other substances and all
space so far as known.

af-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tulī, al-
lātus *bring to, carry to*

af-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus
do to, affect, visit with

affinitās, -ātis f. *relationship (by*
marriage), affinity

ager, agri 41; agri-cola, -ae m.
(landsman) *farmer, peasant*

ag-gredior, ag-gredī, —, ag-
gressus 219, 2; 220, 2

agmen, -minis n. *drove, army on*
march

ago, agere, ēgī, āctus 97–8; 102–
4; 197; *drive, carry on, do, act,*
discuss, treat; *grātiās agere*
render thanks; *agito, agitāre*
keep driving, pursue, hound;
ad-igere drive to, hurl

albus, -a, -um *dead white* 223

aliquis (aliquī), aliqua, aliquid
(aliquid) *some, any p.* 182

aliquot *some, several*; *aliquotiēns*
several times 64; 120g

alius, -a, -um 40, 65, 103, 117;
alius atque or ac other than;
aliter 69; *aliās p.* 183; *aliō*
p. 182; *alibi elsewhere*; *ali-*
unde p. 183; *aliēnus, -a,*
-um 109c; *strange, foreign, un-*
favorable; *aes aliēnum n.*
debt

alo, alere, aluī, alitus or altus
feed, support, raise; *altus, -a,*
-um 92; *altum n. high sea, deep*
(sea); *altē highly, deeply*;
altitudo, -dinis f. 62g, 92

alter, altera, alterum 40, 65, 109,
120

ambo, -ae, -ō 55a note

ā-mittō, a-mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sus *let go away, lose; send away*
amo, amāre 97, 107; **amor,**
-ōris m. *love*; **amicus, -a, -um**
91; **amicē** *in a friendly way*;
amicitia, -ae f. 91

am-plector, am-plectī, —, am-
plexus *fold or wrap around,*
embrace, surround; **am-plexus,**
-ūs m. *embrace*

amplus, -a, -um *large, spacious*;
splendid; **amplius** *more* (of
distance or number); **amplē**
largely, on a large scale

an see **utrum** 71

an-ceps, -cipitis *two-headed*;
double, doubtful

angustus, -a, -um 92; **angus-**
tiae, -ārum 92; *defile, narrows*

animus, -ī *spirit, feeling, mind*;
courage, high spirits; **animad-**
vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-
gus *turn the mind to*; *notice,*
observe, attend to, punish in 4

annus, -ī 74, 17; **annuus, -a,**
-um *for-a-year, yearly, annual*
ante 57; **ante . . . quam** 69;
ant-eā 69; **antiquus, -a, -um**
ancient, old time, former

ante-ponō, ante-pōnere, -posuī,
-positus *put ahead of* 3 and 4

a-periō, a-perire, a-peruī, a-per-
tus (*get from*) *uncover, open*;
apertus, -a, -um *open, un-*
covered

ap-pello, ap-pellāre *call (to),*
call upon, appeal to

ap-petō, -petere, -petivī, -petitus
seek for

ap-propinquo, -propinquāre *draw*
near to, approach

Aprilis, -e of April 109c
apud 57

aqua, -ae f. *water*

Arar 79

ara, -ae, f. altar

arbitror, arbitrārī, —, arbitrātus
serve as judge; consider 181;
arbitr-ium, -ī n. *notion, judg-*
ment

arbor, arboris f. *tree*

arcessō, arcessere, -ivī, -itus
summon, invite, send for

ardeo, ārdere, ārsī, ārsus *blaze*;
glow; **ardor, -ōris** m. *a burning*

areō, ārere *dry up, wither*; **ari-**
dus, -a, -um *dry* 223

arma, -ōrum n. 44, 60; **armo,**
armāre *arm, equip*

aro, arāre *plow, till*

ar-ripiō, ar-ripere, -ripuī, -reptus
seize upon, snatch 3p, 4t

ars, artis f. *skill, art, trick*

a-scendō, a-scendere, -scendi,
-scēnsus 219, 2; 220, 2;
ascēnsus, -us m. *ascent*

a-sciscō, a-sciscere, -scivī, -scītus
take to, adopt 3 and 4

asper, aspera, asperum *rough,*
harsh, bitter, rugged

as-sentiō, as-sentire, -sēnsī,
-sēnsus *agree (to), assent*

at *but, but yet* cf. 66

āter, ātra, ātrum (*dull*) *black,*
dark.

atque or **ac** 66, 69; **simul atque**
as soon as 224

ātrium, -ī m. *reception room,*
atrium, a main hall of a Roman
house

at-tingō, at-tingere, -tigi, -tāctus
219, 3 *ad + tangō*

- at-tribuō, at-tribuere, -tribui, -tributus assign to 220, 2
- auctor, -ōris m. originator, producer, author; auctoritās, -ātis authority, power, influence
- audio, audēre, —, ausus 94b; 100; audāx, audāx, audax Gen. audācis 85; audacter 91; audacia, -ae boldness, daring, recklessness
- audio, audire 98, 122, 136, 207
- au-ferō, au-ferre, abs-tulī, ab-lātus 220, 1; 180-1; cf. 136, 142
- augeo, augēre, auxī, auctus increase
- aurum, -ī m. money, gold
- aut 66a, b
- autem (never stands first in a sentence) moreover, but, however
- auxilium, -ī support, assistance; pl. auxiliaries (augeō)
- a-verto, a-vertere, -vertī, -versus 220, 1; avert; āversus, -a, um, unfriendly, hostile
- avus, -ī m. grand-father; avunculus, -ī maternal uncle
- bellum, -ī m. war; bello, bellare (make) war; bellicosus, -a, -um warlike
- bene 69; bene-ficium, -ī service, kindness; benīgnus, -a, -um kindly, friendly
- bis 67; binī, -ae, -a 120; bī-duum, -ī n. 68; bi-ennium, -ī n. 68 (annus)
- bonus, -a, -um 64, 70, 91; melior, -ius 91; optimus, -a, -um 91
- bracchium, -ī n. fore-arm, arm
- brevis, -e 88, 92; brevitas, -ātis f. 92; breviter shortly
- cado, cadere, cecidi, casus fall; be slain; casus, -ūs m. fall, chance, accident, case
- caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesus cause to fall, fell, cut, kill, slay; caedes, -is f. killing; cf. nubes 79c
- caelum -ī n. air; sky
- campus, -ī m. plain, field
- candeo, candere be white, glow; candidus, -a, -um shining, white; candor, -oris m. whiteness; incendere set on fire
- canis, -is m. dog
- cantus, -ūs m. singing
- capio, capere, cepī, captus 97, 98, 102, 104, 127, 136, 220, 5; captus, -ūs m. a taking, idea
- caput, capitis n. 82; anceps, ancipitis two-headed
- carcer, -is m. prison
- carrus, -ī m. 149f
- cārus, -a, -um dear
- casa, -ae hut
- castra 62f, 66b; castellum, -ī n. little camp, fort, redoubt
- causa, -ae f. cause, reason 59; case; ac-cūsare bring case against, accuse
- caveo, cavere, cāvī, cautus take care, be cautious — (of or that) 4 or nē w. Sub.
- cedo, cēdere, cessī, cessus move, step, go away, yield, retreat 97
- celer, -is, -e 74, 1; celeritās, -atis f. swiftness, rapidity; celeriter quickly

- centum 120; p. 29; centurio, -ōnis m. commander (of hundred), *centurion*
 cerno, cernere, crevī, cretus *separate, distinguish, see*
 certus, -a, -um *certain, sure*; certidrem facere 155a; p. 46
 cervus, -ī m. *stag, buck*
 ceterus, -a, -um *other, the rest*
 cibus, -ī m. *food*; cibāria, -ōrum n. *food stuffs, (ground) meal*
 cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cinctus 181b; p. 1
 circu-eo, circu-ire 220, 3; circuitus, -us *a going around, circuit, detour*; circus, -ī m. *circle, ring*; circus, *games*; circum 57, 220, 3; circiter 57; circinus, -ī m. 26, *compasses*
 circum-do, -dare, -dedī, -datus 3 and 4 or 4 and 6; 220, 3
 circum-fundo, -fundere, -fudī, -fūsus *pour around*
 circum-venio, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus *come around, surround* 4
 cis or citrā 57; ceterior, -oris *on this side, hither, nearer*
 cīvis, -is m. *citizen*; cīvītās, -tātis f. *citizenship; state*
 clamō, clamāre *shout*; clamor, -ōris m. *outcry, shout*
 clārus, -a, -um *clear, bright*
 Claudius, -a, -um *Claudian, of the Claudian family*
 coepi, coepisse, coeptus 123
 co-erceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus *shut together; restrain, check*
 cognōmen, -inis n. *surname, name*
 co-gnōscō, co-gnōscere, co-gnōvī, co-gnitus *become thoroughly acquainted, learn*; Perf. know 4
 cōgo, cōgere, coēgī, coactus 98, 103, 121, 219, 4; cogitō, -āre *think*
 cohors, cohortis f. *cohort*
 co-hortor, -hortārī 147e
 collega, -ae m. *associate in office*
 col-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus *gather*
 collis, -is m. *hill*
 col-loco, -locāre *place, arrange*; nuptum collocāre *send to marry*
 col-loquor, -loquī, —, -locutus 220, 4; colloquium, -ī n. *interview*
 collum, -ī n. *neck*
 colo, colere, colui, cultus *till, cultivate, cherish, worship*; incolere *live in*
 comb-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustus 220, 4
 com-memōrō, com-memorāre *talk of, call to one's attention*
 com-meo, com-meāre (ad) *go back and forth (to) visit, go to*; commeatus, -us m. *supplies; trip*
 com-mittō, com-mittere, -mīsī, -missus *join together, do, allow* 3p, 4t or ut w. Sub.
 com-moveō, com-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus *startle, alarm* 98
 communis, -e *common, general*
 commūtatiō, -ōnis f. *a change*
 com-paro, com-parāre 220, 4
 com-periō, com-perire, com-perī, com-pertus *find out, learn*
 com-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus *fill completely, fill up*
 com-plūrēs, -plūrium *several*

con-cēdō, con-cēdere, con-cessi,
con-cessus 102, 104
con-cido, con-cidere, -cidi *fall
flat, collapse*
con-cidō, con-cidere, con-cidi,
-ciscus *cut down or to pieces*
concilium, -i n. *meeting, council;*
conciliāre *win (over), get by
asking*
con-diciō, -ōnis f. *terms*
con-dōnō, -āre *give up, for-give,
pardon*
con-dūcō, con-ducere, -duxi,
-ductus *bring together; hire*
cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, -tulī, -lātus
82, 104, 155; sē conferre *take
self*
cōnfestim *promptly, with haste*
cōn-ficiō, cōn-ficere, cōn-fēci,
-fectus 98, 102, 219, 3; 220, 4
con-fido, con-fidere, —, fisis
trust firmly, rely on 3 or 6
con-firmo, -firmāre *make firm,
strengthen; assure, encourage*
cōn-fligō, -fligere, -flixi, -flictus
dash together, fight, struggle
con-gredior, -gredi, —, gressus
come together, meet cum 6
con-iciō, con-icere, con-iēcī, con-
iectus *hurl, throw at in 4*
con-iungō, con-iungere, con-
iūnxī, -iūnctus *join together,
unite*
coniūnx, -ugis *consort, spouse,
husband or wife*
con-iuro, -iurāre *swear together;*
coniūratio, -onis f. *conspiracy*
conor, cōnārī 97, 100, 102, 122,
127, 191; conatus, -us m.
157
cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um *of same*

*blood; kindred; pl. mas. kins-
men*
cōn-sciscō, con-sciscere, -scivī,
-scitus; sibi mortem conscis-
cere *take or bring death on self*
cōn-scribō, cōn-scribere, -scripsi,
-scriptus 226; patrēs con-
scripti *enrolled fathers, senators*
cōn-sentiō, cōn-sentire, cōn-
sēnsī, con-sensus 156 cum 6
con-sequor, con-sequi, —, con-
secutus *follow up, overtake,
attain*
con-servo, con-servāre *preserve,
put away, save (for 3 or in
4)*
cōn-sīdo, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus
settle, take position, encamp
cōnsilium, -i n. 77; counsel,
advice, wisdom
cōn-sistō, cōn-sistere, cōn-stiti
take a position; consist; halt
cōn-spiciō, cōn-spicere, cōn-
spexi, -spectus *catch sight of,
see; conspectus, -us m. view,
sight; conspiciārī espy, catch
sight of*
cōn-stituō, cōn-stituere, -stitui,
-stitutus *put together, establish,
build, set up, station; decide*
con-sto, con-stāre, -stiti *stand
with, be consistent, agree, be
complete, consist; constat it is
established, known, or certain;
constanter consistently, uni-
formly*
cōn-suēscō, cōn-suēscere, cōn-
suevi, -suetus *become accus-
tomed; consuevisse or cōn-
suēsse be accustomed; con-
suetudō, -inis f. 146*

- consul**, -is m. 95-6; **consulâris**, -e *consular*; . *exconsul*; **consulatus**, -us *consulship*; **consultum**, -i *decree*; **con-sulo**, -sulere, -sului, -sultum (*take*) *counsel*, ask 4p, 6t
- con-sumo**, -sumere, -sumpsî, -sumptus *use up*
- con-tendo**, -tendere, -tendî, -tentum *stretch with, struggle with, strain, struggle to, make haste* **Inf. o**; *insist-on* 4. See 154
- con-tineō**, -tinēre, -tinuî, -tentus 62f, 63, 97, 98, 154, 219, 3; (terra) **continens**, -ntis f. *mainland*
- contrâ** prep. with acc. *against*; **contrarius**, -a, -um *opposite*
- contumelia**, -ae f. 107
- con-venio**, -venire, -venî, -ventus *come together, meet, assemble*; *convenit* it is meet, *fitting*, or *agreed* **Inf. s**; **con-ventus**, -ūs m. *meeting, conference*; *court*
- con-voco**, -vocâre *call together*
- côpia**, -ae f. *supply, abundance, opportunity*; pl. *forces, troops; supplies, resources*; **copiosus**, -a, -um *well supplied*
- cornu**, -us *horn*; *wing* (of army) 81
- corpus**, corporis n. *body*
- cos.** = **cōsulibus**
- cotidie** *every day*: **cotidiânus**, -a, -um *daily, ordinary*
- crassus**, -a, -um *thick*; **crassitudō**, -inis f. *thickness*
- crēber**, **crebra**, **crebrum** *thick, close, frequent*
- credō**, **credere**, **crēdidî**, -crēdi-
tus *believe, trust* 3 or 3p, 4t; 219, 2
- creo**, **creare**, 223; **crescere**, **crevi**, **cretus** 223
- cruciâtus**, -us m. *torture, torment*
- crudelis**, -is, -e *cruel*; **crudelitâs**, -atis 94b *crudeliter cruelly*
- cuius** 109b; **cui** 110; **-que** 111
- cultus**, -us m. *civilization*; **looks**
- cum** 58, 220, 4; 221b
- cum** 115b, c; 119a, b; 224
- cuneus**, -i m. *wedge*
- cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupivî**, **cupitus** *long for, desire* 4; 4 **Inf.**; 162;
- cupidus**, -a, -um *desirous* 2;
- cupiditâs**, -âtis *desire, eagerness* 2
- cur** 141b
- cura**, -ae f. 63; **curâre** 158
- currō**, **currere**, **cucurri**, **cursus** *run*; *ac-currere* *run up to*;
- cursus**, -ūs m. *a running*;
- run, course*
- custos**, -odis 43, 78; **cūstodia**, -ae f. *protection, custody*; **cus-todire** *guard*
- damno**, **damnâre** *declare guilty, condemn*
- de** 58, 220, 5; 221b
- dē-beō**, **dē-bēre**, **dē-buî**, **dē-bitus** **Inf. o.** 121, 219, 4
- decem** p. 29; **dēnî**, -ae, -a *ten* each 120; **deciēns** p. 29;
- decimus**, -a, -um 120
- dē-cernō**, -cernere, -crēvî, -crētus *determine, decide, decree*
- dē-cipiō**, **dē-cipere**, **dē-cēpî**, **dē-ceptus** 220, 5
- de-do**, **de-dere**, -didî, -ditus *lay down, give up, surrender*; **sē**

dedere *devote*; deditiō, -ōnis
f. a giving up, surrender
 de-ducō, de-dūcere, -duxī, duc-
 tus *lead away, conduct, take*
 dē-ferō, dē-ferre, dē-tulī, -lātus
bear away, carry away, report
 dē-ficiō, dē-ficere, dē-fēcī, -fectus
 220, 5; *revolt ā, ab 6*
 dē-iciō, dē-icere, -iēcī, -iectus
*throw or cast down; disap-
 point; deiectus, -us m. down
 pitch, slope*
 de-inde *thereupon, then* 120g
 dēliberō, -āre *think over*
 dē-ligō, dē-ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus
select; delectus, -us m. levy
 dē-minuō, -minuere, -minuī,
 -minutus *lessen, diminish*
 demum or denique 66
 dēnī, -ae, -a *ten each* 120
 de-nuntiō, -āre *send word to*
 de-populō *see populō*
 dē-serō, dē-serere, -seruī, -ser-
 tus *give up, abandon, desert*
 de-sidero, -āre *long for, miss;*
desiderium, -ī n. desire, longing
 de-sisto, de-sistere, -stitī *desist*
from, stop, cease 6 or Inf.; 157
 despero, desperāre (de) *despair*
(of); 221b
 dē-spiciō, dē-spicere, dē-spexī,
 de-spectus 220, 5
 dē-stituō, dē-stituere, dē-stituī,
 de-stitutus *leave unsupported,*
desert
 de-sum, de-esse, de-fui 185
 dē-terreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -terri-
 tus 153; 155b
 dē-trahō, dē-trahere, dē-trāxī,
 -tractus *draw off, take away,*
rob

dē-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus
take or carry along
 dexter, -tra, -trum *right; dextra,*
-ae f. right hand; ā dextra on
the right
 diciō, -ōnis *f. sway*
 dico, dicere, dixī, dictus *tell, say,*
speak, speak of as, call (see
103; 146a); causam dicere
plead a case; dictiō, -onis f.
the pleading
 dies, dieī *m. or f. day* 81
 dif-ferō, dif-ferre, dis-tulī, dī-
 lātus 220, 5; *cf. 212*
 dif-ficilis, -is, -e 92, 157e; dif-
 ficiltās, -ātis *f. 92*
 dif-fugio, -fugere, -fugī *flee away*
 dī-ligō, dī-ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus
pick out; cherish; dī-ligens 97
careful; diligentia, -ae f. 74,
15; dilectus, -a, -um 98 loved
 dīmidius, -a, -um 220, 5; dī-
 midium, -ī
 dī-mittō, dī-mittere, dī-misi, dī-
 missus *let go away, dismiss*
 dis-cēdō, dis-cēdere, dis-cessī,
 dis-cessus 97; *discessus, -ūs*
m. departure, flight
 disco, discere, didici *learn; dis-*
ciplīna, -ae f. training; learn-
ing; discipulus, -ī m. learner,
pupil
 dis-pōnō, dis-pōnere, dis-posuī,
 dis-positus 220, 5
 dis-simulo, -simulāre *pretend not*
dis-tineo, dis-tinere keep apart
diu 69, 119b
 diversus, -a, -um *turned apart,*
different, diverse
 dives, -itis *rich; divitiae, -arum*
riches, wealth

dīvido, dividere, -vīsi, -vīsus 98, 104

do, dare, dedī, datus 97-8 ; 102, 104, 106e, 128, 184 ; *in fugam dare put to flight; operam dare pay attention; give effort*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach 4p 4t ; *explain*

doleo, dolēre, doluī feel pain or grief; suffer; dolor, -ōris pain

dolus, -ī device, trickery

domus, -ūs f. 81 ; **domī** 61 ; **domum** homeward; **domō** 60 ; **dominus, -ī** 146 ; **domina, -ae** mistress, lady; **domicilium, -ī** n. dwelling, abode; 181b

dono, dōnāre 230 3p 4t or 4p 6t ; **dōnum, -ī** n. gift, present

dubius, -a, -um doubtful; **nōn dubium est quā** 153 ; **dubitāre** 146b

ducenti, -ae, -a 120 or p. 29

duco, dūcere, dūxi, ductus lead, draw (conclusion), deem, consider, hold; *in mātrimonium or uxōrem ducere marry; ductus, -us leading* cf. 157

dum 147d

duo 120 ; **duodecim** 120

duplex, -icis 120f ; **duplicāre** double

dux, ducis leader, guide, general

ē, ex 58

ea 115

eā p. 183

ec —! ec-quis? -qua? -quid? 145a

e-do, ē-dere, -didī, -ditus 220, 6 ;

editus, -a, -um elevated, raised

e-doceo, e-docēre show exactly

edūco, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus 221b

ef-ferō, ef-ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātus let out, take out, get out (news)

ef-ficio, ef-ficere, -fecī, -fectus 220, 6 ; *work out, bring about, 4 or ut w. Sub.*

ef-fugio, ef-fugere, -fugī flee (away), escape 4

ego I, **mei, mihi, mē, mē-cum** 116a

e-gredior, e-gredī, —, e-gressus 97, 100, 102

eius, eiusdem 109b

e-ligo, -ligere, -legī, -lēctus 218

e-loquor, e-loquī, —, e-locutus speak out

ē-mittō, ē-mittere, ē-misī, ē-misus send out or up, let go out

emo, emere, ēmi, ēmptus 73

e-nārrō, -āre tell off, recite, recount

enim (never stands first) 66

e-nūntio, e-nuntiāre 154, 220, 6

eo, ire, īi or īvī, itum 97-8, 102-4, 137, 140, 212

eō 74, 19 ; **eō** 119d or p. 182 ;

eodem 112b ; 119d or p. 182 ;

eōrum, eorundem 109b

epistula, -ae f. formal letter

equus, -ī 62, 74, 12 ; **eques, -itis** m. 43, 159 ; **equester, -tris, -tre** of a horseman, equestrian ;

equitāre ride, drill (on horse) ;

equitatus, -ūs m. cavalry

ē-ripiō, ē-ripere, -ripuī, -reptus 230g, 4p ; **ē, ex** 6 rescue

erro, errare go astray, wander, err ; **error, -ōris** m. wandering, mistake

ē-rumpō, ē-rumpere, ē-rūpī,
e-ruptus break out, burst forth,
dash out; eruptiō, -ōnis f. a
dash

et 66

etiam (et + iam) *also, even*

et-sī w. Ind. 156 ; 224

ē-veniō, ē-venire, ē-vēnī, ē-ven-
tus come out: eventus, -us m.
outcome

e-vocō, e-vocāre *call out, summon*

ex, ē 58, 220, 6 ; 221b

ex-audio, ex-audire *overhear*

ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus
go out, leave

ex-cipiō, ex-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus
take out, take up; except, meet

ex-eo, -ire, -iī, -itus 221 *go out;*
exitium, -ī n. ruin, overthrow

ex-erceō, ex-ercēre, ex-ercuī, ex-
ercitus keep in motion, train,
exercise, carry on; exercitus,
-ūs m. training, army; exerci-
tāre drill; exercitatiō, -ōnis f.
training

ex-igō, ex-igere, ex-ēgī, ex-actus
drive out, exhaust, finish, take
from by force

ex-istimo, -āre 219, 1 ; 4 Inf. ;
existimatiō, -ōnis f. opinion

ex-pedio, ex-pedire 98 -i-; 220, 6

ex-pellō, ex-pellere, ex-pulī, ex-
pulsus drive out, expel

ex-ploro, ascertain; explōrātus
assured; explorator, -ōris m.
 62e

ex-pōnō, ex-pōnere, -posuī, -posi-
tus set forth, explain

ex-pūgno, -pūgnāre *take by storm,*
storm; expugnatiō, -ōnis cap-
ture

ex-quirō, ex-quirere, -quisivī
 (-iī), *-quisitus* 219, 1

ex-sequor, ex-sequi, —, ex-
secutus 220, 6

ex-silio, ex-silire *leap up or forth;*
exsilium, -ī n. exile

ex-spectō, -spectāre 104-6d,
 141

extrā w. acc. *outside of; exteri*
those outside, foreign; exterior
outer; extrēmus outermost, end
of

facio, facere, fecī, factus *do,*
make, arrange, cause 148-9,
bring about; facinus, -oris n.
evil deed, crime; facilis, -e 92 ;
facile 69, 92 ; *facilitās, -ātis*
f. ease; factiō, -ōnis f. party;
facultās -tātis 92

fallo, fallere, fefellī, falsus *de-*
ceive; falsus, -a, -um deceptive
fāma, -ae *f. report, rumor; fame*
famēs, -is *f. abl. fame* 55c

-familiās (old Gen.) = *familiae*
fās right, fate; fātum, -ī n. fate
fauces, -ium *f. jaws; throat*
faveo, favere, fāvī, fautus *favor* 3
fēmina, -ae *woman; feminine,*
-a, -um of a woman, woman's
 cf. 109c

ferē *almost, about*

fero, ferre, tulī, lātus 212, 104,
 155b ; *bear, carry, endure;*
bear news, declare; ferāx,
-ācis or fertilis, -e bearing;
productive

ferrum, -ī *iron; weapon; fer-*
reus, -a, -um of iron cf. 109c

ferus, -a, -um *wild; fera (bēstia)*
wild animal

fido, fidere, —, fesus confide,
trust 3 ; rely 6 ; **fidēs, -eī** 47 ;
protection ; **fidus, -a, -um**
faithful

figura, -ae f. shape, form

filia, -ae ; daughter ; **-us, -ī** son

finis, -is 44, 47 ; **finire** end, ter-
minate ; **finitimus, -a, -um**
bordering 3 ; **finitimī, -ōrum**
neighbors

fio, fieri, —, factus 212 become,
be done, happen

firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm,
solid ; steadfast ; **firmiter**
firmly

flagito, -āre 147e, 230

flāvus, -a, -um yellow

fleo, flere, flevi, flētus weep

flo, flāre, flāvi, flātus blow

flos, flōris m. 42 ; **flōrere** 223

fluō, fluere, flui, fluxus flow ; **In-**
fluere flow in ; **flūmen** 74, 1 ;
78

focus, -ī m. hearth

fodio, fodere, fōdi, fossus 162
(via) **fossa, -ae** f. ditch

folium, -ī n. leaf, page

fore 183 = **futurus esse**

foris Abl. out of doors

fors (fortis) f. chance ; **forte** by
chance, perchance ; **fortasse,**
forsitan (for **fors sit an**), per-
haps, perchance

fortis, -e 91, 149 ; **fortiter** 91 ;
fortitūdō, -inis f. bravery,
strength

forum, -ī market or public place

fossa, -ae f. see **fodiō**

frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctus
break, shatter ; **fragor, -ōris** m.
breaking, noise, din

frāter, frātris brother ; **fraternus,**
-a, -um, brotherly cf. 109c

frētus, -a, -um leaning, relying 6

frōns, frontis f. forehead ; **front**

frumentum, -ī 74, 17 ; **frumen-**
tari procure grain, forage ;
frūmentārius, -a, -um of grain
109c

fuga, -ae f. 60 ; **in fugam dare** or
fugāre p. 15 put to flight ;
fugio, fugere, fugi, fugiturus 4,
97

fuit 183

furō, furere rave

gaudeo, gaudēre, —, gāvisus
rejoice ; **gaudium, -ī** n. joy

gēns, gentis f. race, family, clan,
tribe ; **genus, generis** n. birth,
origin, lineage ; **sort, kind ;**
generātīm by tribes

gero, gerere, gessi, gestus bear,
carry ; wear, carry on, accom-
plish, manage, do ; **rem gerere**
do business ; **bellum gerere**
make or wage war 226 or p. 238

gladius, -ī 62

glōria, -ae f. fame, pride ; liking,
admiration ; **glōriārī** glory in,
take pride, boast 6

gradior, gradi, —, gressus step,
walk, move ; **gradus, -us** a step,
grade, rank pl. steps, stair

Graecus, -a, -um Greek ;
Graecus, -ī a Greek ; **graecē**
69 ; **Graecia, -ae** Greece

grātus, -a, -um pleasant, agree-
able, acceptable ; **grātum, -ī** a
thing pleasing, a favor ; **grātia,**
-ae 59, 62g ; **grātiām habere**
be grateful ; **grātiās agere**

return thanks; grātiā referre
return a favor; gratulārī con-
gratulate

gravis, -e *heavy, severe, serious,*
dignified; graviter severely,
seriously; gravitās, -ātis f.
weight; dignity

habeo, habere, habui, habitus 58,
 102, 104, 222c; **habitāre** 222c
haereo, -ēre, haesi, haesus *stick*
harēna, -ae f. *dry soil; sand,*
arena.

hibernus, -a, -um *of winter;*
(castra) hiberna winter camp
cf. 109c

hic, haec, hoc 117b, 119c; **hic**
 . . . **hic**; *this . . . that; the*
one . . . the other; hic . . .
ille the latter . . . the former;
hic 119e; **hinc** 119f; **hac**
 119g; **hoc** 154; **hodie** *this*
day, to-day; huc 119d; **ad-**
huc *up to this, thus far*

hiems, hiemis f. *winter; initā*
hieme at the beginning of
winter; media hiems mid-
winter; extrema hiems last
of winter; summa hiems the
depth of, dead of winter; hie-
māre pass the winter

hodie *see hic; hodiernus, -a,*
-um to-day's, of to-day cf. 109c.

homo, hominis *human being, man*
honōs *or honor, honōris m.* *office,*
honor; honestus, -a, -um hon-
orable; honestare, honor

hora, -ae f. *hour*

hortor, -ārī, —, hortātus 147c.

hortus, -i, m. *garden*

horum, 109b

hostis, -is 63; *stranger, for-*
eigner, enemy (public) as opp.
to inimicus (private) enemy

huius 109b

humanus, -a, -um *of man, hu-*
man 109c; cultured, refined;
humanitās, -ātis f. *refinement,*
culture

humus, humi m. *ground; humi*
(Loc.) on the ground; humilis,
-e 92

iaceo, iacēre, iacui *lie (dead)*

iacio, iacere, ieci, iactus *throw,*
hurl; iactāre 222c; conicio,
conicere, coniēcī, coniectus
throw (all together), thrust

iam *now, soon, already; at that*
time, at this time; iam diu
long since; iam . . . iam at
one time . . . at another; non
iam no longer

ibi p. 183

idem, eadem, idem 47; **eōdem**
 p. 182; **ibīdem** p. 183; **in-**
didem p. 183; **eadem** p. 183;
item 119b

id, quod; ea, quae 115

idoneus, -a, -um *suitable 3 or*
ad 4

Idus, -uum f. *Ides; see page 36*
igitur 66

ignis, -is m. *fire*

ille, illa, illud 109b, 118b (after
 its noun) *that well-known or*
famous; ille . . . hic the one
. . . the other, the former . . .
the latter; illō, illuc 119d;
illic 119e; **illinc** 119f; **illac**
 119g

imber, imbris m. *rain shower*

- immotus, -a, -um, *unmoved* 98 ; 220, 7
 im-pedio, im-pedire 98
 im-pendeo, -pendere 220, 7
 imperō, -āre 147e ; 3p, 4t ; 3p
 ut Sub. ; imperator, -oris m.
 commander, general ; imper-
 rium, -ī n. *command* ; chief
 command, power, control, gov-
 ernment
 im-petro, -are 147e ; 4 ab 6 ; ut
 Sub.
 impetus, -us m. *charge, attack,*
 rush
 im-plōro, -āre *ask* 4t, ab ploro
 beg
 im-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi-
 tus *put in, put on, put upon,*
 impose, levy upon 3p, 4t or 4,
 in 4
 imus, -a, -um 92
 in 57 and 58
 in-cendō, in-cendere, in-cendi,
 in-census *set on fire* ; incendi-
 um, -ī n. *fire, conflagration*
 in-cido, in-cidere, in-cidī *fall*
 upon, happen upon, in 4
 in-cipio, -cipere *take to, begin*
 in-cito, in-citare *rouse*
 in-colo, in-colere, in-coluī *dwell*
 in, inhabit 4 ; in-cola, -ae m.
 inhabitant ; agri-cola *farmer*
 in-columis, -e *unharméd, safe*
 in-cūso, in-cusare *bring charge*
 against, upbraid
 inde, p. 183
 index, -icis m. *pointer, discloser,*
 informer ; indicium, -ī in-
 formation, accusation ; indi-
 cāre *point out, show, make*
 known, accuse
 in-dūco, in-dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-
 tus *lead on, influence*
 indulgeō, -ere *indulge* 3
 in-eo, in-ire, -iī, -itus *go into*
 enter (upon) ; initium, -ī n.
 an entering upon, beginning
 inferī, inferior, infimus 92
 in-ferō, in-ferre, in-tulī, il-lātus
 155b, 220, 7 ; bellum inferre 3
 carry war against
 infirmus, -a, -um *weak, unsteady*
 ingens, ingentis cf. 84 ; enor-
 mous
 in-gredior, in-gredi, —, in-gres-
 sus in 4 ; 153
 in-imicus, -a, -um *unfriendly* 75 ;
 inimicitia, -ae f. *enmity*
 in-iquus, -a, -um *unfair, unjust*
 219
 initium see ineō
 in-iuria, -ae f. 107
 in-iussus, -a, -um *unbidden* cf.
 98 ; 220, 7
 inopia, -ae f. *want, lack*
 in-opināns, -antis (when) *not ex-*
 pecting, unaware 84, 220, 7
 inquam *I say* ; inquit *says he*
 in-sequor, in-sequī, —, in-se-
 cutus *follow on, pursue*
 insidiae, -ārum f. *a sitting*
 against ; ambush, treachery
 insolenter *insolently*
 in-stituō, in-stituere, in-stitui,
 in-stitūtus *set up, decide, es-*
 tablish ; equip ; institutum, -ī
 n. *custom, institution*
 in-sto, in-stāre, in-stitī *stand on,*
 keep at, press on ; insist
 in-struō, in-struere, in-strūxī, in-
 structus *heap up ; arrange, set*
 in order, plan, contrive

insula, -ae f. 60 ; 74, 21
in-sum, *in-esse* be in
in-teger, -gra, -grum untouched;
fresh, complete
intel-legō, *intel-legere*, *intel-*
lēxī, -lēctus 220, 8 ; *l* aware,
see
in-tendo, *in-tendere*, -tendī, -ten-
tus strain toward, stretch out
toward
inter 57 ; 220, 8 ; 221b
inter-cēdō, *inter-cēdere*, -cessī,
 -cessus 220, 8 ; 221b
inter-diū during the daytime
inter-dum sometimes, meanwhile
inter-ea there between; mean-
while
inter-ficio, *inter-ficere*, -fecī, -fec-
tus make away with, kill, put
to death 220, 8
inter-iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus
thrust in, situated between, in-
tervening
inter-im there between, meanwhile
inter-mittō, *inter-mittere*, -misi,
 -missus let go between times,
interrupt, let up, stop 220, 8
internecio, -onis f. massacre
 (nex)
inter-pōnō, *inter-pōnere*, -posui,
 -positus put between, interpose;
offer, allege
inter-sum, -esse, -fui 70, 73c, d
intervallum, -ī n. interval
intra (w. Ac.) within
intrō-dūcō, *intrō-dūcere*, -dūxī,
 -ductus 220, 8 lead into
intuli see *inferō*
in-veniō, *in-venire*, -vēnī, -ventus
come upon, find 4 ; *find out*
 4 Inf.

in-victus, -a, -um unconquered,
invincible
invito, *invitāre*, *invite*
invitus, -a, -um (when) unwilling,
 (though) reluctant 94, 96
ipse, *ipsa*, *ipsum* 118
ira, *irae* anger; *iracundus*, -a,
 -um hot-tempered; *irasci* 223b
grow angry; iratus angry, en-
raged
is, *ea*, *id* 112, 115, 119c ; p. 182 ;
eō p. 182 ; *ibi* p. 183 ; *inde*
 p. 183 ; *ea* p. 183 ; *ita* 119b
iste, *ista*, *istud* 109b, 118b ;
istic 119e ; *istūc* 119d ; *istinc*
 119f ; *istāc* 119g
ita-que and so, therefore
item 119b
iter, *itineris* n. 82a, b, e a going;
journey, route, line of march;
iter facere march; (eos) *iti-*
nere prohibere keep (them)
from marching or passing
iterum 67, 120g
iturus 102-3
iubeo, *iubere*, *iussi*, *iussus* 4
 Inf. ; 122, 127, 136, 139
iudex, *iudicis* 46, 78 ; *iudicāre*
serve as judge, judge, decide,
think, declare; iudicium, -ī n.
court, judgment, decision
iugum, -ī n. yoke; ridge, chain of
hills; summit; iumentum, -ī n.
yoke animal
Iulius, -ī 60
iungō, *iungere*, *iūnxī*, *iunctus*
join
ius, *iuris* n. 42, 225 ; *iūrāre* take
oath, swear; coniurare swear
together, conspire; iūs iuran-
dum oath; *iustus*, -a, -um

- right, just, fair; iustitia, -ae*
f. *fairness*
- iussus, -us m. a bidding* cf. 157
- iuvenis, -is young; iuventus* 44
- iuvo, iuvāre, iuvī, iutus* 4 *help, aid, assist; iuvat it pleases*
- labor, labī, —, lapsus* *slip*
- labor, -ōris m. toil; laborāre* *toil, work out, be in trouble, suffer (inconvenience)*
- lac, lactis n. milk*
- laccessō, lacessere, -īvī, -ītus*
challenge, provoke, excite
- lacrima, -ae f. tear*
- lacus, -us m. lake*
- lapis, -idis m.* 43
- largus, -a, -um copious, lavish, unstinted; largiter* *copiously; largirī* 136, 139; *largitiō, -onis f. lavish giving, bribery*
- Latium, -ī n. Latium; Latinus, -a, -um Latin; latinē* 69
- latrō, -ōnis m. robber, highway-man*
- lātus* see *ferō*
- latus, -a, -um* 92; *latē* 69;
latitudō, -dinis f. 42, 92
- latus, -eris n. side, flank*
- laus, laudis f. praise; laudāre, 151*
- laurus, -ī f. laurel (tree)*
- lego, legere, legī, lectus* 97 -e,
106, 136, 218; *legiō, -ōnis f. a choosing; legion; legionārius, -a, -um of a legion, legionary; legāre* *appoint legally, commission; bequeath; legātus, -ī m. lieutenant, envoy; legatiō, -ōnis f. mission, commission, embassy*
- lēnis, -e soft, gentle; leniter*
smoothly, gently; lenitās, -ātis
f. *softness, gentleness, mildness*
- lente* *slowly*
- lēx, lēgis f. law, statute*
- liber, librī m. inner bark; 62*
- liber, libera, liberum* 91; pl.
liberī, -ōrum *free children; libere* *freely; liberāre* *to make free; libertas, -ātis f. freedom; liberaliter* *generously*
- libet, libere, libuit, libitum* 119b;
libens *pleasing; libenter* *with pleasure, gladly*
- licet, licere, licuit, licitum* 139
- lingua, -ae f. tongue; language*
- littera, -ae f. letter* pl. 218a;
litterārius, -a, -um of letters
- lītus, -oris n.* 218a
- locus, -ī m. place, room; pl. loca*
n. *places; locī* *passages in books; locāre* *place, locate; let; collocāre* *arrange, station, put*
- longus, -a, -um* 92; *distant; longē* 69; *longitudō* 92
- loquor, loquī, —, locutus* 136;
express one's self
- ludo, ludere, lusī, lusus* *play* 6;
make sport of 6; *ludus, -ī m. game, play; school; e-ludere*
dodge, escape
- lustrō, -āre* *survey, look over*
- lūx, lucis f. light of day; lūcēre*
shine; lumen, -inis n. light; luna (for lucina) *moon* 223
- lūxus, -ūs m. luxury, taste*
- māchina, -ae f. machine, structure; māchinārī* *contrive, invent, scheme; machinatiō, -ōnis f. contrivance*

- magister**, -tri m. 76 *master, overseer; teacher; magistrātus*, -ūs m. *chieftainship, office*
- magnus**, -a, -um 70, 92; **magnitūdō**, -dinis f. *greatness, size; maior*, -ius 92; **maximus** 92; **magnopere**, **magnō opere** 70; **magis** 69; **maximē** 69, 92
- malo**, **mālle**, **mālui** 137, 186
- malus**, -a, -um 91, 64, 70; **male** 69; **maleficium**, -ī n. 91
- mando**, **mandāre** 3 and 4 *give up to; entrust, bid; command; mandatum, -ī order*
- maneo**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsus** *remain, abide, stay*
- mānsuētus**, -a, -um *gentle*
- manus**, -us f. *band, force* 81
- mare**, -is n. 79b; **maritimus**, -a, -um *of sea, maritime* cf. 109c; **aequor** *level sea*; **pelagus** *broad sea*; **pontus** *deep sea*, **altum** *high or deep sea*
- māter**, **mātris** 41; **maternus** cf. 109c; **materfamiliās**; see **-familiās**
- māture** 91; **mature** 91; **matūrius** 91; **māturāre** Inf. o. 91; 223
- medius**, -a, -um *mid-, middle, central*
- meī** 116a
- mel** 41
- melior**, -ius 91
- membrum**, -ī n. *limb*
- memini**, **meminisse** *remember, recollect* 4, 4 Inf.; **memor**, -oris *mindful or remembering* 2; **memoria**, -ae f. *recollection; tradition, record* 2; **memoriā tenere** *keep in mind, recollect; memorāre* *recall, recount, relate* 4
- mēns**, **mentis** f. *mind*
- mēnsis**, -is m. *month*; **mensura**, -ae f. *measure*; **metiri** *measure*
- mereō**, **merēre**, **merui**, **meritus** *deserve, merit*; **meritum**, -ī n. *merit, desert*; **merito** *deservedly*; **merx**, **mercis** f. *ware*; **mercēs** *goods*; **mercēs**, **ēdis** f. *pay*; **mercator**, -ōris m. *trader*
- metus**, -us m. *fear, dread*; **metuere**, **metui** *fear, apprehend, dread*
- meus**, **mea**, **meum** 64, 83, 109c
- mīles**, -itis 44; **militāris**, -e 109c *soldier's, military*; **militia**, -ae f. *military service*; **domi militiaeque** L. *at home and abroad*
- mille**, **milīa** 120; **millesimus**, -a, -um *1000th*
- ministrō**, -āre *furnish*
- minor** 150; **minus**, -ōris 70; **minus** 118c; **minuere**, **minui**, **minutus** *lessen, decrease*; **minime** 69; **minimus** 92
- mīrus**, -a, -um *wonderful*; **mīrārī** *wonder at, marvel*
- miscēō**, **miscēre**, **miscui**, **mīxtus** *mix, mingle*; 4 and 6
- miser**, **misera**, **miserum** 74, 8
- mitto**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus** *let go*, 159, 62
- modus**, -ī m. *measure, kind*; **modo** 66 *in a measure, in a (limited) manner; only, but, just, just now*; **modestus**, -a, -um *self-restraining*
- moenia**, -ium n. 79, *walls*
- moles**, -is f. *shapeless mass; pile, heap, dam, mole, dyke, burden*;

moliri *pile up, heap up, build, plot*; **molestē** *with annoyance*
molitus, -a, -um *ground*
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus *warn, advise* 4, *ut w. Sub.*
mons, montis m. *mountain*
mora, -ae f. *delay, hindrance*;
morari 100 *detain self cf. 181, delay*
mors, mortis f. 100; **mорий**,
mori, —, mortuus 100
mos, moris m. 42
moveo, movere, mōvī, motus 98,
 145; **motus, -us m.** *a move, uprising cf. 157*
mulier, -eris f. (*married*) *woman*
multus, -a, -um 64, 70; 74, 17;
 74, 19; **plūs** 70, 150; **plu-**
rimus 64, 70; 72, 73; **multi-**
tudō, -inis f. *body, number, great quantity*
munus, muneris n. *task, function, service; gift*; **munio,**
munire 97-8, 104; **munitiō,**
-ōnis f. 98
murus, -i m. *wall*
muto, -are *change*
nam 119b; **nam-que** 119b
nascor, nāsci, —, natus 223b;
nātus, -i son; **nata, -ae** *daughter*;
maior nātu *elder*; **minor nātu**
younger; **—** *less in age*;
natiō, -onis f. *race, people, tribe*;
natura, -ae f. 6d
nato, natare 222c; **nauta, -ae**
(for navita § 178) m.; **nāvis,**
-is f. 62c, 79; **nāvigāre** *sail*;
navigatio, -onis f. *sailing*
-ne *interrog. particle* 145a, b
ne 69, 141, 148, 153-155

nec, neque 66
necesse *nom. or acc. necesse est*
it is urgent; **necessitās, -atis**
f. urgency; **necessitudo, -dinis**
f. relationship; **necessarius,**
-a, -um *urgent, necessary; relative*
neg-legō, neg-legere, neg-lēxī,
neg-lectus 98, 102; 220, 9;
 225; **neglegenter, carelessly**
nego, negāre *say no, deny, refuse*
neg-otium, -i n. 220, 9
ne-mō, neminī, neminem 118c
ne-qua-quam p. 183
ne-que, nec 66
neuter, neutra, neutrum 40, 65
neve; *see ne and -ve*
nex, necis f. *slaying, death, murder*
nihil, -i n. 118c, 70-1, 145b
nisi (nī) 141b, 113, 156
nitor, niti, —, nīsus or nīxus
strive; rely or rest 6; *or in* 4
nix, nivis f. 46
nōbilis, -e *see nosco*
nolo, nōlle, nōluī 121, 128, 137
nōmen, -inis n. 41; **suō nōmine**
on one's own account; **nomi-**
natim *by name*; **nōmināre** *call*
by name
nōn 141; **non-dum** *not yet*; **non**
iam *no longer*; **nonnullus**;
nonnumquam *cf. 64, 119b*
onus, -a, -um 120; **nongenti**
 900
nōs 116b
noseo, noscere, nōvī, notus 107,
 223; **perf. novī** *I know*;
nobilis, -e *knowable; prominent*
noster, nostra, nostrum 64, 109c
nōtō, -āre *mark, denote*

novem 120 ; noviens 120g
 novus, -a, -um *new, strange*;
 novae rēs *revolution*; novis-
 simus *newest, last* (to come or
 pass); novissimum agmen
 rear-guard; novāre *renew, re-
 pair, change*; novitās, -ātis
 f. newness, novelty, strangeness
 nox, noctis *f.* 46 ; noctū, nocte
 74, 18 ; primā nocte *at night-
 fall*; multā nocte *late at night*
 nubēs 79 ; nubo, nubere, nupsī
 nupta (*f.*) (*veil*), marry; nūp-
 tiae, -ārum *f. marriage* (*cere-
 monies*); nūptum (*Sup.*) 157
 nudus, -a, -um 6 *bare*; nudāre
 make bare, clear 4 and 6 ; 63
 nullus, -a, -um 40, 64, 65, 118b
 num? 145c
 numerus, -ī *m. number, amount*;
 saepe numero *oftentimes*; nu-
 merāre *count*
 numquam *p.* 183
 nunc *now*; nunc . . . nunc *at*
 one time . . . at another;
 nū-per *just now, lately*; 220,
 10
 nuntius, -a, -um *announcing*;
 messenger, news; nūntiāre 142
 nuper *see nunc*
 ob 57 ; 220, 9
 ob-aerātus, -a, -um *in debt*;
 debtor
 ob-latus *see of-fero*
 ob-livīscor, ob-livīscī, —, ob-
 litus 2 or 4 ; 4 *Inf.* 107, 223b
 ob-oedio, ob-oedire *listen to, give*
 heed to, obey
 ob-sideō, ob-sidēre, ob-sēdī, ob-
 sessus *sit by or against*; be-

siege, blockade; obses, -idis
 106e ; obsidiō, -ōnis *f. block-
 ade, siege*
 ob-stringo, -stringere, -strīnxī,
 -strictus *bind*
 obstrictus, -a, -um *bound*
 ob-tineō, ob-tinēre, ob-tinuī, ob-
 tentus 98, 220, 9
 oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī, -cāsus
 fall, settle, set; occasus, -us *m.*
 a falling down; setting; oc-
 casio, -ōnis *f. opportunity*
 oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī, oc-
 cīsus 219, 1
 oc-cupo, oc-cupāre *take posses-
 sion of, seize*
 oc-currō, oc-currere, oc-cucurrī
 or oc-currī, -cursus 220, 9
 Oceanus, -ī *m. ocean*; mare
 Oceanus *the Atlantic*
 octo 120 ; Octōber 87 ; octāvus,
 -a, -um 120 ; octogintā 120 ;
 octingenti, -ae, -a *eight hun-
 dred* .
 oculus, -ī *m.* 62g
 odī, odisse 74, 22 ; odium, -ī *n.*
 in 4, § 5f
 of-ferō, of-ferre, ob-tulī, ob-
 lātus 220, 9
 officium, -ī *n. service, duty*
 olīva, -ae *f. olive*
 omnis, -e 71 ; omnino *in all*
 opera, -ae *f. labor; pains, effort*
 opinio, -onis *f. idea, expecta-
 tion*
 oportet, oportere, oportuit 152
 oportunus, -a, -um *lucky*
 oppidum, -ī 77 ; oppidānus, -ī *m.*
 townsman
 op-primō, -primere, -pressī,
 -pressus *oppress*

- op-pugno, op-pugnare *assault, attack, storm* (a town); op-pugnatiō, -onis *f. assault, storming*
 optimus 91; -e 69; optimātēs, -ium, *m. aristocrats*
 opus, operis *n.* 70, 71c; magno-pere 70; quantopere 70; tantopere 70
 opus est 6, 71c
 ora, -ae *f. coast, border, zone*
 orbis, -is *m. circle, round, orbit; orbis terrarum the circle of the lands i.e. the world*
 ordō, -inis *m.* 42
 orior, oriri, —, ortus 97, 100, 102; orīgo 42; oriens 97; ortus, -us *m. the rising* (of the sun)
 orno, ornāre *adorn*; ornamentum, -ī *n. ornament, equipment, credit*
 ōs, ōris *n.* 78; *face*; oro, orāre *move mouth, plead, beg*; orator, -ōris *m. pleader, orator*; oratiō, -ōnis *f. plea, argument, speech*
 os-tendō, os-tendere, os-tendī, ostentus 146, 220, 9
 ovis, -is *f. sheep*
 pābulum, -ī *n.* 148h; pābulārī *get forage*; pabulatiō, -onis *f. foraging; a foraging expedition*
 pācō, see pāx
 paene *almost*; paen-insula, -ae *f. almost-island, peninsula*
 pāgus, -ī *m. district, clan, canton*
 palūs, -udis *f.* 43
 pandō, pandere, pandī, passus *open, spread out; passim here and there*
 pār, paris 83; pariter *equally*
 parcus, -a, -um *sparing*
 pareo, pārēre, pārui *obey* 3
 pariō, parere, peperī, partus *give birth to, bring forth*; parēns, -entis *parent*
 paro, parāre 98, 102
 pars, partis *f.* 47, 79; pars . . . pars *some . . . others*; partim *partly*; parti-ceps, -cipis *participant, sharer*; partiri 104
 parvus, -a, -um 70, 71, 92, 150; parum 70; minor 150; minus 69, 148d, 150, 155, 118c; minimus 70, 92; minimē 69
 pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus *cause to feed, pasture*; pascor, pasci *feed (self) on* 6; 180-2; pastor, -oris *m. feeder, shepherd*
 passus *p.p. of patior* 100
 passus (*p.p. of pandō*) *open*
 passus, -ūs *m. a spreading; double step* (about 5 feet); mille passus 1000 paces, a Roman mile 120
 pateo, patēre, patui *extend, lie open, spread* pp. 33, line 9, 38, 14; pate-facio, pate-facere, -fecī, -factus *throw open, open, disclose*
 pater, patris 41; paternus, -a, -um 109c; patrius, -a, -um *paternal*; (terra) patria *fatherland, country*; patruus, -ī *an uncle on the father's side*
 patior, pati, —, passus *let, allow*
 paucī, -ae, -a 64; paucitās, -ātis *f. fewness*
 paulum 70; paululum 70; paulātim *little by little, gradually*; paulisper *for a short time*

pāx, **pācis** f. 46, 159 ; **pācāre** sub-
due; **pactum**, -ī n. agreement
pecus, -oris n. cattle; **pecunia**,
-ae f. (value of cattle) money
peius see **malus** 91
pellis, -is f. skin, hide, pelt
pello, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus**
strike, beat, push, drive
per 57 ; 70
per-agō, **per-agere**, **per-ēgī**, -**actus**
drive through; finish, accom-
plish
per-do, **per-dere**, -**didī**, -**ditus** put
through; destroy, loose
per-dūcō, **per-dūcere**, -**dūxī**,
-**ductus** take on or over, con-
tinue
per-eo, **per-ire**, **per-īī**, -**itus** go
through; perish, be lost 220, 10
per-facilis, -is, -e very easy
per-ferō, **per-ferre**, -**tulī**, -**lātus**
bear through, carry through;
endure to the end; carry news
per-ficio, **per-ficere**, -**fecī**, -**fectus**
98, 220, 10
periculum, -ī n. danger; **pericu-
losus**, -a, -um perilous; **peri-
clitarī** take risk (to self) 180-2
peritus, -a, -um 2 skilled in,
experienced, familiar with; im-
peritus 2 ignorant
per-magnus, -a, -um cf. 64, 70
per-maneō, **per-manēre**, -**mānsī**,
-**mānsus** stay through, hold out,
abide
per-mittō, **per-mittere**, -**mīsī**,
-**missus** let go through; yield,
allow, permit 4, ut w. Sub.
per-moveō, **per-movēre**, -**mōvī**,
-**motus** move throughout, rouse,
induce

permulti 64, 220, 10
perniciēs, -eī f. thorough killing;
destruction, disaster cf. **nex**
perpauci, -ae, -a 64, 220, 10
per-rumpō, -**rumpere**, -**rūpī**, -**rup-
tus** break through
per-sequor, **per-sequī**, —, **per-
secutus** follow thoroughly, pur-
sue, press hard
per-severo, **per-sevērāre** perse-
vere, insist upon Inf. o.
per-spiciō, **per-spicere**, **per-spexi**,
-**spectus** see through, see clearly,
make out, understand
per-suādeō, **per-suādēre**, -**suāsī**,
-**suāsus** 147e
per-terreō, **per-terrēre**, -**terrui**,
-**territus** terrify thoroughly
per-tineo, -**tinere**, -**tinui** 220, 10
per-turbo, -**turbāre**, confuse
thoroughly, throw into confusion
per-venio, -**venire**, -**veni**, -**ventus**
get through to, arrive at ad
4 ; arrive in in 4
pes 43 ; **pedes**, -**itis** m. 43 ;
pedester, -**tris**, -**tre** belonging
to the feet; of infantry cf.
109c ; **peditātus**, -us m. a body
of foot-soldiers, infantry
petō, **petere**, **petivī**, **petitus** 147e
phalanx, -**angis** f. phalanx; close
formation of troops
pilum, -ī n. javelin, spear
placeō, **placere**, **placui**, **placitum**
3, 133
plānus, -a, -um flat, even; **planē**
plainly; **planities**, -eī f. level-
ness, plain
plebes, -eī f. commons
plenus, -a, -um 62
plerique most people 76

plerumque 70

plêrusque, plêraque, plêrumque
76

plurimum 70

plus, pluris n. 70, 72; 74, 19; 150

poena, -ae f. *penalty, punishment*

pol-liceor, pol-licerī, —, pol-
licitus *hold forth; promise*

pono, ponere, posui, positus *put
down, put, place, establish*

pons, pontis m. 158

populo, populare *ravage, raid*

populus, -ī m. 107

porta, -ae f. *gate, entrance; por-
tus, -us harbor, port*

porto, portare 97, 102, 104

posco, poscere, poposci *demand,
claim; inquire into*

possideo, possidere, *possess, own*

possum, posse 137, 183; potens
84, 91; potentia, -ae f. *power,
influence*

post 57, 68; postea 69; pos-
terus, -a, -um; posterior
*hinder; postremus or post-
umus latest, last, final; pos-
tridie on the next day; pos-
tremō at last*

pōstulō, postulāre 147e

potens 84

potestās, -ātis or potentia, -ae f.
power, chance (at) 2

potior, potiri, —, potitus 182

prae 58, 92, 220, 11

prae-acutus, -a, -um *sharpened*

prae-beō, prae-bēre, prae-buī,
prae-bitus 220, 11

prae-cedo, prae-cedere 74, 16;
220; 11

prae-cipiō, prae-cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptus *take beforehand, antici-*

*pate, advise, warn, give direc-
tions, order; prae-cipue espe-
cially*

praeda, -ae f. *booty, prey;
praedārī make prey of, rob,
plunder*

prae-currō, -ere *run ahead*

prae-dico, prae-dicare *make
known, proclaim; vaunt, boast*

prae-ferō, prae-ferre, -tulī, -lātus
place before, prefer 3 and 4

prae-ficiō, prae-ficere, prae-fēcī,
-fectus 3 and 4, *put at the head
of or in charge of; praefectus,
-ī captain, prefect (of cavalry)*

prae-lego, -ere *read out*

prae-mittō, prae-mittere, prae-
misi, -missus *send in advance*

praemium, -ī n. *bounty, reward*

prae-nomen *fore-name; cf. co-
gnomen added name*

praesidium, -ī n. *garrison; guard*

prae-stō, prae-stāre, -stitī, -stitus
*stand in front, excel 3; put in
front of, furnish 3p, 4t*

prae-sum, prae-esse, prae-fui *be
at head of, in charge of 3;
praesens, praesentis present
cf. 84*

praeter 57; praeter-ea *besides;
praeter quam further than,
except*

praeter-eō, praeter-ire, -iī, -itus
220, 11

prae-eo, -ire *go ahead of; praetor,
-oris m. one who goes before; a
praetor, a Roman magistrate,
general; praetorius, -a, -um
general's*

premō, premere, pressī, pressus
press, crowd, oppress

prendo, prēndere orprehendere,
prehendī, prehēnsus *grasp;*
comprehendere *seize, arrest*

pretium, -i n. 73

pridem *long ago, long since; iam*
pridem *this long ago, long ago;*
prīdiē *on the day before; prior,*
prius 69, 92; **primus, -a, -um**
 92, 120; **prīn-ceps, -cipis** *first;*
foremost, chief; principātus,
-us m. *chiefship, leadership;*
principium, -ī n. *beginning;*
prīus, prius (-quam) 69; **prī-**
stinus, -a, -um *former, old-*
time

privātus, -a, -um *set apart*

prō 58; 220, 12

probus, -a, -um *good; probāre*
find good, approve, prove;
probitās, -ātis f. *goodness;*
improbus, -a, -um *wicked, bad*
prō-cēdō, prō-cēdere, prō-cessī,
-cessus *go forth, advance*

prō-cōsul, -is m. *proconsul*

procul adv. *afar off*

prod-eo, -īre, -iī, -itus 220, 12

pro-do, pro-dere, -didī, -ditus
give away, betray; proditor,
-ōris m. *traitor*

prō-dūcō, prō-dūcere, -dūxī,
-ductus *lead forth; protract,*
draw out

proelium, -i n. 62 f, 63, **proeliārī**
do battle

pro-ficiscor, pro-ficiscī, —, pro-
fectus *set out* 223; **profectiō,**
-ōnis f. *a selling forth, depart-*
ture

prō-fluō, -ere, *flow out*

pro-fugiō, pro-fugere, pro-fūgī,
-fugiturus 220, 12

pro-gredior, pro-gredi, —, pro-
gressus 100, 104, 220, 12

pro-hibeō, pro-hibēre, pro-hibuī,
-hibitus 63, 102, 123, 132,
 148g, 219, 3

prope *near; almost; propior,*
propius *nearer; proximus, -a,*
-um 68c; **proximē** *most re-*
cently, last; propinquus, -a,
-um *near; close, relative; pro-*
pinquitās, -ātis f. *kinship*

propero, -āre *hasten, speed*
 Inf. o

prō-pōnō, prō-pōnere, prō-posuī,
-positus *put forward, set forth*

proprius, -a, -um *one's own,*
proper cf. Eng. *property*

propter 57; **propter-eā** 154

pro-pulso, pro-pulsare *beat off*

pro-spicio, pro-spicere, pro-
spexī, -spectus *look forth or*
look out for 3; **prospectus, -us**
 m. *view*

pro-video, -videre, -vidī, -visus
foresee 4; **provide** *for* 3; **provi-**
dens or **prudens** 91; **provi-**
dentia or **prudentia, -ae** f.
foresight, wisdom

provincia 77; p. 78 line 23

pro-voco, pro-vocāre *call forth,*
challenge

pro-volo, -āre *fly forth*

publicus, -a, -um 73; **res**
publica *commonwealth, state;*
publicē *in the name of the*
people, publicly

puer, puerī 41, 44; **puella, -ae** f.
girl

pugna, -ae f. 62f; **pugnis, -i** m.
fist; pugno, pugnāre 62

pulcher, -chra, -chrum 91

putō, putāre *trim, clean; arrange, set in order, reckon, think*

quadrāgintā 120g ; quadragiēns ; quadragensimus, -a, -um 40th ; quadrans, -ntis *one fourth* ; quadringentī, -ae, -a *four hundred*

quadriennium 67 ; quadrīdūm 67
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitus 123, 143, 147e

quā 119g

quālis, -e 91

quam 64, 69, 90 ; quamquam *however, and yet, though*

quandō 119a

quantus, -a, -um 70, 92 ; quantopere 70

quā re 115 c, 154

quattuor 120 ; quater 67, 120 ; quārtus, -a, -um 120 ; quaternī, -ae, -a *four each* ; quattuordecim *fourteen* ; quadringentī, -ae, -a 400

-que 66

queror, querī, —, questus *complain of, lament* ; questus, -ūs m. *a complaint* 157 ; querimōnia, -ae f. *complaint*

quī, quae, quod 115

quic-quam p. 182 and 119b

quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque 119b and p. 182

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam 119b and p. 182

quidem ; nē . . . quidem 69

quies, quietis f. 43 ; quiesco, -ere, quiēvi, quietus *go to rest; grow quiet; quietus at rest, peaceful*

quīn 115b, c, 149

quīnque 120 or p. 29 ; quīnquē 120 ; quīntus, -a, -um 120 ; quīnī, -ae, -a 120 ; quīnquagintā 120 or p. 29 ; quīngentī, -ae, -a 120

quis, quid ; quī, quae, quod 113-5

quis-quam, quid-quam or quic-quam 119b or p. 182

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que or quod-que 119b or p. 182

quis-quis, quid-quid 119b

quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs, quod-vīs 119b or p. 182

quō . . . eō 74, 19 or p. 18

quo . . . minus 148-9, 155

quod *the fact that, as for the fact that, that, because, since* 115b

quon-dam 119a, b and p. 183

quon-iam *since, whereas, as* 224

quoque *also, too*

quōrum 109b

quot 64 ; quotiēns 120e ; quotannis *every year*

rārus, -a, -um *widely scattered, loose* ; rarō *rarely*

rapio, rapere, rapuī, raptus 97, 98, 162

ratio, -ōnis, f. 42 *a reckoning; way, method; account; system, plan, reason* 154

ratis, -is f. *raft; vessel*

re-, red- 220, 13

raucus, -a, -um *hoarse*

recēns, recentis *fresh, new*

re-cipio, re-cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus 98, 104 ; se recipere *betake one's self, withdraw*

rēcte *see regō*

re-cūso, re-cusāre 154, 219, 1

red-do, red-dere, -didī, -ditus
give back, return cf. 102

red-eo, red-īre, -ii, -itus go back,
return; reditus, -us m. (a)
return; reditio, -onis f. 220, 13

red-igō, red-igere, -egī, -āctus
drive back; reduce, bring down

red-imō, red-imere, -ēmī, -ēemptus
buy back; purchase, acquire,
ransom

red-integro, -are renew

re-duco, re-ducere, -duxī, -ductus
lead back, take back

re-ferō, re-ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātus
bring back, report, refer; relate

re-ficio, re-ficere, -fecī, -fectus
make over, repair, refresh

rego, regere, rexī, rectus guide,
direct, rule; regio, -onis f. 42;

rectus direct, straight; recte
rightly; rex, regis m. king;

regius, -a, -um kingly, royal;
regalis, -e king's, kingly, royal;

109c; regina, -ae f. queen;
regnum, -ī n. royal authority,

kingship; kingdom, realm;
regnare reign

re-liquō, re-liquere, re-liquī,
relictus leave behind, abandon,

desert; reliquus, -a, -um re-
maining; rest of; reliquiae,

-arum f. leavings, remains

re-miniscor, re-miniscī cf. 107,
223

re-mitto, mittere, -misi, -missus
let go back

repens, -ntis sudden; repente
suddenly; repentīnus, -a, -um

unexpected

re-perio, re-perire, rep-perī, re-
pertus 135

re-peto, re-petere, -petiī, -petītus
ask back, seek again

re-portō, -are bring back

re-prehendō, re-prehendere,
-prehendī, -prehensus blame

re-pugno, -are resist, stand in the
way of

res, rei 44, 73c, 81, 113; res
publica the commonwealth; res

familiāris family property,
estate; rēs militaris art of war;

res novae revolution

re-spiciō, re-spicere, re-spexi,
-spectus look back, respect

re-stinguō, re-stinguere, -stinxi,
-stinctus extinguish

re-stituō, re-stituere, re-stitui,
-stitutus re-establish, restore

re-tineō, re-tinēre, re-tinuī, re-
tentus 155b

re-vertō, re-vertere, -verti, -ver-
sus 182; reverti 181b

rex, regis m. 46

Rhodus, -ī f. 76

rideo, ridere, risi, risus laugh at

ripa, -ae, f. bank

rogo, rogare 141b, 157b

Roma, -ae f. 74, 13; Romanus,
-a, -um 109c; romane in

Roman fashion

ruo, ruere, ruī, ruitūrus rush,
tumble, fall; ruina, -ae f.

breach

rursus, rursum 119b

rus, ruris n. 42, 78; rus (Acc.)
61b; ruri (Loc.) 61c; rūre

(Abl.) 61d

saepe 69; saepenumērō often-
times

saevio, saevire rage, be furious

sagitta, -ae f. *arrow*
salus, -utis f. 43 ; **salutāre** *greet, wish good health*
sanguis, -inis m. 43
satis 70 ; **satisfacere** 3 *do enough for, give satisfaction*
scando 220, 2
scio, **scire**, **scīvi** or **scii**, **scītus** 74, 3 ; **sciēns** *knowing*; **scientia**, -ae f. *knowledge*; **in-scius**, -a, -um or **in-sciens** *not knowing*
scribo, **scribere**, **scripsi**, **scriptus** *write, write down* ; **scriptor**, -ōris m. *writer*; **scriptum**, -ī n. *(thing) written, writing*
scūtum, -ī n. *oblong shield*
se, **sui** 62 f
sē-, **sēd-** 220, 13
sēcrētus, -a, -um *set apart*; **secretō** *in private, privately*
secundus, -a, -um (cf. **sequi**) *following*; *next, second*; *favorable, successful*; **secundum** w. Acc. *next to, along, following*
sed 66
sē-decim 120
sedeo, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessus** *sit, be fixed or settled*; **sedēs**, -is f. 55d ; *seat, settlement*
sēditō, -ōnis f. 220, 13 ; **seditiōsus**, -a, -um *seditionous, rebellious*
semel 67, 120
sēmen, **sēminis** n. *seed*; **sementis**, -is *a sowing*
semper *always, ever*
senex, **senis** *old man*; **senātus** 44
sēnī, -ae, -a *six each (way)*
sentio, **sentire**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus** *per-*

ceive by senses; *feel, hear, see, perceive, realize*; **sententia**, -ae f. *feeling, thinking, opinion, judgment*; **sententiam rogāre** *ask opinion or vote*
separātus 220, 13 ; **separatim** *separately*
sepeliō, **sepelire**, **sepelivī**, **sepultus** *bury*; **sepultura**, -ae f. *burial*
septem, *seven*; **septiens** *7-times*; **septimus**, -a, -um *seventh*; **septuagintā** *seventy*; **septingentī**, -ae, -a *seven hundred*; **septendecim** *seventeen*; **septen-triō**, -ōnis m. *seven plough-oxen*; *Great bear, the north*
sequor, **sequī**, —, **secūtus** 97, 100, 102
serenus, -a, -um *clear, calm, fair*; **sereno**, **serenare** *make clear*
servio, **servire** *be a slave, serve*; **servus**, -ī ; **serva**, -ae *slave*; **servitus**, -utis f. 43
servo, -āre *save, keep, guard, watch*
sex, *six* ; **sexiēns** *6-times*; **sex-tus**, -a, -um *sixth*; **senī**, -ae, -a *six each*; **sexa-gintā** *sixty*; **ses-centī**, -ae, -a *six hundred*
seu = **sive** 66
sī 113, 224 ; **sīn** 156a, 224 ; **sive** (**seu**) 66
sic *in such a manner, so*; **sicut** *just as*
sido, **sīdere** (-**sēdī**, -**sessus**) *sit down*
signum, -ī n. *figure, mark, military standard, signal*; **significāre** *indicate, show*

silva, -ae f. *forest*; **silvestris**, -e (of) *forest*; *wooded*

similis, -e like, *similar*; **similiter** *similarly*; **simulāre** *pretend*

simul *at once, together, at the same time*; **simul atque** (ac) *as soon as*

sine 58

singulī, -ae, -a 120e

sinister, -tra, -trum *left*

sitis, -is f. *thirst*

socius, -a, -um *allied, confederate, friendly*; **comrade**; **societās**, -ātis f. *association, alliance*

sōl, **sōlis** m. 41

soleo, **solēre**, —, **solitus** *be accustomed, wont* Inf. o

sollicitō, **sollicitāre** 222d

solum, -ī n. *bottom, soil, ground*

sōlus, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b; **solum** 66

solvo, -ere, **solvi**, **solūtus** *loosen, unbind, release, pay, fulfill*

sōnō, **sonāre**, **sonuī**, **sonitus** *sound, resound*; **sonitus**, -ūs m. *sound, noise, din*

soror, -ōris f. *sister*; **sorōrcula**, -ae f. *little sister*

sors, **sortis** f. *lot*; *fate, destiny, oracle, success*

spatium, -ī n. 67

species, -eī f. *appearance*; *looks, sight*; **spectō**, -āre *look, face*; *look at, consider*; **specula**, -ae f. *look out*; **speculator**, -ōris m. *scout, spy*

spēs, **spei** f. 55c; **spēro**, **spērāre** *hope, expect* 4; 4 Inf.

spiritus, -us m. *breath*; *pl. airs*

spolio, **spoliāre** 4p 6t, 230f *rob*
sponte of (one's own) *will or effort*

statim see **stō**

statuo, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtus** *set up, station, fix*; *decide*

stilus, -ī m. *stylus* (for writing)

stipendium, -ī n. *tribute*

stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statūrus** 62c;

statiō, -ōnis f. 42, 44, 157;

statim *as one stands*; *at once*; *forthwith*; **statūra**, -ae f. *stat-ure*;

status, -us m. *state*;

stābulum, -ī n. *stable*

strepitus, -ūs m. *noise*

studeo, **studēre**, **studuī** *be eager or zealous* 3 or Inf. o.;

studium, -ī n. 107, cf. 105; **studiō-**

sus, -a, -um *fond*

suāvis, -e *pleasant, sweet*; **suādeo**,

suādēre, **suāsī**, **suāsus** 147e

sub 57, 58, 220, 14; *close to, towards*

sub-dūcō, **sub-dūcere**, -**dūxi**, -**ductus** *lead up, draw up, haul up*

sub-eō, **sub-īre**, -**īi**, -**itus** 220, 14;

subitus *having gone up to*;

sudden, unexpected; **subitō**

suddenly

sub-levō, -**āre** *relieve*

sub-rīdeō, **sub-ridēre**, -**rīsī**, -**rīsus** *half-laugh, smile*

sub-sequor, **sub-sequī**, —, **sub-secūtus** 220, 14

subsidium, -ī n. *what sits or remains below*; *reserve, assist-*

ance, reinforcement

suc-cēdō, **suc-cēdere**, **suc-cessī**, -**cessus** 3; 220, 14

suc-currō, **suc-currere**, **suc-currī**,

- cursus* run up or under; run to assistance of 3
- suf-ferō, suf-ferre, sus-tuli, sub-lātus* 220, 14
- sui, sibi, se* 116c, 180
- sum, esse, fui, futūrus* 183
- summa, -ae* f. 92; *summus* 92
- sum-ministrō, -āre*; see *ministrō* 220, 14
- sum-mittō, sum-mittere, -misi, -missus* 3 and 4, 220, 14
- sū-mō, sū-mere, sū-mpsī, sū-mptus* 219, 4; *sūmptus, -us* m. *undertaking, expense*
- super* prep. w. Acc. or Abl. *over, upon* 220, 15; *suprā* above; *superbus, -a, -um* overbearing, *proud*; *superbē* haughtily; *superpero, superāre* 62f; *super-sum, 220, 15*; *superī* 92; *superior* 68c, 92; *summus* 92; *suprēmus* 92; *summa, -ae* *sum, sum total, chief position or command*
- sup-petō, sup-petere, sup-petī, -petitus* (look up at) *be in stock or on hand, be plentiful*
- sup-plex, -icis* bending under, kneeling; *suppliant*; *supplicium, -ī* n. kneeling; *punishment, penalty*
- sus-cipiō, sus-cipere, sus-cēpī, sus-ceptus* 220, 14
- su-spiciō, su-spicere, su-spexi, su-spectus* look under or suspect; look up to; *suspiciō, -ōnis* f. 152b; *suspiciārī* 220, 14
- sus-tineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus* 220, 14
- sustuli* see *sufferō* and *tollō*
- suus, sua, suum* 63, 64, 109c
- tabernāculum, -ī* n. tent
- tabula, -ae* f. board, writing tablet
- taceo, tacēre, tacui, tacitus* be silent; *tacitus* silent
- tālis, tāle* 91
- tam* 64, 69, 149; *tam-quam* so as, just as
- tamen* still, nevertheless, yet
- tandem* at last, finally; *pray, pray tell me*
- tantus, -a, -um* 70, 92; *tantulus, -a, -um* 149 f; *tantopere* 70
- tardus, -a, -um* slow, late; *tardē* behind time, slowly; *tardāre* retard, hold back
- tego, tegere, tēxi, tēctus* cover, protect; *tectum, -ī* n. shelter, roof
- tēlum, -ī* n. missile, weapon; spear, bolt, javelin; *tela mittere* or *conicere* let go or hurl weapons in 4
- tempus, -oris* n. 42, 82; *occasion*; *tempestās, -ātis* f. period of time, weather, season; bad weather, storm; *tempero, temperāre* ab 6 102, 155b
- tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus* stretch; *tenuis, -e* stretched; thin, slender, shallow
- teneo, tenēre, tenui, tentus* 97-104 -ē-
- ter* 67; *ternī, -ae, -a* three each; *tertius, -a, -um* 120e
- tergum, -ī* n. back; rear; *ā tergō* on or from the rear
- terra, -ae* f. earth, land; *terrestris, -ē* earthly, of the earth of. 109c
- terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus* 98, 148; *terror, -ōris* m. fright

testudo, -inis f. *tortoise; tortoise-shaped shelter of shields or beams*

timeo, timēre, timui *fear* 153

toga, -ae f. *toga; togatus, -a, -um clad in the toga*

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus *raise, lift up; puff up, remove, take away, destroy*

torus, -ī m. *couch*

tot 64; totiēns *so many times, so often; tot-idem* 64

totus, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b

trā-dō, trā-dere, -didī, -ditus 220, 15

trā-dūcō, trā-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus 220, 15

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus *drag, draw*

trāns 57, 220, 15

trans-eo, trans-ire, -iī, -itus 4, 220, 15

trēs, tria 120; tredecim 13;

trīduum, -ī n. 67; trīnī or ternī, -ae, -a 3 *each; tri-*

ennium, -ī n. 67; trigintā

120; trecentī, -ae, -a cf. 120d;

triēns, trientis *one third;*

tri-plex, -plicis 120f; triplicō,

triplicāre *triple*

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus 220, 2

tū, tuī, tibi, tē 116

tueor, tuerī, —, tuitus or tūtus *protect, make safe; tutor,*

-ōris m. *protector; tutus, -a,*

-um *safe*

tuli *see fero*

tum or tunc 66; tum cum 115b;

cum . . . tum *while . . . at the same time, both . . . and*

tumultus, -us m. *commotion*

tumulus, -ī m. *hillock, mound*

turbo, -inis *whirl; whirling storm, tornado, whirlwind*

tuus, -a, -um 109c

ubi 119a; p. 183, 148; ubique p. 183

ūllus, -a, -um 40, 65

ultrā 57; ulterior, -ius *farther;*

ultimus, -a, -um *farthest*

umbra, -ae f. *shade, shadow*

um-quam 119b

ūnā cum 58; ūnus, -a, -um 65, 120; un-decim 120

unde p. 183; undique p. 183

urbs, urbis f. 74, 21; urbānus, -a, -um (*of the*) *city* 109c

ūro, ūrere, ūssī, ūstus 220, 4

usque ad or in w. acc. *all the way, up to or till; quo-ūsque how far*

usus *see utor* 201

ut or utī 147, 148, 149

uter, utra, utrum 40, 65, 108;

utrum *whether . . . an or;*

uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que

65, 66b, 108, p. 182; utrim-

que p. 183; utroque p. 182

utor, uti, —, usus 6, 100, 182,

201; usus, -ūs m. *use, expe-*

rience; ex usū est it is of

advantage; mihi ūsuī est it is

useful to me cf. 159g, p. 48, l. 7

uxor, uxōris f. *wife*

vaco, vacāre 55b; vacuus, -a,

-um *empty; vacuum a void*

vadium, -ī n. *shallow, shoal, wad-*

ing (place), ford, crossing

vagor, vagārī, —, vagatus

wander about, roam

valeo, valere, valui, valitūrus *be strong; excel; be able, have power, be worth; valetūdō, -dinis* *f. health, illness*

vallēs, -is *f. valley*

vāllum, -ī *n. rampart, earth-works*

varius, -a, -um *various*

vāstus, -a, -um *empty, void, waste, wild; immense; vasto, vāstāre* *lay waste, ravage*

vehementer *violently*

vel 66

vēn-dō, vēn-dere, -didī, -ditus *sell*

ven-eo, ven-īre, -ui, -itus *go on sale, be sold*

venio, venire, vēnī, ventus 92, 97, 98, 102-4

venor, venārī *hunt; venatiō, -ōnis* *f. hunting; venator, -oris* *m. hunter*

ventus, -ī *wind*

ver, veris, n. *spring*

verbum, -ī *word*

vereor, verērī, —, veritus 97, 100, 104, 182, 196

vergo, vergere *bend, incline, slope*

vergobretus, -ī *m. vergobret*

verto, vertere, vertī, versus *move, turn; vertī* *turn self, revolve; versārī* 222c; *dwell, conduct one's self; versus* 119b

vērus, -a, -um *true; verō* *in truth, but; verē* *truly; verum* *but, but yet*

vesper, -eris *or -erī* 76 *evening star; west*

Vesta, -ae *f. Vesta, goddess of hearth and home*

vester, vestra, vestrum *your* 109c
vēstigium, -ī *n. footprint, track, trace; e vestigio* *forthwith, straightway*

vestis, -is *garment, robe; clothing, drapery; vestire* *dress*

veto, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus 123, 132 *forbid*

vetus, veteris 42, 86; **vete-rāscere** 223b

vexo, vexare *harass, ravage*

via, viae *way, route, street*

vicesimus, -a, -um *twentieth; vices* *twenty times; viginti* *twenty* p. 29

vicis *f. change, turn; invicem* *in exchange, in turn*

victus, -us *m. see vīvo*

vīcus, -ī 5g, 60; **vicinus, -a, -um** *of same village; neighboring, near*

video, vidēre, vidī, visus 4; 4 *Inf.*; 97, 98, 121, 192; **viderī** *be seen; seem, appear* *Inf.* o. 155

vigilō, vigilāre *be awake, be on guard; vigilia, -ae* *a lying awake, a night watch, guard* p. 35

viginti *see vīcies*

vinciō, vincire, vinxī, vinctus *bind, tie; vinculum, -ī* *n. bond, fetter, tie*

vinco, vincere, vicī, victus 225; **victor, -ōris** *m. winning, winner*

vindico, vindicāre *claim as defender; defend, avenge*

viola, -ae *f. violet*

vinum, -ī 82e; **vīnea, -ae** *f. vine-bower; shed used in military operations*

vir, **virī** *man, husband, hero*;
virtūs, -ūtis f. 43, 74, 16;
virilis, -e *man's; manly*
 109c

virgō 78

viridis, -e *verdant, green*

vis **vim**, **vī** 80; **virēs** *forces*,
strength; vim facere do or use
violence

vīta, -ae f. *life*; **vīvo**, **vīvere**,
vixi, **vīctus** 74, 17; **vīvus**, -a,
 -um *alive, living; victus, -ūs*
m. living, food

vīto, **vītāre**, *avoid, shun*

vix *hardly, scarcely, barely; vix-*
dum hardly, yet

vocō see **vōx**

volō, **volāre**, **volitāre** 222c

volo, **velle**, **volui** 128, 137, 140,
 186; **voluntās**, -tātis f. *wish*,
desire; voluptās, -tatis f. joy,
liking, pleasure

volvo, **volvere**, **volvī**, **volūtus** 82,
 p. 47

vōs 116

vōx, **vōcis** f. *voice; utterance*,
word; magna vōx loud voice;
clāra vōx *distinct voice*; **vocō**,
vocāre *call, name*

vulgus, -ī *common people; vulgo*
for common 77b

vulnus, -eris n. 78; **vulnerāre**
wound; vulnus inferre inflict
a wound

vultus, -us m. *look, countenance*,
expression, face

INDEX

[Numbers refer to paragraphs.]

- Ablative, general meaning**, 56, 6
 absolute (so called), 95, 96
 of accompaniment, 62
 of accordance, 56, 6; 96 c
 of agent, 62 d
 of cause or reason, 56, 6; 74, 15
 of comparison, 56, 6; 75
 of description, 62 g
 of manner, 96 b
 of means or instrument, 62 b
 of measure of difference, 68 b
 of price or value, 73
 place, in expressions of, 60, 61
 in names of towns, **domus**, and
 rūs, 60, 61; with certain words,
 230
 of respect or specification, 74, 16
 of separation, 63
 of time at or within which, 68 c
 of way or manner, 96 b
 with **opus est**, 71 c
 with prepositions, 58
 with **utor**, **potior**, 182 b
-ābus, dative and ablative, 55 a, note;
 77 a, 120
Accent, 35, 36
Accompaniment, with cum, 62
Accordance, ablative of, 56, 6; 96 c
Accusative
 of direct object, 56, 4; 74, 4
 of measure of extent, duration, etc.,
 56, 4, 68 a; 74, 17
 of place to which, with **ad** or **in**,
 60, 61
 predicate of object, 5; 74, 5
 predicate of subj. acc., 5 c; 74, 3
 subject of infinitive, 5 g: 56, 4,
 142
 "two accusatives," 155
 with prepositions, 57
Active voice, defined, 179
ad w. acc. of gerund, 121 b; cf. 158
- Adjectives, declension**, 83-90; 108-
 120, 150
 agreement of, 83
 as substantives, 64-5; 70-1 (64-5;
 70-1)
 comparison of, 88-92, 97-8
 possessive, 109 c
 pronominal, 108-18
Adjective pronoun, 64-5; 70-1
Adverbs, 69, 91-2
Adversative cum-clause, 115 b; 224
 quī-clause, 115 b
Agent, ablative of, with ā or ab, 62 d
 dative of, 106
agō, conjugation, 197-200
Agreement, 68 b, c; 83, 93-6
 alius — alius —, one — another, 65
 alter — alter —, one — the other, 65
Antepenult, 36
Appositive, 93-6
 "As — as possible," 69, 90, 91
Attraction, subjunctive by, 137 b
audiō, conjugation in full, 207-10
capiō, conjugation, 202-5
Cardinal numbers, 120
Cases, defined, 56
 endings of, 55
 known by their use, 74, 1-22
 table of meanings, 56
castra, declined, 77
causā, of purpose, 59
Cause, ablative, 74, 15
 cum-clause, subjunctive, 115, 224
 quī-clause, subjunctive, 115 a, 224
 quod, quoniam, 224-6
Characteristic clause, 151 b
Commands, 141, 143
Comparative adjectives, 89, 150
 with ablative, 56, 6
Comparative degree
 meaning "too," 69, 89, 91-2

- Comparison of adjectives, 88-92, 97-8
 Comparison of adverbs, 69
 Complementary, infinitive, 132
 Completed action, 183-5
 Conditional sentences, 137 b, c;
 141 b; 156
 Conjugations distinguished, 169
 Conjunctions, 66
cōnor, conjugation, 191
cōnsilium, declined, 77
 Consonant, stems, 78-9
 Consonant *l*, 22, 23
 Consonants, pronunciation, 22-3
 Contractions, 76, 178; 217; 219, 1, 4
cornū, declension, 81
cum, conjunction, 115 b, 119, 224
cum, enclitic with pron., 116
 with abl. of accompaniment, 62
 with abl. of manner, 96 b
cum, prep., 58, 62 a
 Customary action, 183, 185
- Dative, general force, 56, 3
 of agent, 106
 of indirect object, 5 f; 74, 6
 of possession, 5 e; 105
 of reference or concern, 56, 3;
 73 e; 105-6, 159 g
 of tendency, purpose, or result,
 73 e; 159 g
 w. spec. vbs. and adj., 230
 "two datives," to denote purpose
 and reference or person con-
 cerned, 73 e; 159 g
- dē* or *ex* with abl. for gen., 66 c
- Declension,
 of nouns, 75-82
 of adjectives, 83-90, 108-18
 of pronouns, 108-18
- Degree of difference, 74, 19
- Deliberative subjunctive, 141
- Demonstratives, 108-18
- Deponent verbs, defined, 181-2
- Description, 56, 2, 6; 62 g; 151
- dīc*, imperative, 170 note
- diēs*, decl.; gender, 81 b
- Diphthongs, 21, 27
- Direct discourse, 142
- Direct object, 5 d; 56, 4; 74, 4
- Direction in space, 57, 60, 61
- dis-*, meaning, 220, 5
- Division of syllables, 29
- Divisions of time, pp. 35-7
- dō*, conjugation, 184
- domus*, declension, 81
- cases in constructions of place,
 60-1
- dūc*, imperative, 170 note
- dum*, "while," "until," 147 d
- duo*, declension, 120
- Duration, accusative of, 68
- e* or -*i*, in ablative singular, 78-80,
 84-9
- e*, -*er*, pronunciation of, 24-26
- eius*, distinguished from *suus*, 109 b, c
- Endings, in conjugation, 124
 in declension, 55
- Entreaty, 141
- eo*, conjugation, 212-5
- ēs* and -*is*, in acc. pl., 78-80; 84
- Exhortation, subjunctive, 141
- Extent of space, 74, 17
- faciō*, passive of, 212-5
 imperative, *fac*, 170 note
- ferō*, conjugation, 212-15
- filia*, declension of, 77
- filius*, declension of, 76
- Finite moods, 125; 187-9; 191 a, b,
 192-4; 196 a, b; etc.
- fiō*, conjugation, 212-5
- First conjugation, in full, 187-90
- First declension, of nouns, 77
- fore*=*futūrum esse*, 183
- Forms, summary of, 37-55; 160-
 182
- Formation of verbs, 171-7
- Fourth conjugation in full, 207-10
- Future perfect indicative, use, 156 a
- Gender, grammatical, 54, 55 f
- Genitive, 56, 2
 descriptive, 56, 2
 possessive, 56, 2
 price or value, 73
 subjective, objective, 107
 whole amount, 66 c, 72
 with special verbs, etc., 230
- Gerund, defined, 129; uses, 135
- Gerundive, defined, 104; uses, 158
- gradior*, conjugation, 206

gratia, of purpose, 59

Growth of language, 218

Habitual action, imperfect of, 183

Harmony or Sequence of tenses, 147

Hortatory subjunctive, 141

i-consonant, 23

-i or -e in abl. sing., 78-9; 84

-i, pron. dative ending, 40

i-stems of third declension, 79

Imperative, uses of, 143; forms, 189, 191 b, etc.

dic, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**, 170 note

Imperfect indicative and subjunctive, 137 c, 147 g; 156, 183-5, etc.

Impersonal verbs, 136; 140; 98 Irr., 106 c.

Indefinite pronouns, 65, 71, 108-19

Indicative, formation, 171

Indicative and subjunctive, compared, 138 b, c, d; rule for changing indicative to subjunctive, 137 b; 188, 193, 198, etc.

Indirect discourse, defined, 142

principal clause, 142-3

subordinate clause, 137 b

Indirect object, 56, 3; 74, 6

Infinitive, defined, 121-3; 127

distinguishing conjugations, 126, 169; in various case relations, 130-5

in indirect discourse, 142

Instrument, ablative of, 62 b

-iō, of third conjugation, 162, 202-6

Interrogative particles, 145

Interrogative pronouns, 65, 71, 108, 114, 119 a

-is and -ēs in acc. pl., 79, 80, 84, 86

iūdex, declension of, 78

-ius and -iūm, gen. and voc., 76-7

-ius, pron. genitive ending, 40

"Jussive subjunctive," 141

-le and -se verbs, 127, 137, 140, 186

Less vivid future conditions, 156 b

Locative, endings, 55 a, b

Locative case, use of, 60-61

Locative meaning, 56, 7; 75; 77

Long vowels, 28

maior, pronunciation, 23

malō, conjugation, 186

Material or composition, gen. of, 56, 2

Means or instrument, abl., 62 b, e

Measure of difference, abl., 68 b.

meus, vocative singular **mi**, 83

Middle verbs, 181

mille, declension and use, 120

Mixed stems of third declension, 79 c

Modes of the verb defined, inf., 121-7; ind., 136; sub., 138

More vivid future conditions, 156 a

multō, abl. of measure, 74, 19

multum, acc. of measure, 74, 17

nāvis, declension of, 79

-ne, interrogative enclitic, 145 a

nē, 69, 141, 148, 149, 155

Negatives, choice of, 69, 141

nōli, with infinitive, 121, 141

nōlō, conjugation, 186

nōmen, declension, 78

Nominative as subject, 5 g; 74, 1

nōnne, in questions, 145 b

"Noun clauses," 122, 134, 142-3, 152-5

num, in questions, 145 c

Number, 66 b

Numerals, pp. 28-9; list, 120

Object of verb, 74, 4, 6

Objective genitive, 107

Obligation, or propriety, sub., 141

Obligation, or necessity, expressed by future passive participle, 106

oppidum, declined, 77

"**oratiō obliqua**," 142

Ordinals, 120

Participles, defined, 97-104

"Partitive genitive," 72

Parts of speech, 57-8, 64, 66, 69, 97-104, 113-5

Passive voice, defined, 181

Penult, 36

Perfect infinitive, formation, 99

Perfect participle, passive, 98 deponent, 100

Perfect stem, 163

Persons and things, 62

- Personal endings of the indicative, 124, 168
 Personal endings of the subjunctive, 124, 168
 Place, general expression of, 60, 61
plūs, declension, 150
 Possession, expressed by genitive, 5 e, 109 b
 expressed by the dative, 105
 Possessive adjectives, 109 c
 Possibility, subjunctive, 141
possum, conjugation, 183
postquam, 69, 224
 Potential subjunctive, 141
potior, ablative with, 182 b
potior, conjugation, 211
 Predicate, defined, 74, 3, 4
 predicate accusative, 74, 3, 5
 predicate nominative, 74, 3
 Prepositions, 57, 58
 Present subjunctive, 139, 140
 Present tense of indicative, meaning, 136-7
 "Primary tenses," tenses of the present or future, 147 f
 Principal parts of verbs, 161-3
 "Principal tenses," see primary tenses, 147
 Prohibitions, subjunctive, 141; *nōll*, 121
 Pronominal adjectives, 64-5, 70-1, 108-18
 Pronunciation, 21-36
prōvincia, declension of, 77
 Purpose, expressed by, 59, 148, 158

 Quantity of vowels, 27, 28
 of syllables, 33, 34
 Quantity, position of words of, 68
-que, enclitic, 66
-que, indefinite particle, 76, 108, 119 b
 Questions:
 indicative, of fact, 145
 subjunctive:
 of deliberation, 141 b
 of possibility, 141 b
qui-clauses:
 descriptive, 151
 determinative or characteristic, 151
 of purpose, 148
 of result, 149
 "rather," expressed by comparative, 69, 89, 91
 re-, *red-*, 220, 13
 Reference or concern, 56, 3; 73 e; 159 g
 Reflexive pronouns, 116 c
 distinguished from *ipse*, 118 a
 Reflexive verbs, 181-2
 Relative clause, 147-51
 Relative pronoun, 115
 Request or entreaty, expressed:
 by imperative, 142-3
 by subjunctive, 141
rēs, declined, 81 b
 Respect, ablative of, 74, 16; 157
 Result clauses, 149
-ro-stems in nouns, explained, 76
 Rule for changing indicative to subjunctive, 137 b, 188, 193, 198, etc.
rūs, *rūre*, *rūrī*, in constructions of place, 61

s-stems, 42, 78 b
sē-, *sēd-*, 220, 13
 Second conjugation, in full, 192-6
 Second declension, 75-6
 of adjectives, 90
 "Secondary tenses," tenses of the past, 147 g
 Semi-deponent verbs, *audeō*, *fidō* (*cōn-fidō*, *dif-fidō*), *gaudeō*, *soleō*, see Vocabulary
 Separation, ablative with verbs of, 63
 "Sequence of tenses," 147 f, g
 Short vowels, 28 b
simul atque, 224
sine and *cum* in expressions of manner, 96 b
 Sociative ablative, 62 a
 Space, acc. measure of, 68
 Specification, 74, 16
 Subject, of finite verb, nom., 56, 1; 74, 1
 of infinitives, acc., 56, 4; 74, 2
 Subjunctive, formation, 172
 used to express:
 adversative idea (opposition) with *qui*, with *cum*, 115, 224
 cause or reason, with *qui*, with *cum*, 115, 224

- close connection with subjunctive or infinitive clause (attraction), 137 c
- commands or prohibitions, 141
- conditions and conclusion: less vivid future, contrary to fact, 156, b, c
- deliberation, 141
- description, in *quī*-clauses, 151
- exhortation, 141
- fear or anxiety, 153
- obligation or propriety, 141
- possibility, 141
- purpose, with *quī*, *quō*, *ut*, or *nē*, 148
- request or entreaty, 141
- result, with *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quān*, 149
- situation, in *cum*-clauses, 115, 224
- substantive idea, 152-5
after verbs of hindrance, prevention, or check, with *nē*, *quōminus*, or *quān*, 155
with *utinam*, 141
- adjectives as substantives, 64-5; 70-1
- Substantive clauses, 146, 152-5
- sum*, conjugation in full, 183
- Summary of forms of nouns and adjectives, 37-56
- Summary of forms of verbs, 160-78
- Superlative degree, 69, 90
with *quam*, "as — as possible," 69, 90
- Supine, formation; uses, 157-9
- Syllables, division of, 29-32
quantity of, 33-4
- Tables of:
endings of nouns, 55
endings of verbs, 168
conditions and conclusion, 156
indirect discourse, 142
natural harmony of tenses, 147 f, g
- Tenses of participles, 97-104
of participle, 94 b, 97-101, 103
- Terminations, *see* Endings, 55, 124
- "Than," English, how expressed, 56, 6; 75, 69
- Third conjugation, 197-206
- Third declension adjectives, 83-9
consonant stems, 86
i-stems, 83-5; 87-9
- Third declension nouns, 79, 80
- Third declension participles, 97
- Time at or within which, ablative of, 68 c
- "Too," expressed by comparative, 69, 91
- "Two accusatives," 155
- ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, *simul atque*, with indicative, 224
- "Until," 57, 147 d
- ut*, "as," with indicative, 115, 147 b
- utinam*, wishing particle, 141
- ūtor*, ablative with, 182 b
conjugation of, 201
- v*, *ve*, *vē*, *vi*, sometimes lost in perfect stems, 178, 217
- vereor*, conjugation of, 196
- "Very," expressed by superlative, 69, 90-1
- vesper*, declension of, 76
- vetus*, declension, 86
- videō*, conjugation, 192-5
- virgō*, declension of, 78
- vis*, declined, 80
- Vocative, regular formation, 75
or nouns, in *-ius*, 76
used in address, 56, 5; 74, 7
- vocō*, conjugation, 187-90
- Voice, defined, 179, 180
- Volitive subjunctive, 141
- volō*, conjugation, 186
- Vowels, pronunciation, 21
quantity, 28
- vulgus*, declension of, 77
- vulnus*, declension of, 78
- Whole, expressed by genitive, 72
by *dē* or *ex* with ablative, 66 c
- Wish, expressed by subjunctive, 141
with *utinam*, 141
- "Yes" and "no" questions, 145

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M—6

MAY ~~19~~ 1953



23668825R00219

Made in the USA
Middletown, DE
31 August 2015

Digitally
Remastered

Forgotten Books

*Forgotten Books' Classic Reprint Series
utilizes the latest technology to regenerate
facsimiles of historically important writings.*

*Careful attention has been made to accurately
preserve the original format of each page whilst
digitally enhancing the quality of the aged text.*

*Philosophy ~ Classics ~ Science ~ Religion
History ~ Folklore ~ Mythology*



Forgotten Books

\$4.99



867998
AO-AO
2045

No Exchange
Books
Reference &
Education

Antique



M0D1005230315

For more publications by Forgotten Books visit www.forgottenbooks.org